INTERMEDIATE LOGIC

INTERMEDIATE LOGIC

BY

JAMES WELTON, D LIT., M.A.
SOMETIME PROFESSOR OF EDUCATION IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LEEDS

AND

A. J. MONAHAN, M A.
LECTURER IN EDUCATION IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LEEDS

FOURTH EDITION REVISED BY

S. H. MELLONE, M.A., D.SC.
LATE EXAMINER IN PHILOSOPHY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON

LONDON
UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL PRESS LD.
ST. GILES HIGH STREET, W.C. 2

Fourth Edition, 1938

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL PRESS LD., FOXTON
NEAR CAMBRIDGE

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

REVISED BY E. M. WHETNALL, PH.D., B.A.

AMONG the various changes made in this revised edition four are of special importance

Firstly, the traditional classification of terms has been modified along the lines suggested by Mr. Bertrand Russell and the late Dr W. E. Johnson, whilst in the chapter on Propositions the exposition of the traditional treatment has been criticised from the point of view adopted by Mr Russell This makes it possible to provide a more satisfactory treatment of propositions than is usually to be found in elementary textbooks

Secondly, the chapter on the Postulates of Induction has been entirely rewritten This was necessary in order to bring out the distinction between the principle of the uniformity, and that of the unity, of nature, and to include a fuller treatment of the law of causation and a brief exposition of the principle of limited variety

Thirdly, the position of the three chapters on Method, two of which have themselves been largely rewritten, has been changed so that these chapters now follow the chapters on the syllogism. In this position the chapters stand naturally between the treatment of purely formal subjects and the treatment of induction

Lastly, the original chapter on Predicables has been replaced by a chapter which includes an account of the categories and an exposition of Aristotle's theory of predicables.

E. M. W.

NOTE TO THE FOURTH EDITION

The demand for a new edition of this book has provided the opportunity of carrying further some of the changes mentioned in the previous Preface; of making some new changes with the same general purposes in view; and of revising a number of passages which have been found to cause difficulty to students.

S. H. M

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I

THE NATURE OF LOGIC.

SECTION PAGE
1. Knowledge 1
2. Origin and Function of Logic 5
3. Relation of Logic to other Knowledge . . . 8
    Value of Logic 9
    Logic and Psychology 11
    Logic and Grammar . . 11

CHAPTER II.

THE LAWS OF THOUGHT.

1. General Character of the Laws 13
2. The Principle of Identity . . 14
3. The Principle of Contradiction 14
4. The Principle of Excluded Middle . . . 15
5. The Principle of Sufficient Reason 17

CHAPTER III.

TERMS.

1. Definition of Proposition and Term . . . 18
2. Table of Divisions of Terms . . . 19
3. Singular and General Terms . . . 19
    (i) Singular Names . . . 19
        (a) Proper Names . 19
        (b) Uniquely Descriptive Names . . 20
    (ii) General Names 21
        Collective Names . . 22
        Collective and Distributive use of Names . . 24
4 Connotative and Non-connotative Terms . . 24
    (i) Definition of Connotative and Non-connotative Names . . 24
    (ii) Limits of Connotation . . . 26
    (iii) Denotation 27
    (iv) Relation between Connotation and Denotation . . . 27

SECTION PAGE
5 Concrete and Abstract Terms 30
6 Positive and Negative Terms 32
(i) Contradiction 32
(ii) Contrariety 33
7 Absolute and Relative Terms 34
8 Classification of Relations 35

CHAPTER IV

THE CATEGORIES AND THE PREDICABLES

1 Relation between the Categories and Predicables 36
2 The Categories 36
3 The Predicables 37
(i) Definition 38
(ii) Genus 38
(iii) Differentia 38
(iv) Proprium 38
(v) Accidens 39
4 Porphyry's List of Predicables 40

CHAPTER V

DEFINITION

1 Nature of Definition 42
2 Analytic Definition 43
3 Limitation and Formation of Definitions 44
4 Principles of Definition 48

CHAPTER VI

FALLACIES OF DEFINITION

1 General Nature of Fallacy 53
2 Faults in Definition 54
(i) Concept Embracing Incompatible Attributes 54
(ii) *Aequivocatio* or *Homonymia* 55
(iii) *Figura Dictionis* 59
(iv) *A dicto simpliciter ad dictum secundum quid* and its Converse 60
(v) *Compositio* and *Divisio* 63

CHAPTER VII

DIVISION AND CLASSIFICATION

SECTION PAGE
1 General Character of Logical Division . 66
2 Dependence on Definition and Matters of Fact 67
3 Operations resembling Logical Division 69
4 Principles of Logical Division 69
5 Division by Dichotomy 72
6 Nature of Classification 75
7 Special or Artificial Classifications . . 78
8 General or Scientific Classifications 80
9 Limits of Classification 85
10 Scientific Nomenclature and Terminology 86
11 Fallacies in Division 88

CHAPTER VIII

DEFINITION AND CLASSIFICATION OF PROPOSITIONS

1 Definition of Proposition 89
2 Kinds of Propositions 90
 (A) The Two Traditional Classifications 90
  (a) Categorical, Hypothetical, and Disjunctive Propositions 90
   (i) Definitions of 90
   (ii) Relations between 90
  (b) The Four fold Scheme 95
   (i) Basis of Classification 95
   (ii) Representation by Diagrams 97
   (iii) Presuppositions of the Classification 100
 (B) Classification based on Distinctions overlooked in the Traditional Schemes 102
  (a) Singular Propositions 103
  (b) General Propositions 103

CHAPTER IX

FALLACIES INCIDENT TO JUDGMENT

1 Proposition involving Self-contradiction . 105
2. Misinterpretation of Categorical Propositions 106
 (i) *Amphibolia* . 106
 (ii) *Accentus* 107
3. Misinterpretation of Hypothetical Propositions 108
4 Misinterpretation of Disjunctive Propositions 109

CHAPTER X

SECTION GENERAL REMARKS ON IMMEDIATE INFERENCES PAGE

1 Nature of Immediate Inferences 110
2 Kinds of Immediate Inferences 111
 (i) The Opposition of Propositions 111
 (ii) Eductions 112

CHAPTER XI

OPPOSITION OF PROPOSITIONS

1 Opposition of Categorical Propositions 113
 (i) Subalternation 114
 (ii) Contradiction 115
 (iii) Contrariety 117
 (iv) Sub contrariety 119
2 The Square of Opposition 120
3 Opposition of Hypothetical and Disjunctive Propositions 122

CHAPTER XII

EDUCTIONS

1. Chief Eductions of Categorical Propositions 124
 (i) Obversion 126
 (ii) Conversion 129
  (a) Of **A** Propositions 130
  (b) Of **E** Propositions 131
  (c) Of **I** Propositions 131
  (d) Of **O** Propositions 132
  (e) Obverted Conversion 133
 (iii) Contraposition 134
 (iv) Inversion 136
2 Eductions of Hypothetical Propositions 138

CHAPTER XIII

FALLACIES INCIDENT TO IMMEDIATE INFERENCE.

1 False Opposition 140
 Plures Interrogationes 140
2. Illicit Conversion 141
 (i) Abstract—of an **A** or **O** Proposition 141
 (ii) *Accidens* 141
 (iii) *Consequens* 142
3. Illicit Contraposition 143
4 Illicit Inversion 143

CHAPTER XIV

GENERAL NATURE OF SYLLOGISM

SECTION PAGE

1. Definition of Syllogism 144
    Elements of a Syllogism . 145
2. Kinds of Syllogisms . . . 148

CHAPTER XV.

THE PRINCIPLE AND RULES OF SYLLOGISTIC REASONING.

1. The *dictum de omni et nullo* 150
2. General Rules or Canons of Categorical Syllogisms . . 151
    (i) Examination of the Rules of the Syllogism . 153
    (ii) Corollaries from the Rules of the Syllogism . . 159
3. Application of the Rules to-
    (i) Pure Hypothetical Syllogisms 160
    (ii) Pure Disjunctive Syllogisms . . . 161

CHAPTER XVI

FIGURE AND MOOD.

1 Distinctions of Figure . 162
2 Special Rules of the Four Figures 163
3 Determination of Valid Moods 164
4 The Mnemonic Lines 167
5 Strengthened and Weakened Syllogisms 168
6. Examples of Valid Moods 168
7 The Representation of Syllogisms by Diagrams 171
8 Pure Hypothetical Syllogisms 175
9 Pure Disjunctive Syllogisms . . 177

CHAPTER XVII

REDUCTION OF SYLLOGISMS.

1 Function of Reduction . 179
2 Explanation of the Mnemonic Lines . 180
3. Kinds of Reduction 181
    (i) Direct or Ostensive Reduction . 181
    (ii) Indirect Reduction . 183
4 Reduction of Pure Hypothetical Syllogisms . 184

CHAPTER XVIII

MIXED SYLLOGISMS

SECTION PAGE

1. Mixed Hypothetical Syllogisms 186
   - (i) Basis of Mixed Syllogistic Reasoning from a Hypothetical Major Premise 187
   - (ii) Determination of Valid Moods 187
   - (iii) Examples 191
2. Mixed Disjunctive Syllogisms 193
   - (i) Basis of Inference from a Disjunctive Major Premise 193
   - (ii) Forms of Mixed Disjunctive Syllogisms . 194
   - (iii) Reduction of Mixed Disjunctive Syllogisms . 195
   - (iv) Examples 196
3. Dilemmas 197
   - (i) Forms of the Dilemma 197
   - (ii) Rebutting a Dilemma 202

CHAPTER XIX

ABRIDGED AND CONJOINED SYLLOGISMS

1. Enthymemes . 205
2. Progressive and Regressive Chains of Reasoning . 207
3. Sorites . 209
   - (i) Kinds of Sorites 209
   - (ii) Special Rules of the Sorites 212
     - (a) The Aristotelian Sorites 212
     - (b) The Goclenian Sorites 212
4. Epicheiremas 213

CHAPTER XX

FUNCTION, VALIDITY, AND LIMITATION OF THE SYLLOGISM

1. Universal Element in Deductive Reasoning 215
2. Validity of Syllogistic Reasoning . 216
3 Limitations of Syllogistic Reasoning 221
4 Non-syllogistic Relational Reasoning . 222

CHAPTER XXI

GENERAL METHOD OF KNOWLEDGE

1 Nature of Logical Method 225
2 System 226
3 Analysis and Synthesis 229
   - Distinction from certain Physical Processes . 230
   - Relations between Analysis and Synthesis determined by—
     - (a) Stage reached by Science . . 232
     - (b) Subject Matter of Different Sciences 232

SECTION PAGE
(c) Purpose, Exposition, or Discovery 233
(d) Insight of Scientist . 234
4. Inference and Implication . 235
5 Relation between Deduction and Induction 237
6. Systematic Investigation 239

CHAPTER XXII.

SPECIAL METHODS

1 Applications of General Method . 243
2 Mathematics 243
(i) Analysis of Concepts 244
(ii) Synthetic Use of Concepts . 244
(iii) Symbols 245
(iv) System 246
3 Physical Sciences 246
4 Natural Sciences 248
5 Historical Science . 249
(i) Gathering of Facts 249
(ii) Explanation 252

CHAPTER XXIII

FALLACIES INCIDENT TO METHOD

1 *Petitio Principii* 256
Hysteron proteron 258
Circulus in demonstrando 258
Universal involving Particular 261
2 *Ignoratio Elenchi* 262
Argumentum ad hominem . 266
Argumentum ad populum 266
Argumentum ad ignorantiam 267
Argumentum ad verecundiam 267
3. *Non sequitur* or *Non propter hoc* . . 267

CHAPTER XXIV

GENERAL NATURE OF INDUCTION

1. Nature and Aim of Induction . 270
Enumeration of Instances 272
Analysis of Phenomena . 273
2. Method of Induction . 274
Relation to Deduction 275

CHAPTER XXV.

THE POSTULATES OF INDUCTION.

SECTION PAGE
1. The Bases of Generalisation .. 278
2. The Uniformity of Nature 278
   Unity of Nature . 280
   Uniformities 280
      (i) Origin and Justification of Belief in Uniformity 281
      (ii) Adequacy of Belief in Uniformity . 283
3. The Principle of Causation 283
   Popular View of Cause 284
   Scientific View of Causal Relation . 286
4. The Principle of Limited Variety . 287
   Groups of Properties . 287
   Natural Kinds . . 288

CHAPTER XXVI

OBSERVATION

1 The Basis of Science 290
2. Simple Observation . . . 291
   Inference and Interpretation 292
   Selection 293
3 Danger of Bias 295
4. Scientific Instruments 296
5. Observation by Experiment . . 297
6. Aim of Experiment . . 301
7. Fallacies Incident to Observation 303
   (i) Non-observation 304
      (*a*) Neglect of Instances . 304
      (*b*) Neglect of Operative Conditions . 307
   (ii) Mal-Observation . 309

CHAPTER XXVII

TESTIMONY.

1. Importance of Testimony . 312
2 Value of Testimony 313
3. Criticism of Testimony 314
4. Criticism of Indirect Testimony 319

CHAPTER XXVIII.

NATURE OF HYPOTHESES.

1. Nature of Hypothesis . . . 322
2 Origin of Hypotheses 323
3. Testing of Hypotheses 327

SECTION PAGE
4. Descriptive and Working Hypotheses 328
5. Conditions of Validity of Hypotheses 329
    (a) Statement of Conditions . 329
    (b) Examination of Conditions . . 330
6. Extension of Hypotheses 332
7. Crucial Instances . . . 334

CHAPTER XXIX

THE INCEPTION OF HYPOTHESES.

1 The Beginnings of Induction . 336
2 Enumerative Induction . . . 337
3. Analogy . . 338
    (i) Nature 338
    (ii) Force . 340
        (a) Comprehensiveness 340
        (b) Importance . 341
    (iii) Fallacies Incident to Analogy 344
        Sources—
        (a) Language 344
        (b) Confusion between Essential and Unessential 345

CHAPTER XXX.

ESTABLISHMENT OF HYPOTHESES

1 Conditions of Establishment . . 348
2 Direct Development of Hypotheses 349
    (i) Method of Agreement . 352
    (ii) Method of Exclusions . 356
    (iii) Method of Difference 359
    (iv) Method of Concomitant Variations 364
    (v) Method of Residues 370
3 Indirect Establishment of Hypotheses 373
    Relation to Direct Methods 373
    Indirect Method in Geology . 375
    Indirect Method in History 377
    Circumstantial Evidence . . 379

CHAPTER XXXI.

EXAMPLES OF INDUCTION.

1 Formation of Vegetable Mould 381
2. The Silkworm Disease 385
3. Sources of Power in Voltaic Pile 390
4. Argon 392
5. Henry VIII. and the Parliament of 1529 . . . 400
6. Wave Theory of Light . . . 405

CHAPTER XXXII

QUANTITATIVE DETERMINATION.

SECTION PAGE
1 Measurement . . . 414
2 Probability 419
    (i) Basis of the Theory 419
    (ii) Estimation of Probability 425
        (a) Probability of Simple Events 425
        (b) Probability of Compound Events 426
            (1) Independent Events 426
            (2) Dependent Events . 428
            (3) Indeterminate Events 430
        (c) Probability of Alternative Conditions 432
        (d) Probability of Recurrence 434
3 Methods of Determining Magnitude 436
    (i) Method of Means 437
    (ii) Method of Least Squares 439

CHAPTER XXXIII

SCIENTIFIC EXPLANATION

1 Nature of Explanation . 441
2 Generalisation 444
    (i) Empirical Generalisations 448
    (ii) Established Truths 452
3 Systematisation 455
4 Fallacies Incident to Explanation 458
    (i) Origin 458
    (ii) Empirical Generalisations 458
    (iii) Established Truths . . 460

List for Further Reading 463
Questions and Exercises 464
Index 494

INTERMEDIATE LOGIC.

CHAPTER I.

THE NATURE OF LOGIC.

1. **Knowledge.**—Men have always thought as naturally as they have eaten, and they have found the matter on which their thoughts work, as well as that which satisfies their hunger, among the things around them. But the advance of what is known as civilisation is attended by an advance in man's demands in each case. The civilised and cultured man rejects with equal disdain the rude dishes which gratify the palate of the primitive savage and the explanations of the phenomena of the world which satisfy his mind.

Such an advance would be quite inconceivable if each generation had to start anew at the beginning of things. It is only because men of our day can profit by the experiences of those who have preceded them that advance either in knowledge or in practical efficiency is possible. This implies that the knowledge gained by one can be communicated to others, so that human advance is in all its aspects a kind of co-operative movement In other words, without the means of communication—in its broadest sense, language—man must have failed to improve the character of his life as surely as the lower animals have done.

There is probably no need to demonstrate at length that man's advance has not been an uninterrupted triumphal march. Every sane person is conscious of the truth of the old Latin proverb "Humanum est errare." We all fall into errors—

both practical and theoretical. Savage man, whose interests are very directly practical, avoids death and disaster less surely than we do with all the resources of medical science—that is, knowledge—at our disposal. And savage man can do much less than we can to lead the forces of nature into bondage to his desires The great ocean-liner is an immense advance on the dug-out canoe, yet the ocean-liner at times meets with disaster The express train rushing along the rails at sixty miles an hour is striking evidence of the extent to which man's practical knowledge has advanced · that train hurling itself in collision upon another, which is—but ought not to be—in the way, is an illustration of his liability to error. In how many human disasters is it not possible to find the explanation in "Some one has blundered"?

Practical failures bring conviction home to all of us that we are not infallible In matters of merely theoretical knowledge we are much more apt to regard our results, not only as the last word which has been said on the subject, but as the last which can be said Yet here, too, a modest demeanour would be more becoming Nor is such modesty at all inconsistent with justifiable pride in what has already been accomplished That certainly is *much* We do know *much* about the operations of many of the forces of nature, and we prove it by the skill and success with which we utilise them. But much is still unexplained, and the further we get from the forces we can use directly the more uncertain are our steps. The unexpected discovery of radium illustrates how scientific knowledge thought to be the most perfect may be shown to be inadequate and incomplete.

Nor again have we any reason to suppose that the thought of this age is more final than that of earlier times. The path along which thought has advanced is strewn with the wreckage of discarded explanations, which in their day were regarded as securely established, that is, as known. Their fate has always been due to the same cause—increase of knowledge Whenever a fact, or class of facts, new to us is proved to exist, our thought of the nature of the world must find an appropriate place for it.

Thus recently the theories of physics have undergone, and are still subject to such modifications as are necessary to give due place to the facts of radio-activity. So in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries men had gradually to readjust their thoughts of the relations of the heavenly bodies so as to include the continually increasing knowledge of the facts which the telescope was making possible. In this case the readjustment of the theory was fundamental—the earth was deposed from the position men's thoughts had for centuries assigned it, and was made but a minor satellite in a system whose centre was the sun The ultimate adjustments necessary in the former case may be no less fundamental

In the case of the Copernican revolution it was not the perceived facts which were proved to be other than men had thought; the sun, moon, and stars were—and are—still seen to rise in the east and to set in the west. No, it was only man's theory about their appearance—his explanation of how they could be explained—which was overthrown, because it could not find room for the facts first known when the telescope brought into the range of perception facts which had hitherto been beyond it. So, in general, necessary modification of theory does not imply falsity in perceived facts, which is indeed a self-contradictory notion, but it does imply the discovery of hitherto unknown facts.

It appears, then, that man seeks explanations, but that his explanations are subsequently discarded if they are found not to account for growing knowledge. This is to say that he regards consistency in the whole sphere of his knowledge as the essential condition of sane thought. If the facts are so and so, then the explanation must fit them. For the facts constrain us They are parts of the real world of things of which each one of us is also a part—and they are the parts which are most directly open to our experience

The explanations, however, are constructions, made by our own minds, of possible relations between things, and they may, or they may not, reproduce in thought the relations which really exist. The savage believes the tempest to be raised by a spiritual enemy We, equally with him, accept the tempest as real, but we reject his explanation of its origin as not in correspondence with the facts. And this rejection is based on fuller knowledge of natural occurrences than the savage has attained. To us many things are 'natural' because we can explain them by relations of thing to thing, which to the savage are 'supernatural' because inexplicable by any known relations of natural things.

Human thought, then, accepts the facts of experience, and tries to explain them. The explanation always takes the form of fitting them into such a system that each one of them is seen to depend upon its assumed relations with the others. Into such a system no contradiction can be admitted; that immediately destroys it. The whole advance of science *i.e.* of exact knowledge, no matter what the topic—is the building up in thought of such systems. Each science has its own system. Chemistry regards material things from one point of view, physics from another. Yet they study the same objects. So that thought must not only demand that chemistry be consistent with itself and physics with itself, but that chemistry and physics be consistent with each other, and so throughout.

Our separate sciences, then, are all concerned with the same great system of things which we call the world or the universe. But each deals with only one aspect of it—that is, with one class of the forces which make it what it is. Because of the frailty of our intellects it must be so, for no mind is powerful enough to embrace more than one very small corner of existence. Each science works in its own artificially segregated domain, but in reality these domains interpenetrate. So if the sciences are together to explain that reality they must not only be actually in harmony but must be seen to be so in their own relations to each other

It is plain, however, that we are far indeed from this complete construction in thought of what the universe is in reality. Each science is, as it were, working largely in the dark as to the bearing of its results on the general scheme of things. Surely we have here an unanswerable proof that our knowledge is very imperfect, and that our explanations, therefore, may need more or less profound modification as that knowledge increases.

So far we have spoken only of the knowledge of mankind as a whole, and we have seen that in its gradual growth it has had to reject some of its beliefs and to adapt others by profound modifications to meet the new conditions of thought due to increase of knowledge—often of the most unexpected kind. But if all this is true of the combined search of men after truth, how much more is it true of the efforts of individual enquirers? One need not go outside one's memory of one's own life to find plenty of examples in which one's own thought has been proved by subsequent experience to be wrong. Have we not harboured suspicions afterwards seen to be unjustified? Have we not believed explanations which we now reject? Have we not discovered errors of thought in others? Have they not believed that they have found similar errors in ourselves?

There is no need to labour the point. Every one who thinks at all knows that at times he thinks wrongly—that is, the system he constructs in his thoughts does not correspond to the relations which hold in reality. His mistakes may or may not be found out either by himself or by others In matters of small moment many such errors never are discovered, for the time once past no more thought is given to the matter. If, however, further knowledge in any form is brought to bear, then any inconsistency may become manifest, and the fact of error is laid bare even though the exposure does not carry with it in all cases the power of rectification.

2. Origin and Function of Logic.—The liability to error in thought naturally raises the question whether rules can be laid down by adherence to which such error can be avoided. Can we set forth a scheme by following which thought can advance safely and surely? The idea is a tempting one, and for centuries men believed it to be realised. Unhappily in those very centuries men's knowledge of the world in which they lived made little, if any, advance.

The reason is not far to seek. Such a universally applicable instrument of thought assumes of necessity that the validity of thought can be estimated apart from the matter thought about. This is true only when 'validity' is strictly limited to *self-consistency*. In that case the essential question about an argument is whether the conclusion is rightly drawn *from* the given premises. But this demand for self-consistency can go no further ' If *S* is *M*, and *M* is *P*, then *S* is *P* ' is no doubt true, no matter what *S*, *M*, and *P* may be held to represent, so long as each remains uniform in its reference, but the essential questions remain—whether *S is M* and *M is P*, whether these two statements are *all* the knowledge that we have pertinent to the case in hand, and whether ' *S* is *P* ' is *true in fact*, in just that form

In short, to think rightly we must think not only consistently but truly, we have to ask, in the case of a given argument, whether the premises are true, and if so whether they are sufficient to warrant the conclusion, and whether the conclusion agrees with the facts

A logic, then, which seeks to do no more than lay down the principles of self-consistency in thinking, is powerless before the vast complexity of reality It can deduce consequences from given data, and so long as men were agreed upon the ultimate assumptions which could be accepted, the application of the principles of self-consistency in argumentative discussion could be extensively carried out We see this illustrated on a great scale in the history of thought in the Middle Ages, when the first principles or ultimate premises from which men advanced in reasoning were accepted on the authority of the Church and of certain ancient authors, particularly Aristotle The result was much acuteness of thought and clearness of mental vision as to what was involved in certain kinds of argument But the knowledge which was gained of certain types of argument was much greater than the knowledge which was gained of the real world.

Yet the logic of self-consistency is far from valueless, and its general neglect has been unfortunate Men continually make errors in reasoning of the most elementary formal character, and their readers or hearers fail to detect them. Distinctions are ignored or dismissed as " verbal quibbling " which yet have a very real pertinence to the matter in hand. The general neglect of a study of the formal implications and relations of propositions has been accompanied by an appalling amount of inaccurate and careless reasoning, and by a slipshod habit of mind which is much to be regretted.

Nevertheless, with the Renaissance a new spirit arose whose motto was no longer " Bring your beliefs into harmony with traditional authority," but " Bring all beliefs into harmony with the facts of Nature ", and when observation of Nature and her laws became a prevailing pursuit, the deficiency, for this purpose, of the formal logic of the mediaeval writers was perceived, and the need was felt for some principles to regulate the observation and explanation of Nature. This led to inquiry into *the principles of scientific method.* Francis Bacon, the Chancellor, composed his " New Organon " or system of scientific method to replace what he supposed to be the system of Aristotle, but his attempt was not markedly successful Indeed, the hour was not yet come

The truth is that in every department of activity practice comes first We learn to do things before we attempt to discover the general principles that doing has involved. So men fell themselves, and saw other things fall, long before they hit upon the theory of gravitation as the principle unifying all those diverse facts Just so men learned the new processes of thought practically in the very attempt to penetrate the hidden mysteries of things They had to invent modes of ascertaining facts more exactly than by casual observation, and to utilise those facts when found Thoughts are at once processes and results, and thoughts were what men were seeking. Their interest was in reaching knowledge —that is, systems of facts and explanations by relation of fact to fact that would stand the onslaught of new discoveries Many ways they tried, and some they abandoned as unfruitful. Others they found effective and gradually set themselves to perfect.

The scientific worker sees the value of a systematic exposition of the principles which can be found inherent in successful attempts to win explanation, though he is still often shy of naming such an exposition ' logic ' From successful workers in science he learns, in the words of the late Lord Acton, " how to test proof, how to secure fullness and soundness of induction, how to restrain and employ with safety hypothesis and analogy "

There is a general agreement that by analysis and comparison of actual pieces of successful thought there may be formed a body of common principles, though, of course, those principles are found under various forms according to the kind of matter thought about The kind of evidence which will establish a truth in history is different from that which will establish one in physics, yet both must in some way be adequate, and from examination and comparison of the relation of evidence to conclusion, the general conditions of adequacy may be ascertained. Our review of the origin and function of Logic leads therefore to the following conclusion.

There are two historic streams, as it were, of logical doctrine, which have created two different conceptions of the aim and purpose of Logic. The first of these is founded on the Logic which the mediaeval writers developed out of such acquaintance with Aristotle as they possessed. This is usually called "Deductive" or "Formal Logic." The other conception of Logic resolves it into a study of the principles of scientific method. This is usually called "Inductive" or "Material" Logic We shall see that Deduction and Induction are not two opposite kinds of reasoning, in Deduction, we start with general principles, in Induction, with more or less disconnected facts Hence we may provisionally define Logic as *the science of the principles of valid reasoning*, if we bear in mind the twofold meaning of "valid". (*a*) its stricter or narrower meaning, of "self-consistent," and (*b*) its wider meaning of "consistent with reality"

3. Relation of Logic to other Knowledge —Shall we say, then, that the province of logic is a wide or a limited one? It is wide surely in the sense that it is interested in all thought and so embraces all the sciences. But it is limited in its power to pronounce upon the truth or falsity of the evidence men advance for their conclusions. It can say that if such and such evidence be true and be all that is pertinent, then such and such a conclusion is justified or unjustified But whether the particular evidence *is* true and *is* adequate logic cannot pronounce That is the domain of the particular branch of knowledge to which the case most definitely belongs.

Is, then, logic of only theoretical interest? Probably it is true to say that that is its chief attraction to most people who study it, just as in geometry the demonstration of necessary relations of one proposition to another is essentially a theoretic interest But as the theory of geometry is derived from examination of actual space relations, it may be consciously applied to new cases, and may be used critically to judge the value of new space-constructions And the same is true of logic. For as logic results from analysis of actual thought—and not otherwise—it is evident that men both can and do think without any conscious use of logic, and certainly without any preliminary study of it. Some think well, some ill. Or perhaps it would be truer to say, all think sometimes well, sometimes ill, though the proportions of the 'sometimes' are different with different people. Logic is derived from thought about thought, just as botany is derived from thought about plants So logic could no more originate thought than botany could originate plants. In each case that is "putting the cart before the horse" And in the same sense in which botany may be said to be inherent in plants, logic may be said to be inherent in thought.

We grant then that the study of logic is not a preliminary to thought Further, when men criticise each other's arguments they do not usually *consciously* apply logical principles —that is, they do not separately enunciate such principles though they implicitly use them. Yet further, we will grant that even the professed logician does not call to mind the principles of his science when he sets himself to think about some other topic

All this is not to deny a practical value to the study of logic. But no service is ever done to a good cause by claiming too much for it. We have seen how logic has suffered from its friends in the past, and we would save it from such damaging support in the future So we assert frankly and unreservedly that the practical value of logic to the student thereof is indirect, and only indirect

The clear apprehension of the conditions of validity of thought helps to form a critical habit of mind and to develop a fine scent for fallacies. Modern life with its incessant platform chatter supplies endless occasions for the application of this power; if these opportunities are seized it grows in strength and in efficiency, and it may be added that the more unconsciously it works the more effective it is It follows that the student of logic will do well to work special exercises—special because made simpler than the common experiences of life

This habit of mind will guard us against the abuse of logic itself People often, we know, scornfully dismiss many arguments as "mere logic" No doubt in many cases that is only following the old advice to shelter a weak case behind abuse of the adversary's attorney But not always It is often felt that the argument, though unexceptional in itself, does not meet the requirements of the case, in other words, the premises or assumptions from which it started are inadequate The really logical mind apprehends when this is the case—that is, when *all* the evidence is not brought forward—even where it cannot supply the deficiency. And this is a great point. In matters that concern actual affairs of human life it is seldom that all the evidence *can* be explicitly set forth. This is recognised by the really logical mind.

Such a mind also distinguishes between the evidence for a belief and the cause of a belief *A* may distrust *B* because he dislikes him, but *A*'s dislike is no evidence of *B*'s lack of integrity. This consideration is relevant to the relation existing between logic and other sciences While some of the sciences are concerned with the establishment of particular causal laws, logic is never so concerned But it is concerned with the general conditions which must be satisfied if the processes by which particular causal laws are established are valid

It has been held that logic is more closely related to both psychology and grammar than to the other sciences This twofold opinion cannot be accepted. Both logic and psychology are said to be concerned with thought But, while psychology is concerned with *thought in the sense of mental events occurring as part of the mental processes of individuals,* logic is concerned with *the validity of thought.* Psychologists are concerned with the causal relations between mental events; for instance, with that between thinking and feeling, or between thinking and perceiving Again, they are concerned with the properties of different mental states, such as fear Logicians, on the contrary, are not concerned with any of these subjects Their interest in thought is wholly different from that of the psychologist. Their concern is the validity of thought They investigate what is implied by, what negated by, and the formal properties of, different kinds of premises

Thought, then, is used ambiguously when it is said that psychology and logic are concerned with thought. In one sense thought means concrete mental events of a certain kind, in another it means abstract relations and properties belonging to actual or potential grounds of belief

Logic is held to be closely related not only to psychology but also to grammar It is said that as both logic and psychology are about thought, so both logic and grammar are about *language* Grammar, which is undoubtedly concerned with the usages of language, has been almost wholly restricted to what we may call the *informative* as contrasted with the *emotive* use of language.[1] This means that grammar has been concerned with language which expresses information rather than with that expressing feelings, emotions, or attitudes. The sentences which the grammarian examines are regarded as expressing facts or possible facts, they are not supposed to express only our attitude to facts It was recognised that exclamations do this but assumed that sentences do not In some cases this assumption is true, in others it is false, since some sentences function strictly as do exclamations The emphasis which grammarians have placed on the informative as contrasted with the emotive use of language has contributed to the belief that there is a close connection between logic and grammar. Had it been acknowledged that grammar is concerned with the emotive use of language as well as with its informative use, it would not have seemed plausible to suppose that logic might be identical with grammar, for logic is certainly not concerned with the emotive use of language.

---

[1] This distinction was first emphasised in *The Meaning of Meaning,* Ogden and Richards.

However, even were grammar wholly restricted to the *informative* use of language *it* could *not* be identical with logic. For, in the first place, there are different grammars of different languages, but there are not different logics. While in the second place, even if we could abstract elements common to all languages and regard them as a universal grammar—and this is improbable since we cannot be certain that there are any elements common to all languages—logic would not be identical with such a universal grammar. This is because while grammar is concerned with language forms, logic is concerned with that to which language forms refer, that is, to their sense or meaning

Nevertheless, though logic and grammar are thus distinct, it is indubitable that grammar has much influenced logical theory, but this has been a tyrannical not a beneficial influence. The more the distinction between logic and grammar is emphasised the clearer will be our thinking about logic.

We have seen that logic is not specially related to psychology or to grammar, and that it is related to all the sciences, since, though incapable of pronouncing upon the truth or falsity of the premises of any science, its function is to analyse the relations existing between premises and conclusions in all sciences.

CHAPTER II.

THE LAWS OF THOUGHT.

1 General Character of the Laws—In a wide sense, the name "Laws of Thought" means all the general principles of valid reasoning which we shall discuss. But in a narrower sense—and with this we are now concerned—the Laws of Thought are certain fundamental and necessary principles which lie at the basis of reasoning. They are fundamental and necessary because they are assumed in all processes of reasoning exercised upon the facts of the real world, and because we cannot conceive them reversed or knowingly violate them

It is true that fallacious reasoning is common enough, but this springs from a misapprehension of meaning, or from a confused use of terms, for which the ambiguities of language give abundant scope Especially in long and involved reasonings, the force of terms is often unconsciously modified, and even entirely changed, or inconsistent judgments are accepted, with the result of invalidating the argument, but, at no stage of the process does the reasoner *consciously* accept a contradiction.

As always operative in thought, the Laws of Thought are laws in the scientific sense of uniformities; but they differ from scientific uniformities in two respects—they are not established by experience and hence are not subject to modification as knowledge increases, and they are self-evident. As self-evident they differ from *postulates* which have been defined as truths, which, though not established by experience, are demanded by the thinker, where reference to the requirements of the thinker implies that postulates are not self-evident

The view that the laws of thought are self-evident uniformities, or in other words, truisms, involves the rejection of a view which is held by some logicians, namely, that they are standards of what ought to be They constitute no standard of how thought *ought* to be, they simply refer to certain characters of it, as it *is*

Since the time of Aristotle, three such principles or laws have been recognised the *principle of identity*, the *principle of contradiction*, and the *principle of excluded middle*. It is certain that there are other equally self-evident principles of thought, but the study of these lies beyond the limits of the present work Leibniz believed that the *principle of sufficient reason* was a law of thought co-ordinate with Aristotle's three laws, but, as we shall see, this law is connected with experience in a way in which the three traditional laws are not.

2 The Principle of Identity—The simplest statement of this law is the formula *A is A* The concept of identity implies the concept of diversity, for when the proposition *A is A* is significant it is because we refer to diversity as well as to identity The diversity referred to may simply be that of the two occurrences of the symbol *A*, in this case the proposition will mean that both occurrences stand for the same thing, or the diversity referred to may be that of circumstances, in this case the proposition will mean that one and the same thing may exist amid different circumstances without ceasing to be 'the same.' Its most important logical application is to the meanings of names or terms the same term must have the same meaning in the course of the same argument. The logical ideal is that the same term must always have the same meaning

3. The Principle of Contradiction—This principle, which would be better named the principle of non-contradiction, is most simply expressed by the formula *A cannot both be B and not be B*.

On this axiom, together with that of Identity, is based all immediate inference from affirmative propositions. It denies that the same thing can, at the same time, both possess a certain attribute and not possess it, and, as thought must be self-consistent, that we can conceive a thing as at once both possessing and not possessing the same attribute. The same statement cannot be, nor can we conceive it as being, at the same time both true and untrue; nor can the same thing at once be strong and yet not be strong

Different parts of the same object may, of course, possess incompatible attributes, one end of a bar of iron may be hot and the other, in common parlance, cold, but the *same* end cannot at once both be hot and not be hot to the same person, and our propositions must refer to the same end, as otherwise, not being made of identically the same subject, they would not be contradictory of each other Similarly, the same end of the bar may at one time be hot, and, at another time not be hot, but there would be no contradiction in asserting this, for propositions referring to the same subject at different times are not the same proposition

Contradictory propositions, therefore, must refer to identically the same subject at identically the same time, they must assert incompatible attributes as standing in the same relation, including that of time, to the same subject Of course, there must be perfect sameness of sense both in the single terms of the contradictory propositions and in their affirmation and negation, the propositions must be contradictories not merely apparently and in words but in reality and meaning

4. The Principle of Excluded Middle.—The principle of excluded middle between two contradictory propositions is most clearly expressed by saying *A either is, or is not, B*.

This principle of thought has been questioned, and even denied, by writers who have confounded contradiction with other forms of incompatibility, especially contrariety, as, *e.g.* hot and cold, happy and miserable But, while contrary terms mark the utmost possible divergence, contradiction is simple negation. There are, of course, many intermediate stages of grey between the contrary attributes, black and white, and many varying degrees of warmth between the contraries, hot and cold. There are, then, many alternatives besides the propositions, This paper is white—this paper is black, This water is hot—this water is cold. But there is no third alternative whatever between the contradictory assertions, This paper is white—this paper is not white, This water is hot—this water is not hot

It has been urged, as proof that contradiction is not thus exhaustive, that there is a mean between *plus* and *minus*, viz. *zero*; but this is to confuse *relations* with *terms*, plus and minus are relations, zero is one term in the series of numbers Again, one given thing need not be either greater or less than another given thing, because 'greater' and 'less' are not contradictories, and there is a mean, 'equal to,' between them, but a thing must either be greater or not be greater than another given thing, and, if it be not greater, it may be either equal to it or less than it

In short, great care is necessary to avoid the confusion of propositions whose predicates are contrary terms with those whose predicates are contradictories; it is so easy to make the negation, which should only deny a strict agreement in all points, imply a thorough-going and complete divergence If a man is declared not guilty of a certain crime people are inclined, thereupon, to attribute to him perfect innocence; whereas there may have been any degree of approximation to full guilt which yet fell short of it The denial of guilt *as the accusation puts it* leaves open the possibility of some less degree of guilt; in many cases, further enquiry is invited rather than barred

The axiom of excluded middle is necessary, in addition to those of identity and contradiction, to form a basis for some forms of immediate and mediate inference. It expresses that *our power of thought is limited in that we cannot help accepting one or other of two really contradictory statements.*

Of course, the same limitation to a definite point of time holds here as in the principle of contradiction So, by the principle of contradiction we are forbidden to think that two contradictory attributes can be together present in the same subject; by that of excluded middle we are forbidden to think they can both be, at once, absent; but no help is given us to decide which must be present and which absent

From the point of view of language the three principles above discussed may be summed up by saying that whenever we use a term we must be understood to use it unambiguously both (1) positively and (2) negatively, and (3) it must either be given or denied to everything whatever That is, the use of a term asserts all the attributes it implies, and denies all others which are incompatible with those, and everything must either possess all those attributes or be without some, or all, of them.

5. The Principle of Sufficient Reason.—The principle of sufficient reason may be expressed in the words of Leibniz, who first distinctly formulated it:—"*Whatever exists or is true must have a sufficient reason why the thing or proposition should be as it is and not otherwise.*"[1]

This formulation is, however, not clear, for it may refer to the logical grounds on which the truth of a given proposition depends, or to the factors existing in the universe on which certain events *causally* depend There is little doubt but that Leibniz intended it to refer to the latter only. Since the law of sufficient reason thus refers to matter of fact, it lacks the distinctive formal character of Aristotle's three laws, and it is therefore undesirable to regard it as a law co-ordinate with these

---

[1] Cf *Monadologie*, §§ 31-9.

CHAPTER III.

TERMS

1 Definitions of Proposition and Term—A Proposition may be defined as "anything which may be true or false." Now the simplest thing which is either true or false cannot be less than a single assertion or statement of fact, affirmative or negative. Such an assertion or statement when expressed in words is a proposition. For instance, *George V. succeeded Edward VII.* is a proposition, and so is *Queen Victoria succeeded Edward VII*; the former is true, the latter false.

Some logicians have identified "proposition" and "judgment." But the word "judgment" is ambiguous; and for the present it is sufficient to say that a "judgment" is the mental act of assertion or statement, and that a "proposition" is the expression of this mental act in language. A proposition, therefore is a judgment made available for logical purposes through being expressed in words. This, which is essentially the Aristotelian view, has been widely accepted.

Modern logicians use the terms "proposition" and "judgment," not in a sense altogether different from the Aristotelian, but with a difference of emphasis due to a more fundamental analysis. For the purpose of expounding the traditional Logic in this book, we shall here assume the sufficiency of the Aristotelian view.

Now consider any simple proposition, such as "This rose is yellow," or "All men are fallible." It contains two principal constituents or component factors, and a third constituent which may be called the "relating factor" or "Copula."

The constituents, other than the relating factor, are called Terms; one being the "Subject," the other, the "Predicate." A term, or logical "name," is therefore a word or group of words capable of forming a constituent of a logical proposition.

2. Table of Divisions of Terms.—Different divisions of terms have been recognised by traditional logicians. Some of these divisions are based on distinctions between different kinds of words Most of the recognised divisions, however, have logical importance, and the following divisions merit consideration —

(1) Singular and General
(2) Collective and Distributive
(3) Connotative and Non-connotative.
(4) Abstract and Concrete.
(5) Positive and Negative
(6) Absolute and Relative

While divisions (1), (2), and (3) are, and divisions (4), (5), and (6) are not, based on distinctions directly applicable to words, it is the first three divisions which are most important for logic. Each division is exhaustive and exclusive, but the distinctions are not independent of one another, for instance, while no term is both singular and general, and must be one or the other, a term may be both general and connotative

3. Singular and General Terms.—This distinction is based on the number of things to which a word can refer. A *singular name* can be used to refer to one thing only, for instance, 'London,' if used unambiguously, refers to one and only one place A *general name* can be used to refer to any of a number of similar things

(1) **Singular Names** belong to one of two kinds. They are either (*a*) **Proper Names**, or (*b*) **Uniquely Descriptive Names.**

(*a*) *A proper name* is an arbitrary verbal sign whose sole function is to indicate one unique object Thus, the word "this" used by a speaker with a gesture pointing out some particular object is a proper name Indeed, it has been suggested that "now," "here," "that," and "this," are the only proper names Common sense, however, recognises many other words as proper names, and is correct in doing so, since many names are used with the sole purpose of indicating something Names of towns and persons may come to suggest certain qualities, but they can be used simply as proper names, and considered as such what they suggest is irrelevant "London" may suggest "a large city," "situated on the Thames," "the capital of the British Empire," but "London" considered as a proper name does not refer to any of these concepts—it simply indicates the town London. The name suggests these characteristics by association acquired after it has been applied to the particular locality. We shall use the expression "Proper Name" in this its usual meaning, and not in the more technical sense in which such words as "here," "now," etc , have been classed as Proper Names

The fact that more than one object may receive the same proper name does not disprove the assertion that all such names mean only one thing Thousands of men may be named "Brown," and the same name may be borne by many dogs, horses, and other things, for instance, a town could be named "Brown" as appropriately as "Washington," "Gladstone," or "Peel," all of which names are thus employed. It is an accident that more than one object is called by the same proper name, hence the use of this name does not imply similarity in the objects named As a proper name is simply a mode of identification it does not matter logically to how many people or things it is applied

(*b*) *Uniquely Descriptive Names*—Proper names are the simplest singular or individual terms But the individual things we may wish to refer to are too numerous for us to give each of them a proper name of its own, and, sometimes, when a proper name has been given it is unknown to us. We are, therefore, often driven to use a general name with a limiting word to make definite its applicability to only one object

The simplest means of doing this is to use a demonstrative word—as *This* pen is bad, Let us go for a walk by *the* river. Here we are, in both cases, referring, in a perfectly determinate sense, to only one object, and the name is, therefore, singular. No doubt, in the latter case, the river has a proper name of its own, but in speaking of very familiar objects we often use such a limited general name in preference to the proper name.

Again, we may use a many-worded name because it is our only means of indicating definitely the object to which we wish to refer, as its proper name may be unknown to us, thus, if we speak of "The inventor of the Mariner's Compass," "The writer of the Letters of Junius," or "The man in the Iron Mask," we may be using the only means in our power of designating the person we mean.

In other cases, such a many-worded name may be used because there can be no doubt as to its application; as when we say "The leader of the House of Commons," or "The present leader of the House of Commons." Regarded from a point of view limited in respect of time this name can only refer to one definite person, and is, therefore, singular Had we said simply "Leader of the House of Commons" the name would not have been singular, but general, for it could then be applied in the same sense to many individuals, the prefixing "The" or "The present" limits its applications so long as we restrict ourselves to one point of time. In all such cases, however, it is the office, not the individual who holds it regarded simply as a man, to which the term primarily refers, and such holding of office it really implies.

It is evident that uniquely descriptive names mean the objects they stand for in a different way from that in which proper names mean the objects they stand for The latter refer to something directly, the former refer to something indirectly by meaning certain properties belonging to it. In this respect the uniquely descriptive names are like general names, but while these refer to any member of a class of similar things, uniquely descriptive names refer to one thing only.

(2) **A General Name** as defined on page 19 is one which can be used for any out of an indefinite number of similar things, as "book," "man," "dog." A general name, therefore, is used because the thing for which it is used has some attribute which belongs to other things also The name thus implies that everything referred to by it has certain attributes, which determine a class of things, hence a general name is sometimes called a "class" name.

It is not necessary for a true general name that it should be *really* applicable to a plurality of objects, or indeed to any real physical object at all; it is sufficient for it to be *potentially* thus applicable, that is, for it to represent a possibly real, or even an absolutely imaginary, class of things, because of their possession of some common quality or qualities For instance, "Conqueror of England," "Emperor of Switzerland," and "Centaur" are true general names, though the first is *really* applied to only one historical individual—William I, and the second is not applicable to any individual at all in the present or in the past, though both may, conceivably, have an actual application in the future; whilst the third is the name of a purely imaginary being

It is this potentiality of application to a class which distinguishes general names from the second class of singular names, for the latter, though referring to what they stand for through the attributes which belong to it, are not applicable, even potentially, to more than one individual There are thus two antitheses, (1) between singular and general names, and every name must be one or the other, (2) between proper names on the one hand, and uniquely descriptive names and general names on the other hand, and again every name must be one or another of these

Let us compare (*a*) a uniquely descriptive name like "this great writer," descriptive of some particular individual whom we have in mind, and (*b*) a proper name like "John Smith," applied to some known individual and thereby acquiring a descriptive meaning (his personal qualities, etc) The difference between the two cases is, that in (*a*) the descriptive factor, "great writer," is implied by the name before it is given, and in (*b*) the descriptive factor is acquired after the name is given to a particular individual. This difference is of great logical importance, and justifies the view that proper names are non-connotative.

Instead of using a word to mean any member of a class or one unique thing, we may use a word to mean a class considered as one. Words so used are called **Collective Names** Thus "library," "flock," "army" are collective names. Such names have been treated as a separate division of names co-ordinate with singular and general names, but this is undesirable, for within collective names there is a distinction between singular and general names. Moreover we may use general names in a way strictly analogous to the use of collective names

Collective names may thus be either singular or general. There are also two kinds of singular collective names corresponding to proper names and uniquely descriptive names "The Alps," "the Pyrenees," "the Himalayas," "the Hebrides," "the Orkneys" are all genuine proper names for they imply no qualities of the groups of natural objects to which they refer, and are yet collective, for they refer to a group of similar units. "The German navy," "the Greek alphabet" are examples of uniquely descriptive collective names, for they refer to a class of things considered as one whole by means of some character belonging to that class and to no other

Lastly, collective names may be general Such general collective names are general with regard to the class of which they denote a member and collective in respect of the units of which the group is composed Thus "navy" is collective as regards the ships which form it, but general, as denoting a member of the class "navies", "alphabet" is collective as indicating a group of letters, general as the name of a member of the class 'alphabets' We have as true concepts, in fact, of navy and alphabet as we have of ship and letter, and the former terms imply attributes equally with the latter

The group denoted by a collective name may itself be a unit in a larger group which bears a collective name of wider generality, so we may have a series of terms, each, except the first, collective as regards the preceding one, and each, except the last in generality, forming a constituent of the group denoted by the following one . *e g* soldier, company, regiment, brigade, army.

Thus the term collective is relative in its meaning At the same time, a general name which taken by itself is not collective, may, if in the plural number, be used in a collective sense by the prefixing of such a word as "All" in the sense of "All together," as "All these books weigh several tons."

The true antithesis is, therefore, not between collective and general names, but between the *collective and distributive use of names.*

When we use a term collectively our assertion will only apply to the group as a whole , when we use it distributively we assert something about each member of the group individually. Thus, if we say, "Half the fleet was lost in a storm," "The regiment was decimated by fever," "All the novels of Thackeray would fill a small bookcase," "The books filled six large boxes," we are evidently using the terms which form the subjects of our propositions, whether they are 'collective' or 'general,' in a collective sense, and, equally clearly, if we say, "The fleet separated," "The army fled in all directions," "All the men were fatigued," "All the novels of Thackeray can be read in a day," we are using the terms distributively The full sense of the separate words is seen to depend on the context

4. Connotative and Non-connotative Terms. (1) *Definition of Connotative and Non-connotative Names* —In the last section proper names were contrasted with uniquely descriptive names, and with general names This antithesis is relevant to the distinction between connotative and non-connotative names. The *connotation* of a name is a set of attributes belonging to the object or objects to which a uniquely descriptive or a general name refers A proper name, therefore, has no connotation Contrasted with the connotation of a word is its *denotation*, which is constituted by the set of objects to which the attributes constituting the connotation belong Previous to J. S. Mill *intension* and *extension* were used for connotation and denotation. Mill preferred "connotation" and "denotation" because of the convenience of the two verbs "connote" and "denote," which are so easily coined from them.

It is clear that in theory the connotation of a name determines its denotation ; for, when a word implies the possession of certain qualities, only those objects which have these qualities can be meant by the word. In practice, however, as we shall see, the connotation of many words is not fixed, and hence the denotation may partly determine the connotation.

The connotation is formed after an examination of part at least of the denotation, and at all times not only is the connotation likely to be modified by an increase in the denotation, but also conversely, making the connotation more definite or more elastic may decrease or enlarge the denotation. In truth, neither is absolutely fixed, though for the purposes of formal logic it is necessary to regard the connotation as strictly invariable throughout the same argument. **Connotative and non-connotative names are defined in terms of connotation.** A connotative word is a word which has a connotation, a non-connotative word has no connotation.

From what has already been said, it is evident that all general names are connotative, for they are all used to refer to certain attributes When they refer to objects possessing these attributes they do so only because the objects possess the attributes, in fact, it is the possession of these attributes which entitles any particular thing to bear the name. Thus, if we use the name "horse," we not only refer to an indefinite number of animals which are so styled, but we imply that they all agree in possessing certain well-defined characteristics, we should, without hesitation, call a horse any new animal brought under our notice which possessed those attributes.

J. S Mill and some recent logicians have used the word "non-connotative" in a slightly wider sense so as to apply to *purely abstract* names as well as to proper names. By a "non-connotative" name he meant a name which *lacks* one or other side of the two-fold meaning, attributes *plus* object possessing them, and by a "connotative name" he meant one which denotes an object or objects **and implies attributes.**

When any general name is restricted in its application by some limiting word or phrase, its implication is increased, and thus we have the class of uniquely descriptive names, which, though they denote only one object, yet imply the possession of many attributes by that one object. Thus, if we speak of "a mountain" we imply the attributes 'height' and 'composition of rock', if we add "in Asia," we increase the number of characteristics, though we limit the number of things to which the name applies, by adding "high" we carry both these processes a step further, and if, finally, we make the term singular, and speak of " The highest mountain in Asia," we manifestly retain all the attributes previously implied and add to them *uniqueness*. All these attributes are implied by the name, and anybody using the name must be supposed to intend to convey them to his hearers

With proper names, as we saw, it is not so. They indicate individuals, but do not imply any of their qualities No doubt many proper names were originally significant, and implied attributes. Thus, "Avon" in old English meant water, "Jacob" meant a supplanter, "Smith" or "Butcher," one who followed a certain trade But to deduce connotation from this original descriptive character is to confuse connotation with etymology With surnames there is a very strong suggestion, amounting almost to implication, of family relationship But as a surname can be changed at will, it seems clear that now, at any rate, its true function is merely to distinguish the individual, and that it has no necessary implication of meaning

When the proper name of some typical person is used descriptively—as when we speak of 'a Nero," ' a Napoleon," " a Cicero "—it implies by a metaphor the possession in a marked degree of certain qualities It is, therefore, logically no longer a proper name It has become general

(b) *Limits of Connotation* —The connotation of a name has been defined as a set of attributes belonging to the objects to which the name refers No hard and fast rule can be laid down as to what attributes are included in this set Negatively it is true that the connotation of a term never consists of *all* the attributes common to the objects constituting the denotation of a term whether these are known or not, nor does it include all the *known* attributes common to the denotation, nor, lastly, does it include attributes derivative from other attributes included in the connotation Positively we may say that only those attributes on account of which the term in question is used are included in the connotation of the term. This makes it clear that *usage* is the factor determining which attributes are included in the connotation of any particular term. This explains how it is that the connotation varies from time to time.

It is obviously desirable that usage at any given time should be as fixed and definite as possible What may be referred to as the *standard usage* is not determined by the knowledge of any particular person, but by agreement among competent authorities If, for instance, *A* desires to know the connotation of the word " Whig " he goes, if he is wise, not to one particular person, but to a reliable dictionary Undoubtedly the dictionary meanings of some words vary with increasing knowledge, accordingly, the connotation of such words must vary from time to time Nevertheless there are some words whose connotation is static, for instance, square," " triangle " It is because we know how to define such words that their connotation is static

(iii) *Denotation* —Corresponding to proper names which are non-connotative, there are names with connotation but no denotation, such are all connotative names when the attributes they connote belong to nothing, for instance, "centaur," "fairy," "the king of France in 1928 " It has been held that such names must denote something and that what is denoted in these cases belongs to different universes of discourse, for instance, centaurs to the universe of mythology Such an explanation is not satisfactory There are no fairies and no centaurs , it is only confusing to say that such creatures are real in certain universes of discourse When mythologists refer to centaurs, they are referring to a certain group of attributes, a group, which taken together, qualifies nothing. When we refer to centaurs our reference may be the same as the mythologists', or we may be referring to what someone has said or thought about centaurs In the latter case the opinions to which we refer are real, but the centaurs are not, the opinions are about a group of attributes, not about anything which has the attributes

The view that all names denote cannot therefore be accepted But its rejection clearly does not mean that some names refer to nothing—connotative names which denote nothing nevertheless refer to something, namely the attributes they connote.

(iv) *Relation between Connotation and Denotation* —As connotation implies attributes, and denotation refers to the individual objects which possess those attributes, and which usually form various sub-classes, it is evident that, as a general rule, an increase in either will cause a decrease in the other. As we augment the number of attributes implied by a name we diminish the number of things to which that name is applicable, for we exclude some of the sub-classes , there are, for instance, fewer white horses than horses Conversely, if we wish to include under a name a group of things not before included under it, and so to enlarge the borders of the class which the term denotes, we can, usually, do so only by removing from the implication of the name those attributes which before marked the difference between the two classes, or, in other words, by decreasing its connotation

For instance, if we unite the classes, 'white men' and 'not-white men' we must omit from the connotation of the common term all specification of colour , similarly, if we wish to include both sailing-ships and steam-ships under one common name, we must omit the points of difference, 'sailing' and 'steam,' and retain only the term 'ship,' which will be applicable to all the members of both classes, but which implies less than the separate name of either In short, generally speaking, the less a name implies, the more groups of things it is applicable to, and the more it implies the narrower is its range of application. It was shown in contrasting uniquely descriptive names with proper names how the continued addition of attributes increases the connotation and decreases the denotation of a term, till at length the latter is reduced to unity, and the former has become the fullest which that term is capable of bearing, so that connotative singular terms are uniquely descriptive of something

It cannot, however, be said that connotation and denotation vary in inverse ratio to each other , such a mathematical conception is quite inappropriate We can speak intelligibly of halving or of doubling the denotation of a term, but it is meaningless to talk about doubling or halving its connotation , and even could we do so, there would be no ratio maintained in the variation of the two aspects of the term. The application of a term is limited by the addition of some attributes much more than by that of others , thus, to add 'white' to man would not limit the denotation nearly so much as to add 'red-haired,' for there are many more white men than there are red-haired men

Moreover, it is not true that an addition to the connotation of a term will always cause a decrease in its denotation, for as a name does not usually connote every attribute common to a class, the addition to the connotation of any number of these common attributes not included in it will not affect the denotation

There are, for instance, as many mortal men as there are men, so, though 'mortal' is not part of the connotation of man, yet to speak of "mortal men" does not narrow the limits of the class 'men' Attributes of things are in nature very often found in groups, so that where one is found others are found too, and it is evident that, when this is the case, the addition of any of these attributes to the connotation of a term will not limit its denotation so long as the one member of the group with which they are all connected already forms part of that connotation. To add to 'right-angled triangle' the attribute 'having the square on the hypotenuse equal to the sum of the squares on the sides' brings in no fresh limitation, for that attribute is one of a group necessarily found wherever the property 'right-angled' is joined to triangle. There may, thus, be many additions to the connotation of a word which will have no effect on its denotation.

It is, perhaps, scarcely necessary to point out that the idea of an opposite variation of connotation and denotation is only applicable to classes which can be arranged in a series of varying generality, so that each smaller class forms a part of the next larger, such as figure, plane-figure, plane-rectilineal-figure, plane-triangle, plane-isosceles-triangle, plane-right-angled-isosceles-triangle, vehicle, carriage, railway-carriage, saloon-railway-carriage, first-class-saloon-railway-carriage, first-class-dining-saloon-railway-carriage It would be absurd to say that an increase or decrease in the number of members of any one class affects the connotation of the class name; that, for instance, the birth of every baby must decrease the number of attributes implied by the term 'human being,' and that the death of each man, woman, and child, must increase that number It is only when we add an attribute not common to the whole class that we exclude some members of the class from participation in the class name and so decrease the denotation, or when we introduce into a class some things not possessing all the attributes connoted by the class name, that we have to omit part of its meaning, that it may cover the whole of this more extended class, and thus we decrease the connotation

In short, increase of connotation decreases denotation by excluding a whole sub-class increase of denotation affects connotation only when the increase is by the addition of a group before excluded, and which now becomes a sub-group under the term, the meaning of which must be widened to include it

5 Concrete and Abstract Terms—We may define a **concrete name** as the name of anything which is regarded as possessing attributes, that is, as *a subject of attributes*; and an **abstract name** as the name of anything which is regarded as the attribute of something else, that is, as *an attribute of subjects* Mill points out that abstract and concrete names usually go in pairs, for instance, triangle-triangularity, man-humanity, generous-generosity Thus the abstract term stands directly for the attribute which the concrete term connotes, it refers to a quality which, though it can only exist in some object, may yet be thought of apart from all objects whatever. Thus we can think of 'strength' by itself, although we know there can be no strength except as an attribute of *strong things*, or, of *virtue, though it cannot* exist apart from good actions

If it be borne in mind that an abstract name is not simply the name of a quality, but of a quality considered by itself, and apart from the objects which possess it, it will be immediately seen that adjectives are not abstract terms, for they refer to qualities as qualifying objects. Thus in the sentence, "Gold is yellow," "yellow" is not an abstract name, for it refers to the quality 'yellowness' as qualifying gold. It is "yellowness," used to refer to this quality in isolation, that is an abstract word.

Whether a name is abstract or concrete will often depend on the way in which it is used, for the same word may be concrete in one use and abstract in another, thus "piety" is concrete as used in the phrase "the piety of Aeneas," since it refers to piety as qualifying Aeneas, and it is abstract as used in the sentence "Piety is a virtue," since here it refers to the quality piety in isolation from its qualification of any particular thing For logic, indeed, the importance of the distinction between abstract and concrete terms lies in this difference of use Since, however, the distinction between abstract and concrete terms is many-sided, we may briefly refer to its importance to three other subjects, namely grammar, psychology, and metaphysics

Grammatically the distinction corresponds to the distinction between adjective and abstract noun, for instance, "red" is concrete, "redness" abstract

Psychologically the basis of the distinction is a preliminary process of abstraction necessary before we can be aware of that to which the abstract name refers But if an abstract name were defined by reference to such a process of abstraction all general names would be abstract

Metaphysically, the distinction corresponds to that between *whole* and *part* Expressed in the simplest way, we may say that a "part" is considered *abstractly* when it is thought of as existing in separation from the "whole" to which it belongs The significance of this distinction, however, is a subject for metaphysical investigation In this sense, we think "abstractly" when we think of a "part" as if it could exist in separation from the whole to which it belongs

Some logicians believed that the distinction between singular and general names was applicable to abstract names Thus Mill believed that while milk-whiteness was a singular abstract term, whiteness was a general abstract term This view is to be rejected since it rests upon a false conception of the relation between such terms as whiteness and milk-whiteness The *latter is more specific than the former, and this does not* mean that "milk-whiteness" is one out of a number of things which are special kinds of whitenesses On the contrary it means that whatever has the character of being milkwhite will also have the character of being white, while if anything is white it must also be some special kind of white.

Logically, as we have seen, the importance of the distinction lies primarily in the abstract and concrete use of terms We may add that it is important that the logician should clearly distinguish the different aspects involved in the distinction, *i e* the grammatical, the psychological, and the metaphysical aspects.

6. Positive and Negative Terms.—The formal distinction of terms into positive and negative is a particular case of the *incompatibility of terms All terms whatever which imply attributes which cannot co-exist in the same subject are incompatible* This incompatibility may be expressed either by contradictory or by contrary terms The division into positive and negative is the formally logical means of marking the first of these

(i) *Contradiction* —**For two terms to be contradictories it is necessary that they be mutually exclusive and at the same time collectively exhaustive in denotation** , that is, they must be incapable of being predicated at the same time about the same subject, and between them they must embrace everything in the universe of discourse.

Formally, contradiction is expressed by prefixing **not** or **non-** to the term—thus 'not-happy' simply excludes 'happy,' 'not-white' shuts out 'white,' 'not-man' removes 'man,' and in each case the two contradictories evidently include between them all things in the universe of discourse The limitation implied by the last phrase is important Thus 'white' and 'not-white' are not supposed to embrace *all* existing or conceivable things . for 'not-white' is meant to apply only to all colours except white, and not to such things as sounds, tastes, hymn-tunes, half-holidays, etc., etc. In other words, 'white' and 'not-white' taken together comprise everything within the limited universe of colour only

Now the connotation of terms formed by prefixing **not-** or **non-** in this way is simply negative , they imply nothing but the absence of the attributes connoted by the term to *which they are prefixed* We may say then that a **positive term implies the presence of an attribute or group of attributes and a negative term simply implies the absence of the attributes connoted by the corresponding positive term.**

We may, however, have two contradictories in fact, each of which is expressed by a distinct name, and then it is necessary to examine the facts in order to discover the contradictory relation between them, since it is not formally indicated by the names themselves Thus 'British' and 'Foreign' are contradictories in the realm of material things, 'male' and 'female' in that of living organisms Such pairs of terms are comparatively few in number They all have a connotation which implies the possession of certain attributes, and are, therefore, positive

Care must be taken not to class as contradictories terms which allow of an intermediate idea For instance, 'happy' and 'unhappy' are not contradictories, because they leave an intermediate state of indifference between them, we are often neither happy nor unhappy, for the latter word does not simply imply the absence of happiness, but, in addition, the presence of positive misery True contradiction exists only where no intermediate idea is possible, *e g.* equal—unequal.

(ii) *Contrariety* —While logical contradictions simply negate each other, common speech can do more than this, it can express degrees of divergence, as we saw in the case of the terms 'happy' and 'unhappy' as contrasted with happy and not-happy. **When two terms express the greatest degree of difference possible in the same universe they are said to be Contrary or Opposite Terms** thus black—white, wise—foolish; strong—weak, happy—miserable, are pairs of contraries

The idea of contrariety rests on the assumption that we do not simply divide our universe into two classes as in formal contradiction, but into a series of groups which have no sharply defined boundaries, as pleasant, indifferent, unpleasant, painful, where the extreme terms are contraries. One class of terms may be separately mentioned in considering positive and negative terms, namely, *privative* terms. Such terms refer to the absence of some quality where we expect to find it The distinction between privative and non-privative terms is thus based on psychological considerations, *i e.* an expectation which is not satisfied. We think of something as though it were deprived of a quality which it would normally have. Blind, deaf, lame, and dumb illustrate the terms we are describing It is clear that the distinction is of little logical importance

7. Absolute and Relative Terms—This division of terms is based on the fact that the relations of things differ from their other attributes in that they involve direct reference to more than one object If, for instance, we speak of a man as strong we can confine our attention to that one individual, but if we speak of him as a friend we must at once extend our view to include some other person who stands to him in the relation of friendship We may say, then, that **an absolute term is one which implies no reference to any other term. A relative term is one which implies reference to some other term.**

Each one of such a pair of terms is called the *correlative* of the other In some cases each correlative has the same name, as friend, companion, partner, like, equal, near, in other cases the names are different, as parent, son, king, subjects, governor, governed, cause, effect; greater, less, north of, south of But they are always found in pairs, and they always owe their names to the same fact or series of facts.

It must be remembered that it is the fact that the *terms imply* the relation in which the objects stand to each other which makes them relative, not the mere *existence* of the relation; thus a king governs men, but king and man are not correlatives, for the terms do not imply this relation, king and subject are correlatives because they do imply it. Each member of a pair of correlatives connotes the same fact viewed from a different standpoint, paternity and sonship are not two different facts but the same fact viewed from two different sides, and connoted both by parent and by son. So, rule and subjection imply the same condition of things regarded from the point of view of the ruler and of the subject respectively.

The fact or series of facts which is the basis of the relation is called the *fundamentum relationis.*

8. Classification of Relations—In recent logical work the classification of relations has been extensively discussed. Here we can only indicate two independent bases of an important classification

I. (i) A *symmetrical* relation is one which "works both ways", in other words, if it holds between A and B, it holds also between B and A. "is equal to"; "is different from", etc (ii) A *non-symmetrical* relation is one which, if it holds between A and B, either sometimes does not hold between B and A, or *never* holds between B and A for example (taking the second and more important case), "is the father of"; "is greater than", "is due North of", etc Such relations are called *asymmetrical*

II (i) A *transitive* relation is one which, if it holds between A and B, and between B and C, holds also between A and C for example, "if A is contemporary with B, and B with C, then A is contemporary with C", etc. (ii) A *non-transitive* relation is one which, if it holds between A and B and between B and C, then either sometimes does not hold between A and C, or *never* holds between A and C For example (taking the second and more important case), "A is a year older than B, and B is a year older than C", etc Such relations are called *intransitive*

Combining the two divisions, we get four classes of relation (1) symmetrical transitive, (2) symmetrical intransitive, (3) asymmetrical transitive, (4) asymmetrical intransitive.

---

[1] For further information and references, see Stebbing, *A Modern Introduction to Logic*, second edition Ch viii, 3, and Ch x, 2

CHAPTER IV.

THE CATEGORIES AND THE PREDICABLES.

1. The Relation between the Categories and the Predicables—The theory of **categories** and the theory of **predicables** are both due to Aristotle. Aristotle's list of categories was concerned with a classification of things independent of any relation in which they may stand to other things, while his list of predicables was concerned with a classification of attributes as related to a subject. Both lists were modified by later logicians, in particular, Porphyry made an important alteration in the list of predicables.

2. The Categories.—Aristotle's list of categories is a list of the properties one or other of which, in Aristotle's opinion, belonged to every real thing. He recognised ten such properties, thus his complete list of categories is—

(1) Substance.
(2) Quantity.
(3) Quality.
(4) Relation.
(5) Activity.
(6) Passivity.
(7) Place.
(8) Time.
(9) Situation.
(10) State.

(1) *Substance*, *i.e.* that which is permanent amid changes, which has predicates and stands in relations, but is neither a predicate nor a relation. Aristotle distinguished two kinds of substances, primary and secondary. Primary substances

were individuals, such as Plato, and were substances in the truest sense; a secondary substance was either a genus or a species, such as animal or man.

(2) *Quantity, i e.* the measurable amount of a thing, as, 10 stone, 3 yards

(3) *Quality, i e.* the way of being of a thing, such as, red, sweet, loud.

(4) *Relation, i e* the manner of one thing to another thing, such as, equals, greater

(5) *Activity, i e* a manner of the behaviour of things, such as, cutting, writing

(6) *Passivity, i e* the opposite manner of the behaviour of things to activity, such as, is hated, is killed.

(7) *Place, i e* where a thing is, such as, on the table

(8) *Time, i.e.* when a thing is, for instance, at midday

(9) *Situation, i e* how a thing is placed relatively to another, as, upside down, horizontal

(10) *State, i e.* how a thing is, as, sick, asleep.

The particular members of the list of categories are not so important as the purpose which Aristotle had in mind in making the list This was to make an ultimate classification of every real thing. Such an end must always be difficult to achieve, and it is needless to concentrate upon the demerits of Aristotle's classification The following comments alone are sufficient.

Aristotle himself seems to have been aware of its shortcomings, for, while he discusses substance, quantity, quality, and relation at some length, and refers in this discussion to time and place, he very briefly dismisses the rest of the categories This indicates that he realised that his ten categories were not all equally important, nor all coordinate with one another. Substance, quality, and relation now appear to us of greater importance than the other categories, as they probably did to Aristotle himself, and it is clear to us that time and place should not be treated separately from relation, nor activity and passivity from state.

3. The Predicables.—Aristotle's table of predicables is not, as was his table of categories, a classification of things out of relation to other things, but it is a classification of attributes as predicated of subjects. His classification is five-fold—

(1) Definition
(2) Proprium.
(3) Accidens
(4) Genus
(5) Differentia

Different logicians have differently interpreted these five predicables, and we cannot be certain that we know what Aristotle signified by each However, two points are clear, in the first place we can discern certain important distinctions implied in Aristotle's classification, and in the second place Porphyry's scheme of predicables differs importantly from Aristotle's. With these considerations in mind, we may briefly describe each of Aristotle's five predicables

(1) A *Definition* is a proposition which states the essential attributes of the class denoted by the subject, *i e.* those attributes on account of which the name is given (*i e* the name standing as the subject-term of the proposition); and, failing which, that name could not correctly be given.

(2) A *Proprium* is an attribute which does not form part of the definition but which follows from or is a consequence of the attributes named in the definition

(3) An *Accidens* is an attribute which not only does not form part of the definition of a class, but which is not necessarily connected with any attribute included in the definition.

(4) A *Genus* is a wider class made up of narrower classes called *Species*

(5) A *Differentia* is an attribute or group of attributes by which one species is distinguished from all others contained under the same genus

We must add the definition of a class name states the next higher genus to which the class belongs together with the differentia which distinguishes it from that genus Aristotle is speaking only of the definition of a class. An *individual* cannot be defined in this sense (*i e.* as a species contained under a genus).

The relation of species to genus is that of *subordination*, and the relation of different species (of one and the same genus) to each other is that of *co-ordination* Thus, in Euclidean

Geometry, triangles, quadrilaterals, and polygons are "co-ordinate" species of the genus "plane rectilineal figures." The differentia in the first case is "three-sided", in the second, "four-sided"; and in the third, it is "having more than four sides." An "accidental" attribute of any of them would be "having sides of such-and-such a length"

It is clear that this classification of predicables, that is of attributes as predicates of subjects, contains no overlapping classes as did the list of categories. Moreover, this classification contains the following important distinctions: (i) the distinction between *essential* and *accidental* attributes or properties, (ii) between *generic* and *differentiating* attributes.

The distinction between accidental and essential qualities lies at the root of all scientific investigation, for while the scientist dismisses the former, he concentrates upon the latter, using them to frame his hypotheses and where possible to establish laws. Moreover, the distinctions among the necessary relations between properties form the bases of scientific classification and of definition, both of which presuppose the distinctions of genus, differentia, and proprium Nevertheless, we must ask, what is the present scientific value of the list of "Predicables"?

In two respects Aristotle's list has ceased to be as important as it once was. Aristotle believed that one genus was rigidly distinct from another, and one species of that genus from other species, but, theories of evolution show that this is not so, hence, although the distinction between genus and differentia is still important in scientific investigations, it has not the finality which Aristotle ascribed to it Again, Aristotle's distinction between proprium and other necessarily related attributes is difficult to apply, when we attempt to assign reasons for excluding propria from the definitions of certain things we are baffled There appears to be an element of arbitrariness involved in determining the definition of certain kinds of objects, such as dogs, horses This is not the case with geometry, where a certain proprium can be clearly distinguished from the attributes forming part of a given definition, for here propria are distinguished as being what may be deduced from definitions.

4. Porphyry's List of Predicables—Aristotle's list of Predicables was modified by Porphyry, who substituted *species* for *definition*, and made a distinction within *accidens*. His list thus contained the five predicables, *genus*, *species*, *differentia*, and *accidens*, which were either *separable* or *inseparable*.

In appearance the two lists are not very different, but Porphyry substituted *species* for *definition*, thereby abandoning Aristotle's point of view, which was to classify the ways in which the predicate of a logical proposition may be related to its subject when the subject is a general term or class-name. Porphyry appears to have desired to take into account propositions in which the subject is the name of an individual, hence his omission of "definition" A logical proposition may assign an individual to a class, but individuality, as such, cannot be *defined* by any group of logical predicates.

Moreover, Porphyry introduced the distinction between separable and inseparable accidens, an accidens belonging to an individual throughout the whole of its existence was said to be inseparable, while one belonging to an individual for a time only was said to be separable, for instance, *having-a-snub-nose* was an inseparable accidens of Socrates, *drinking-hemlock* a separable accidens But this distinction rests upon a confusion, if we are thinking of the relation between an attribute and an individual, no attribute is an accidens, Socrates would not have been Socrates if either he had not had a snub nose, or he had not drunk hemlock, on the other hand, if we are thinking of the relations between attributes of one subject, an inseparable attribute is identical with a proprium, and a separable accidens is simply an accidens.

Although Porphyry's list of predicables thus rests upon a misconception of the basis of Aristotle's list, it has one merit which the latter list has not, for it indicates more clearly than does Aristotle's list, the nature of *genus*. This is because Porphyry emphasises the relation between genus and species. These are not absolute terms, but purely correlative. A genus has no meaning apart from the two or more species into which it is divided; nor has a species apart from the containing genus. The same term may be, at the same time, a species of the next more general class, and a genus to the less general classes it contains, no term by itself can be styled a genus or a species Thus, in the example quoted on page 29 to illustrate the relation between connotation and denotation of terms, each intermediate term is a species to the preceding term, and a genus to the succeeding

The nearest genus to every term, of which that term is itself a species, is called the *Proximum*, or *Proximate, Genus.* If a term is so general that it is not a species of any more general term it is called a *Highest Genus* or *Summum Genus*, and if it cannot be further divided into species, but only into individuals, it is a *Lowest Species* or *Infima Species*

When a general term is predicated of another general term, it is a genus, and the subject is a species. For example, in the proposition 'The dog is a domestic animal,' 'dog' is a species of the genus 'domestic animal,' and both are general terms. But when a general term is predicated of a singular term, it is a species, for it is under *infimae species* that individuals are directly included Thus, if we say, 'This triangle is an equilateral triangle,' the subject is a singular term, and the general term 'equilateral triangle' predicated of it is an *infima species*, since it cannot be further divided except into individual equilateral triangles.

Hence, we may say that, in spite of the confusion which Porphyry introduced by distinguishing between separable and inseparable accidens, his list of predicables threw light upon the nature of one term in Aristotle's list, namely genus, since it showed the correlation existing between this term and species.

CHAPTER V.

DEFINITION

1 Nature of Definition—Definition, it has been concisely said, is indispensable to clear thinking, and therefore to the communication of thought Confusion may arise in thinking either because we do not see clearly what are the premises involved, or because we do not know exactly what it is that we are thinking about. "In the latter case we may succeed in thinking more clearly if we can define the words by means of which we are attempting to express our thought We define words only when we understand them, and we understand a word when we know what it is to which the word refers, or when we can use it significantly in combination with other words."[1]

We must distinguish Definition from Description Description appeals usually to imagination and memory, definition to thought, but there are different modes of description, some of which approach definition more closely than others Furthest from strict definition is the appeal to imagination through poetry and eloquence Nearest to definition is the enumerative description illustrated in the naturalist's list of marks for identifying a plant or an animal. Hence some logicians have called this method one of *descriptive definition.*

It is clear, then, that descriptions, or "descriptive definitions" (if the use of this term is admitted), may contribute much or little to our knowledge of the nature of things, for while some may serve only to call up a mental picture of the object, others may give a clear conception of its nature. The amount of knowledge contributed by a descriptive definition depends upon the kind of attributes enumerated in it; if these are merely "accidental," little contribution is made, but if they are necessarily connected with the object, considerable contribution may be made, indeed, if they constitute the generic and specific characters of the object, we have what is usually called an "analytic definition."

---

[1] Stebbing, *A Modern Introduction to Logic*, second edition, Ch. xxii. (page 421). This chapter gives a most instructive account of the theory of Definition.

2. **Analytic Definition** consists in making explicit the exact nature of things by stating the genus and species to which they belong. The traditional rule for analytic definition is therefore "*per genus et differentiam*"

Traditionally this latter was considered the most important kind of definition, nor is it difficult to assign reasons for the importance rightly attached to it. Of the five kinds of definition distinguished, this process contributes more to exact thinking than any other. It is also the most difficult, for it involves careful observation, comparison, and analysis of the things observed, abstraction of the mind from their differences, and generalisation We attempt to discern the genus and species of the thing to be defined Reference to the genus implies all the attributes common to the species to which the thing to be defined belongs and to all other coordinate species of that genus, reference to the differentia completes the analytic definition by distinguishing the species to which the term to be defined belongs from all such coordinate species.

In other words, in analytically defining a thing, we first decide what class of things it belongs to, and then we mark the attribute, or group of attributes, which distinguishes it from other members of that class The character of the class is the genus, the distinguishing attribute, or group of attributes, is the differentia

The genus selected must be a proximate genus,[1] as, otherwise, our definition will omit part of the connotation of the term we are defining. If, for instance, we defined 'man' as 'rational being,' we should omit the attributes connotated by the word "corporeal," and our definition would allow the name to be applied to other possible beings. Or, symbolically, if we define a class term whose connotation is *abcd* by referring it to the genus *a* (instead of to the proximate genus, *abc*), and adding the differentia *d*, we plainly omit the attributes *bc* from our definition

---

[1] See page 41.

It must be remembered that when definition *per genus et differentiam* is spoken of, it is not meant that the differentia must be a single attribute, it may be a group of attributes. Each species when referred to any one particular genus can have but one differentia, that is, one set of attributes to distinguish it from the co-ordinate species. Thus man, when referred to the genus animal, is differentiated from co-ordinate species, such as horses, lions, by rationality.

The Aristotelian view of definition per genus et differentiam is to be extended in two directions In the first place since the time of Darwin species are no longer regarded as natural kinds with permanent and definite but diverse characteristics. They are acknowledged to be the results of a long descent from a common ancestry in which successive modifications have produced all degrees of divergence Could these modifications be exhibited completely, it would be possible to construct a genealogical tree in which the species would be shown to be members of one great family, and their affinities with one another would appear at a glance. This gives an important clue to those attributes which are essential to the constitution of a species, and which will, therefore, be in its definition They will not necessarily be those which are important or even essential to the present life of the animal or plant, but rather those which best exhibit its origin. Definition which sets forth the process by which a thing comes to be what it is, and which is, therefore, based on the idea of causation, is called *genetic*

In the second place, it was assumed that only things as opposed to attributes and relations could be defined per genus et differentiam, and, although in Aristotle's sense of genus and differentia this may be legitimate, in a wider sense of genus and differentia both attributes and relations can be analytically defined by means of generic and specific properties; for instance, *brother of* is analytically defined as *male and having common parents with.*

3. Limitation and Formation of Definitions.—We do not *define* a word by pointing to the thing which it stands for. In any case, it is only words which stand for things which can be directly perceived which can be dealt with in this way. And again, we do not define a word by *describing* the thing named Moreover there are things which apart from practical difficulties, cannot be *analytically* defined, such are all *simple qualities*, for instance, *red*, and all individuals, for instance, Einstein.

Among the things which can be analytically defined some are much more easily defined than others Common objects such as chair, horse, dog, are very difficult to define We use words for these objects and know well what these words denote, but we do not know their exact connotation, hence we cannot analytically define the objects they denote.[1] Such objects are to be contrasted with the objects of a science which defines its own terms, such as geometry Thus while the connotation of "rectangle" or "circle" is known and remains unchanged, in the case of common objects like dogs and chairs, fresh advances in knowledge may alter our estimate of the relative importance of attributes, may change propria to differentia, or differentia to propria, and so may revolutionise the connotation of their names, and thus necessitate a revised definition

In fact the growth of knowledge must cause modifications in the analytic definitions of many terms, for were they all fixed, knowledge would be static Discovery and analytic definition go hand in hand, and universal finality in the latter is not to be looked for It could only be possible with complete and perfect knowledge

Not only the growth of knowledge but a change in point of view may lead to a change in definition Examples of this are most common in mathematics. Thus an ellipse was originally defined as a conic section with the differentia that the cut goes quite across the cone, not at right angles to the axis. But in modern works it is defined as the line traced out by a point so moving that its distance from a fixed line bears always a certain ratio to its distance from a certain fixed point Then the fact that such a curve is a conic section is deduced by a long and intricate argument, it is, in fact, degraded from forming part of the connotation to the position of a proprium.[1]

---

[1] See pp. 24, 25

Common objects such as dogs and chairs are not the only class of objects which it is difficult to define analytically; the social sciences are concerned with factors whose analysis is very difficult, for example, wealth, capital, rent, and labour. Attempts to analyse such terms raise the question as to how far such definitions explain the nature of what is defined, how far they only represent general agreement as to the application of a name

This distinction, however, is more apparent than real. It arises from the imperfection of our knowledge Analytic definition is in a sense the end of science, and so long as science has yet to discover the essential nature of things its definitions cannot be more than approximations to truth.

Consider the difficulty of determining what shall be regarded as *differentia* and what as *propria* In mathematics the case is comparatively simple. Such a definition may be given as will suffice to ensure the construction of the figure, and all that can be demonstrated from that under the fixed conditions of space may be regarded as properties The same procedure is not open to us in regard to natural objects, whether organic or inorganic The process of seeking for an analytic definition involves an examination of instances which seem to be of the same kind, and the recognition that these are instances, already implies at least an implicit definition, for otherwise they could not be recognised as such

Ideally then it would be necessary to enumerate all the characteristics of a species, and to determine which were essential, and which were accidental It is needless to dwell on the impossibility of carrying out such a process, yet without it we can never be sure that a characteristic of fundamental importance has not been omitted. The discovery of such an omission may revolutionise a science.

Assuming, however, that the enumeration of attributes has been made as complete as the state of knowledge makes possible, how are we to sort out those which most truly represent the nature of a species? The elimination of accidents will not theoretically present much difficulty, though in practice it is not always easy But we need some principle on which to divide the essence from the property. That which is available in mathematics is not available here: we cannot demonstrate the properties of a natural object from certain given fundamental characteristics The most that we can do is to choose for the purposes of definition those attributes which seem to carry with them the largest number of other attributes, whether we can trace a causal connection or not.

---

[1] Cf. Dr. Benn's *Empirical Logic*, pp. 284-5.

Now such grouping is to a large extent arbitrary, and when a name is given to a group of attributes so determined, and things are called by that name according as they possess or do not possess those attributes, the definition is rather a statement of the sense given to the name than an expression of the nature of the thing

This is seen even more clearly in the case of terms relative to human relations, as capital, wealth, rent, education, right, justice. These are used in so great a variety of ways that for any specific purpose it is necessary, if we would avoid ambiguity and misunderstanding, to state explicitly the range of application we propose to give them, that is, the sense in which we are going to use them

The question has been raised, do we define the verbal expression as such, or what the verbal expression stands for? The answer is that the definition of words is concerned with the way in which they are used The meaning of a word depends upon its use, and we may even say that what is defined is the use or reference of the word For example, in defining the word "planet," we are not defining the objects called "planets"; that is a matter for scientific investigation "We define the word, but there is a word to define only because we want to think about what it expresses."[1] That is to say, we define the "reference" of the word

Some writers on the subject say that we should distinguish different "kinds" of definition, in addition to the "analytic definition " discussed above[1] The following kinds of so-called definition have thus been distinguished —

---

[1] Stebbing, *op cit*, p 427.

(i) " Ostensive definition " is the simplest way of defining a word whose meaning is unknown to us, it consists in pointing to an object by some gesture and calling it by the name to be defined For instance, we " ostensively " define the name " Cleopatra's Needle " by pointing at the object on the Embankment which is Cleopatra's Needle, and saying " That is Cleopatra's Needle "

(ii) *Biverbal definition* consists in substituting one or more words whose meanings are known, for the word to be defined, for instance, " cancel " is biverbally defined as meaning what is meant by " nullify " The process of *translating* is a special case of biverbal definition—thus " chien " is biverbially defined as meaning what " dog " means.

(iii) *Extensive definition* consists in pointing out several objects as *typical* of the thing to be defined It is clear that extensive definition involves reference to objects of a certain kind, that is to say, to both denotation and connotation. It is therefore less simple than *ostensive* and *biverbal* definition, which involve no necessary reference to connotation

It may be said that these are not " kinds of definition " but different meanings which have been given to the word " definition "

4. Principles of Definition.—A good definition should satisfy the following conditions —

I. *It should state neither more nor less than the connotation of the term defined*

II. *It should not be expressed in vague or figurative language.*

III. *It should not be mere tautology*

IV. *It should not be negative unless the whole meaning is negative.*

To sum the rules into one—*A definition should in its content be* (i) *adequate and precise; and in its expression* (ii) *clear, and neither* (iii) *tautologous nor* (iv) *negative.*

---

[1] See W. E Johnson, *Logic*, Vol I, Ch vi and vii

We will now discuss each principle in some detail

PRINCIPLE I.—If the definition embraces more than the connotation of the term defined it must include either some of its propria or some of its accidentia.

In the cases where propria are added to the connotation, the denotation covered by the definition remains the same as that of the name defined, but the very fact of adding these extra attributes suggests that they are *necessary* to the true definition, and that, therefore, other objects exist which possess all the attributes mentioned except these very ones; which is, in fact, not the case. If, for example, an equilateral triangle is defined as a triangle which has three equal sides and three equal angles, this, though perfectly true of all equilateral triangles and of no other figures whatever, is yet a faulty definition, for it *suggests* that there are triangles which may have three equal sides and yet not have their angles equal In all these cases the definition is redundant, and therefore wanting in conciseness and precision.

If an accidental character is added to the connotation of a name as part of its definition, a graver fault is committed. In this case the definition does not refer to the whole denotation of the name defined, for some only of the things which correctly bear the name possess the attribute in question. The definition in this case is *too narrow* If, for instance, a triangle is defined as a plane rectilinear figure having three *equal* sides the definition is too narrow, for it applies only to a section of the figures correctly called triangles The attribute 'equal-sided' is the differentia which marks off the species 'equilateral triangles' from the other co-ordinate species included in the genus 'triangle,' and is, therefore, only an accidental character of that genus

Again, if a labourer is defined as one who performs manual work for wages the definition is again too narrow, as, by the addition of the accidental character 'for wages,' it excludes all slaves from the class labourers of which they indubitably form a part.

If, on the other hand, the definition contains less than the connotation of the name, it is *too wide*, for evidently it is applicable to a greater number of things than are included in the denotation of the term defined If, for instance, an equilateral triangle is defined as a plane rectilinear three-sided figure, the definition includes *all* triangles In other words, it refers to the genus instead of to the species only, and is inadequate

In all cases, then, the denotation of the definition must be exactly the same as that of the term defined, and this can only be secured with certainty by its stating all the connotation of the term and nothing else

PRINCIPLE II —The violation of the demand for clearness in a definition is known as defining *ignotum per ignotius* or *per aeque ignotum*—explaining the unknown by the more, or equally, unknown Dr Johnson's definition of a net as " a reticulated fabric, decussated at regular intervals " is an amusing instance of this To say " Eccentricity is peculiar idiosyncrasy " or " Fluency is an exuberance of verbosity " is, in each case, to give a definition which is certainly not clearer than the term defined

The so-called definitions which are expressed in figurative language are a variety of this fault To say " The lion is the king of beasts," " Bread is the staff of life " or " Necessity is the mother of invention " gives no explanation of the meaning of the term defined

This rule, however, is not violated if a name is defined, for the purposes of a special science, in terms which to one who is not a student of that science would be less clear than the name itself, as, for instance, if for the purposes of Conic Sections a circle were defined as a section of a cone parallel to the base. Definition from its nature assumes sufficient pertinent knowledge for the comprehension of its terms

PRINCIPLE III —The violation of the rule against tautology in a definition is called *circulus in definiendo*, or *a circle in defining*

It is evidently no addition to our knowledge of fact to 'explain' a term by itself or by a synonym. To say " Truth is veracity in speech and act " is simply to affirm " Truth is truth," and this, though it may give knowledge of the meaning of a hitherto unknown term, gives none of the nature of the thing named Thus, logically, it is perfectly useless

The great number of synonyms in English, due to the presence in the vocabulary of words derived from both Teutonic and Latin sources, offers many opportunites for committing this fault, and, it may be added, these opportunities are by no means sparingly used But it is by no means confined to English Ueberweg quotes the following example from the German writer, Maass "'A feeling is pleasant when it is desired because of itself' 'We desire only what we in some way represent to be good.' 'The sensibility takes that to be good which warrants or promises pleasure, and affects us pleasantly, the desires rest on pleasant feelings' The pleasant feeling is here explained by the desire, and the desire again by the pleasant feeling"[1]

It is in cases of long and involved definitions, such as the above—where the three sentences are taken from different parts of the book—that a 'circle' is most frequently found Still, it is by no means uncommon to meet with such 'definitions' as "Life is the sum of vital functions," "Force is a motive power," "Man is a human being" The definition once given by a Church dignitary that "An archdeacon is one who exercises archidiaconal functions" is a very neat example—in this case, intentionally humorous—of *circulus in definiendo.*

There is no tautology when the name of the genus is repeated in defining a term which denotes a subordinate species which has no distinct name but is specified by the addition of some limiting attribute to the name of the genus, as, for example, in defining an equilateral triangle as a *triangle* which has three equal sides. For the species 'equilateral triangle' has no separate name, and is distinguished from the species of the genus triangle which are co-ordinate with it merely by the limiting adjective 'equilateral' Euclid, before giving this definition, has, of course, defined the name of the genus, 'triangle.' This word when it occurs in the definition of equilateral triangle is simply the name of the genus, not that of the thing defined at all, and the definition is strictly one *per genus et differentiam.*

---

[1] *Logic*, Eng Trans, p. 175.

From this principle there follows the fact already referred to, namely, that the name of a simple and elementary attribute cannot be analytically defined, as it can only be explained by a synonym or by itself; for instance, *white* cannot be so defined.

PRINCIPLE IV.—Negative definitions are always less satisfactory than those expressed in positive terms, unless they are definitions of the names of negative notions, in which case they are to be preferred.

It is, for example, simplest to define an alien as one who is not a citizen of the British Empire, for the name 'alien' represents a notion whose sole differentia is just this negative attribute. But, to 'define' virtue as the opposite of vice, or liquid as that which is neither solid nor gaseous, is not to say in either case what attributes constitute the class notion, and are therefore connoted by the name; but to state attributes which are not so connoted. This, besides giving no positive information, is certain to lead to indefiniteness. Merely to say what a thing *is not* gives no clear indication of what it *is*.

Many of the objections to the indefiniteness of thoroughgoing negative (or infinite) terms apply to negative definitions.[1] Euclid's definition of parallel straight lines as "those which lie in the same plane, and which, being produced ever so far both ways, never meet" offends against this principle, as does his definition of a point as "that which has no parts and which has no magnitude." This rule of expression is really involved in the first principle of definition, for the connotation of a positive term cannot be expressed negatively.

---

[1] Cf. p. 32.

CHAPTER VI.

FALLACIES OF DEFINITION

1. General Nature of Fallacy.—The word "fallacy" is, like many other words, very loosely used in the common speech of the present day Thus, any false statement is, by some persons, included under the term , " that men are in the habit of walking on their heads, they would say is a very obvious fallacy "[1] Others include under it any false belief, or any mental confusion whatever, no matter what its origin It seems preferable, however, to use the term in a more definite manner. It is better not to call a prejudice or a mere inaccurate statement, a fallacy, but to confine the term to offences against logical principles more or less perfectly concealed We will, therefore, give as our definition **a fallacy is a violation of logical principle disguised under a show of validity.**

Wherever there is a logical principle there is a possibility of offending against it. There are, thus, fallacies incident to conception, including invalid definition and division, to judgment, to method, and to each valid form of inference. It must be remembered, however, that the difference between these processes is not a fundamental one, but rather one of emphasis. The essence of inference is implicit in judgment, even as judgment is implicit in conception, and is involved in definition and classification. All violations of logical principles, therefore, involve faulty inference, either implicitly or explicitly, and when those in which this fault is implicit are employed in fully stated arguments, they lead to further violations of the rules of explicit inference.

---

[1] De Morgan, *Formal Logic*, p 238.

We will consider the most usual form of logical error—or fallacy—in connection with each department of our treatment To take first, then, those which may lurk in our concepts, and in the use of the terms which express them

2. Faults in Definition.—Any violation of the principles of definition leads to fallacy through faulty or imperfect conception of the force of the terms employed Thought, wanting in clearness and definiteness, is extremely likely to become, at some point or other, actually erroneous. All fallacies due to any kind of ambiguity in the terms employed are thus at bottom, faults of definition, once make the meaning of every term employed clear, and such fallacies become impossible

Under the general head of faulty definition we may include several fallacies traditional in logic since Aristotle, and which it is still customary to designate by their medieval Latin names, as well as one which is specially incident to vague and indefinite conception and which we will consider first

(1) CONCEPT EMBRACING INCOMPATIBLE ATTRIBUTES — Whenever the meaning of a term is explicitly and clearly conceived it is, of course, impossible to include in it incompatible attributes But when one's ideas are not clearly and definitely set forth, this is by no means impossible Thus there have been arguments about "an indivisible portion of matter," where the attribute 'indivisible' was tacitly assumed to be incompatible with 'matter' which was assumed to imply extension, and therefore divisibility The expression was self-contradictory, and could only have been used by one whose thought on the subject was vague and confused, for no one can hold together in clear thought attributes which destroy each other

Again, all the numerous and varied attempts which have been made at 'squaring the circle' may be set down to a faulty conception of 'incommensurable,' a conception which, indeed, embraces the idea of 'commensurable in terms of an indefinitely small unit'

Similarly, many people seem to use the word "infinite" as meaning finite at a very extended limit. Others make "eternal" signify enduring throughout a very long time, whereas the very notion of time, embracing, as it does, the ideas of before and after, and consequently of beginning and end, is incompatible with that of 'eternity,' whose true meaning is existence out of time

(2) AEQUIVOCATIO OR HOMONYMIA.—By a fallacy of equivocation is meant one due to the use of a word capable of two or more meanings Traced to its origin, this implies that the concept corresponding to the word is wanting in clearness and accuracy. In other words, it is a failure in definition Such failure may, of course, be really made by him who uses the ambiguous term At other times its use is merely a sophistical device, the person who uses the term in two different senses trusting that the change of meaning may escape detection

An example frequently given by the old logicians is—" The end of a thing is its perfection, death is the end of life, therefore death is the perfection of life," where "end" is used in the two senses of *aim* and *finish* Evidently what is true in the one sense has no pertinence to the other. Similarly in " Knowledge is power, perception is knowledge, therefore, perception is power," we have an ambiguous use of the term knowledge

In such examples as these the error is obvious and, consequently, not likely to be committed But it must be remembered that a writer on fallacies is bound to choose some, at least, of his examples of such a character that every reader will see at once where the fallacy comes in Moreover, when an argument is, as it were, reduced to its lowest terms, and stated in strict logical form, it is easy to see an error, which might well escape detection if it occurred in a long and more or less involved disquisition, with the premises, perhaps, far apart

Fallacies due to ambiguity of words are, indeed, amongst those most commonly committed As Bacon well says: " Men believe that their reason rules over words, but it is also the case that words react, and in their turn use their influence on the intellect "[1]

---

[1] *Novum Organum*, I 59.

One of the chief sources of ambiguity is that a word which has changed its meaning still retains some of the associations which were connected with its original meaning. De Morgan gives some good examples, one or two of which we will borrow. "The word *publication* has gradually changed its meaning, except in the courts of law. It stood for *communication to others* without reference to the mode of communication, or the number of recipients. Gradually, as printing became the easiest and most usual mode of publication, and consequently the one most frequently resorted to, the word acquired its modern meaning; if we say a man publishes his travels, we mean that he writes and prints a book descriptive of them. I suspect that many persons have come within the danger of the law, by not knowing that to write a letter which contains defamation, and to send it to another person to read, is *publishing a libel*; that is, by imagining that they were safe from the consequences of publishing, as long as they did not print.

"... A similar change has taken place in the meaning of the word to *utter*, the sense of which is to *give out*, but which now means usually to give out of the mouth in words. As yet I am not aware that any person charged with the *utterance* of counterfeit coin has pleaded that no one ever uttered coin except the princess in the fairy tale: but there is no saying to what we may come, with good example, and under high authority."[1]

Confusion between the etymological and the currently accepted meaning of a word is, indeed, always liable to lead to fallacy. In a discussion as to the meaning of a word, an appeal to etymology is really out of court; current usage alone must decide the question.

Nothing is more helpful, and even necessary, for a scientific —i.e. *exact*—thought than a precise set of terms. The social sciences have no such well-established and exact system of technical terms, and it follows that in those sciences fallacies due to ambiguity are most easily committed.

Especially is this the case with Economics. Mill gives a good example of such a fallacy which is still quite common: "The mercantile public are frequently led into this fallacy by the phrase, scarcity of money.' In the language of commerce 'money' has two meanings *currency*, or the circulating medium, and *capital seeking investment*, especially investment on loan In this last sense the word is used when the 'money market' is spoken of, and when the 'value of money' is said to be high or low, the rate of interest being meant The consequence of this ambiguity is, that as soon as scarcity of money in the latter of these senses begins to be felt—as soon as there is difficulty of obtaining loans, and the rate of interest is high—it is concluded that this must arise from causes acting upon the quantity of money in the other and more popular sense, that the circulating medium must have diminished in quantity, or ought to be increased

---

[1] *Formal Logic*, p. 243.

"I am aware that, independently of the double meaning of the term, there are in the facts themselves some peculiarities, giving an apparent support to this error, but the ambiguity of the language stands on the very threshold of the subject, and intercepts all attempts to throw light upon it."[1]

Another ambiguous word is "government," which is used both to denote the system of laws established in a nation and the body of men charged with the carrying out of those laws. Loyalty to the government in the former sense may involve resistance to the government in the latter sense, though a tyranny would not be willing to acknowledge this, and would trade on the ambiguity of the word, trusting that the ignominy which may rightly accrue to resistance to law will attach to resistance to the men whose mal-administration of the law may have become intolerable

"Nature" is another fertile source of fallacy. What, for instance, is "education according to nature"? With the seventeenth century writer Comenius it meant seeking to base educational method on fanciful analogies drawn from the physical world, as, for instance, when he argued that because the sun does not occupy himself with objects one by one—a tree or an animal—but illumines and warms the whole earth, therefore, there should be only one teacher for each class [1] With Rousseau the phrase meant a return as far as possible to the condition of uncivilised man, 'nature' being regarded as the condition from which man starts The same idea is present in the excuse so often given for childish faults that they are 'natural.' On the other hand, Plato and all modern idealists would seek man's true nature in the ideal towards which civilisation can only be regarded as a slow progress, and with them "education according to nature" means guiding the child in the path of this development in the order and to the extent to which a study of psychology shows to be possible.

---

[1] *Logic*, V., vii, § 1.

One frequent cause of the fallacy of equivocation is when a writer or speaker uses a word in a definite and perhaps special meaning without taking steps to secure that it is understood in that meaning "It is very difficult," says De Morgan, "to avoid this form of the fallacy, without giving the meaning of the most essential terms, on the first occasions of their occurrence It is not uncommon to meet with a writer who appears to believe, at least who certainly acts upon, the notion that the right over words resides in him, and that others are wrong as far as they differ from him The writers of whom I speak . treat words as absolute images of things by right of the letters which spell them 'The French,' said the sailor, 'call a cabbage a *shoe* , the fools ! why can't they call it a cabbage, when they must know it is one ? ' "[2]

This last example leads us to notice that all puns are logically instances of this fallacy Lamb, in the *Essays of Elia*, quotes the following from Swift's *Miscellanies* "An Oxford scholar meeting a porter who was carrying a hare through the streets, accosts him with this extraordinary question : 'Prithee, friend, is that thine own hare or a wig ? ' " Similarly, the proof that every cat has three tails, because no cat has two tails and every cat has one more tail than no cat, turns on ambiguity of terms.

It is probably impossible to enumerate all possible sources of ambiguity, and the reader will readily suggest many others to himself We will here only notice one more in which the ambiguity is rather in a phrase than in the separate words of that phrase Words when united frequently have together a compound meaning which a mere union of their separate meanings will not give That is to say, the force of a word depends partly on the context in which it occurs. Thus, " a person undertakes to cross a bridge in an incredibly short time : and redeems his pledge by crossing the bridge as one would cross a street, that is, by traversing the breadth Now, though it is true that, in general, to cross is to go over the breadth, or shorter dimension, yet, in the case before us, the phrase is elliptical and signifies crossing *the river* upon the bridge Nor can it be said that this common meaning is incorrect , that which is common and well known is, in language, always correct "[1]

---

[1] *Great Didactic*, Ch 19.

[2] *Formal Logic*, pp 246-7.

(3) FIGURA DICTIONIS.—The *Fallacia Figurae Dictionis* or *Fallacy of Figure of Speech* denoted with Aristotle a sophism which might arise from supposing words similar in form to be similar in meaning , *e g* that *poeta* is of the feminine gender because most Latin words with the same termination are so The following invalid argument from Mill's *Utilitarianism* seems to fall under this head. " The only proof capable of being given that an object is visible, is that people actually see it The only proof that a sound is audible, is that people hear it. In like manner, I apprehend, the sole evidence it is possible to produce that anything is desirable, is that people do actually desire it " Here Mill assumes that the meaning of 'desirable' is analogous to that of 'visible' and 'audible' But 'visible' simply means 'able to be seen,' and 'audible' 'able to be heard' , while 'desirable does not mean 'what can be desired' but 'what should be desired '[2]

The fallacy has been extended to cover other perversions of grammar, as in the traditional example . " What a man walks on he tramples on , this man walks on the whole day , therefore, he tramples on the whole day " This, it will be seen, is only another form of ambiguity in words, and the fallacy does not differ in essence from *aequivocatio*

---

[1] *Ibid* , p 246. [2] Cf Mackenzie, *Manual of Ethics*, pp 98-9

The most important cases under this head are those in which error arises from the use of paronyms or conjugate words, as different parts of speech derived from the same root. As Dr Davis points out, "These have by no means similar meanings, *e.g* 'Artist, artisan, artful', 'Pity and pitiful'; 'Presume and presumption', 'Project and projector'; What is 'imaginary' is unreal, but an 'image' formed of wood or stone is real, To 'apprehend' is to lay hold on, or to come to a knowledge of, while 'apprehension' often signifies fear or dread"[1] So, to be 'artful' is not the same as being filled with artistic appreciation, an artful lover is not necessarily a lover of art

Mill instances "the popular error that *strong* drink must be a cause of *strength*" as an example of this fallacy, and one which involves the further fallacy of supposing that an effect must be like its cause—using the words in their popular sense People who fall into this error should, as Dr Davis suggests, try strong poison, which is, perhaps, exactly what many ardent teetotallers would say they are doing This fallacy, like the last, is an offence against the rules of definition, and when employed in syllogistic argument gives rise to the fallacy of four terms

(4) A DICTO SIMPLICITER AD DICTUM SECUNDUM QUID A DICTO SECUNDUM QUID AD DICTUM SIMPLICITER —These fallacies are converses of each other, and their essence is the confusion of an absolute statement with one limited or qualified in some way pertinent to the matter in hand In other words, the essence of the fallacy is a failure to determine definitely the force of our terms, that is, it is a fallacy in definition

The traditional example of the first is · "What you bought yesterday you ate to-day, you bought raw meat yesterday, therefore, you ate raw meat to-day," where the fallacy lies in not making clear that the 'rawness' is not regarded in the major premise as a relevant circumstance, and then assuming it to be relevant in the conclusion On this example De Morgan remarks . "This piece of meat has remained uncooked, as fresh as ever, a prodigious time It was raw when Reisch mentioned it in the *Margarita Philosophica* in 1496 ; and Dr. Whately found it in just the same state in 1826." [1]

---

[1] *Theory of Thought*, p. 270.

An example of the converse form is "Everything which is harmful should be forbidden , wine is harmful ; therefore, its use should be prohibited," where the conclusion omits the tacitly understood, but very relevant, condition in the given minor premise of immoderate use

Under the same head must be included arguments which illicitly conclude from a statement qualified in one way to one qualified in another way. These may be called *fallacia a dicto secundum quid ad dictum secundum alterum quid.* An example would be to conclude from the assertion—whether true or not—that to take life in sport is cruel, therefore, to eat flesh from which life has been taken by others is to show a cruel disposition This is to infer from one special case to another special case differing from it in circumstances distinctly relevant to the question of intention, which is the point under discussion. "All the fallacies which attempt the substitution of a thing in one form for the *same thing* (as it is called) in another, belong to this head , such as that of the man who claimed to have had one knife twenty years, giving it sometimes a new handle, and sometimes a new blade "[2]

An amusing example of arguing *a dicto simpliciter ad dictum secundum quid* is contained in the following story : "A servant who was roasting a stork for his master was prevailed upon by his sweetheart to cut off a leg for her to eat. When the bird came upon the table, the master desired to know what had become of the other leg The man answered that storks never had more than one leg The master, very angry, but determined to strike his servant dumb before he punished him, took him next day into the fields where they saw some storks, standing each on one leg, as storks do. The servant turned triumphantly to his master , on which the latter shouted, and the birds put down their other legs and flew away. 'Ah, sir,' said the servant, 'you did not shout to the stork at dinner yesterday if you had done so, he would have shown his other leg too.' "[1]

---

[1] *Op. cit* , p 251

[2] De Morgan, *op. cit.*, p. 252.

More serious instances of the same fallacy are found in applications of abstract general rules to particular concrete cases without taking account of any modifying circumstances that may exist It is easy to fall into errors of this character in the application to special cases of general rules of either social or individual life Hence arise many wild assertions on economic and social questions The argument, for instance, that because employment of labour is beneficial to the community, therefore, unemployed workmen may wisely be set to do work of an entirely useless character, merely to find them employment, is an example of reasoning *a dicto secundum quid ad dictum simpliciter*, as it omits in the conclusion the relevant condition without which the given premise is false—that the work must be productive of some utility

So, too, the application of the 'common sense of our ancestors' embodied in proverbs is very liable to involve the fallacy of arguing *a dicto simpliciter ad dictum secundum quid.* "What man has done man may do" we are told for our encouragement; but it scarcely seems to follow that each one of us is capable of becoming a Shakespeare or a Newton So "a rolling stone gathers no moss" scarcely justifies us in inferring that every commercial traveller must starve.

De Morgan points out that "the law, in criminal cases, demands a degree of accuracy in the statement of the *secundum quid* which many people think is absurd "[2] He then gives two instances which he discusses at length

In the first, a man tried for stealing a ham was acquitted on the ground that what was proved against him was that he had stolen a piece of ham In the second, a man was committed for perjury "in the year 1846," and the judge admitted the objection that it ought to have been "in the year of our Lord 1846" De Morgan argues—and it seems to us conclusively—that in the latter case the *secundum quid* is unessential, for "as things stand, there is no imaginable difference . for there is only one era from which we reckon."[1] But in the former case the difference between the two description is material. For suppose that the two descriptions were put before two different persons "One is told that a man has stolen a ham , another that he has stolen a part of a ham. The first will think he has robbed a provision warehouse, and is a deliberate thief the second may suppose that he has pilfered from a cook-shop, possibly from hunger. As things stand, the two descriptions may suggest different amounts of criminality and different motives"[2]

---

[1] Boccaccio, *The Decameron*

[2] *Op cit.*, p 252

(5) COMPOSITIO AND DIVISIO —The fallacies of *Composition and Division* are converses of each other, and are most conveniently considered together The error consists in joining together things which ought to be kept separate, or in separating those which ought to be kept conjoined In other words, there is confusion between the collective and the distributive use of terms[3] For example, consider the logical character of the following conversation A "Every member of that team is a 'star' player" B. "Then it must be a 'star' *team*" The captain would know better, whether or not he understood it as a 'fallacy of composition" Fallacies of this kind are frequently committed

Such examples are obvious, but they do not differ in essence from the argument given by Mill in support of utilitarianism. He says · "No reason can be given why the general happiness is desirable except that each person, as far as he believes it to be attainable, desires his own happiness This, however, being a fact, we have not only all the proof which the case admits of, but all which it is possible to require, that happiness is a good : that each person's happiness is a good to that person, and that general happiness, therefore, a good to the aggregate of all persons."[4]

It would be difficult, as Professor Mackenzie says, "to collect in so short a space so many fallacies as are here committed."[5] There is a fallacy of equivocation in the word "desirable," here used by Mill in two different senses. But it is with the last part of the argument that we are now concerned. It is an obvious example of the fallacy of composition Put symbolically it is—A desires the happiness of A, B that of B, C that of C, etc, therefore A desires the happiness of $A + B + C$, so does B, and so does C, which is about equivalent to arguing in mathematics that $ax + by + cz = (a + b + c)(x + y + z)$.

---

[1] *Ibid* , p. 254.
[2] *Ibid.*, p 253
[3] Cf. pp 24.
[4] *Utilitarianism*, p 53.
[5] See *Manual of Ethics* Third Edition, p. 219.

The converse fallacy of division seems to lurk in many of the arguments brought forward in support of an encyclopaedic curriculum for all schools. That a knowledge of this, and that, and the other subject is necessary to the community, therefore, that all those subjects should be taught to each member of that community, is the line of reasoning frequently adopted, as, apparently, by Mr Herbert Spencer in the First Chapter of his book on *Education*

The most common form of the fallacy may be reduced to an implicit confusion between a disjunctive and a conjunctive proposition Thus, the spendthrift, falling into the fallacy of composition, argues "I can afford *a* or *b* or *c* or *z*, therefore, I can afford *a* and *b* and *c* and . . . *z*" On the other hand the converse fallacy of division is often found lurking in the argument by which a miserly person refuses to subscribe to any charitable object "I cannot afford to subscribe to *a* and *b* and *c* and . . . *z*, therefore I cannot afford to subscribe to *a* or *b* or *c* or *z*"

The ambiguity of the word 'all' is a frequent occasion for this fallacy As De Morgan says "It must be remembered that the word *all*, in a proposition, is not necessarily significant of a universal proposition it may be a part of the description of the subject Thus, in 'all the peers are a House of Parliament,' we do not use the words *all the peers* in the same sense as when we say 'all the peers derive their titles from the Crown.' In the second case the subject of the proposition is *peer*; and the term *all* is distributive, synonymous with each and every In the first case the subject is *all the peers*, and the term *all* is collective, no more distinguishing one peer from another than one of John's fingers is distinguished from another in the phrase 'John is a man.' The same remarks may be made on the word *some*, as in 'some peers are dukes,' and 'some peers are the committee of privileges.'"[1]

The unhappy and ungrammatical custom which has grown up of late years of using a plural verb after a collective noun, even when the action is that of the corporate body, as "The Senate recommend that such a course be pursued," tends to confuse the important distinction between statements made distributively and those which are only true collectively.

---

[1] *Op cit*, p 248

CHAPTER VII.

DIVISION AND CLASSIFICATION

1. General Character of Logical Division.—*Logical Division is the analysis of the denotation of a term*

By this is not meant an enumeration of the individuals which form the class of which the term is the name, but a statement of the sub-classes into which that class can be divided In other words, it is the splitting up of a genus into its constituent species

The genus which is divided is called the *totum divisum*, or *divided whole* , the species into which it is analysed are styled the *membra dividentia* or *dividing members* In dividing a genus we think of an attribute which is possessed by some of its members and not by others, and this suggests the *fundamentum divisionis*, or *basis of the division*

The same genus may obviously be divided on several different bases into different sub-classes, according to the attributes on which the division is founded Thus, triangles may be divided into equilateral, isosceles, and scalene, where the basis is the relation of the sides to each other in length , or into right-angled obtuse-angled, and acute-angled, where it is the size of the angles. So, the various divisions of terms are analyses of the same genus on different bases When the same genus is thus divided in different ways the process is called *Co-division* , and the classes obtained by co-division more or less overlap each other, for every member of the genus must fall into one class in each division, and the classes obtained on one basis will not correspond exactly, if at all, with those resulting from another If they did coincide the supposed different bases would really be one base.

When the classes resulting from an act of division are themselves again divided into their sub-classes we perform an act of *Sub-division* These sub-classes may be again sub-divided, and so the process may go on until we reach *infimae species*—classes, that is, which are only capable of being split up into individuals.

Of course, in every step of a sub-division, we must have a new basis of division, for each step exhausts its own basis. Thus, having divided triangles into equilateral, isosceles, and scalene, it is evident that we cannot sub-divide any of these classes on the basis of the relative lengths of their sides But if we take a new basis we may continue the analysis, for instance, we may sub-divide both isosceles and scalene triangles on the basis of the size of their angles into right-angled-isosceles, obtuse-angled-isosceles, acute-angled-isosceles, right-angled-scalene, obtuse-angled-scalene, and acute-angled-scalene. Or, if our original basis was the size of the angles, then we may sub-divide acute-angled triangles into acute-angled-equilateral, acute-angled-isosceles, and acute-angled-scalene; while right-angled and obtuse-angled triangles may be divided into right-angled-isosceles, right-angled-scalene, obtuse-angled-isosceles and obtuse-angled-scalene

Every division should be progressive, it should proceed one step at a time, and omit no intermediate species Hence the old logical rule *Divisio non faciat saltum*—Division must not make a leap If this rule is broken we need not be surprised to find that some of the members of the whole we start to divide find no place at all in any of the members into which we have divided it; for in omitting an intermediate class the distinctive marks of that class will probably at the same time have been overlooked, and thus, individuals having those marks, but not possessing the distinctive marks of the lower species contained in the division, will have been omitted

2. Logical Division depends on Definition and requires an Appeal to Fact.—But few words are needed to show the utility of division. Every subject is treated more easily and comprehended more thoroughly when its various parts are arranged in an orderly way. Division, in fact, adds clearness to our notions, as does definition In the order in which we obtain knowledge, however, logical division follows definition, for we cannot divide things into classes if we know nothing about them, and if we know something about them we can in some sense define them We do not select a number of objects indiscriminately, and then seek for them attributes common to them all, which may form the connotation of the class-name we affix to them. We start from the class-names of ordinary speech and from the more or less definite connotation attached to them, and then include or exclude individuals from that class in accordance with their possession of, or want of, that connotation

As knowledge advances the connotation becomes more definite and exact, and the application of the term is in consequence made more precise This is *practically* much less the actual process in some instances than in others, but, *formally*, we must assume the class to be always determined by the connotation and not by the denotation Scientific division must presuppose more or less complete definitions of the names of the species into which a given genus is to be divided , for it is only by appeal to such definitions that we can determine a *fundamentum divisionis* , while every definition of a species-term *per genus et differentiam* suggests such a *fundamentum*.

Hence no division can be purely formal If we are simply given a genus we cannot even begin to divide it , for, of necessity, the attributes which separate one species from another can form no part of the connotation of the genus. Every such attribute can only be known by an appeal to sources of information other than the connotation of the name of that genus Moreover, for the division to be of any practical use, this appeal must be to the objects themselves which are included in the genus , for only thus can we be sure that we are dealing with really existing classes of things Thus every division implies an appeal to matters of fact.

This appeal, without which the formal process cannot start, suggests the basis of the division Formal logical division, therefore, is inadequate for the purposes of modern science, which has developed elaborate schemes of classification. These, however, rest on and assume the formal principles of the earlier process. We shall do well, then, to consider division before going on to deal with classification, and in doing so we shall be following the order of historical as well as logical evolution.

3. Operations somewhat Resembling Logical Division.—Logical division is always a division of the objects denoted by a general name. A singlar term cannot be divided, for it is a name applicable in the same sense to one individual only, and the logical meaning of an 'individual' is that which is incapable of logical division. And the division must stop at *infimae species*, for to go further would be to enumerate individuals, and this, as has been already pointed out, is not logical division. Hence, *Logical Division* must be carefully distinguished from—

(*a*) *Physical Partition*, which is the splitting up of an individual into its constituent parts, as, for instance, a ship into hull, masts, sails, rigging, etc.

(*b*) *Conceptual Analysis*, or the enumeration of the attributes of a class or of an individual, as when we name whiteness, ductibility, malleability, etc., as the attributes of silver.

(*c*) *Distinction of the various meanings of an equivocal term*; as when we distinguish between 'vice' meaning a moral fault, and 'vice,' a mechanical tool.

In a logical division each member of the different species of a genus is a member of the genus, but between the physical parts of a thing and the whole of which they are parts, there is obviously no such relation, nor is there in the case of conceptual analysis. Again, it is clear that the relation between two things meant by an ambiguous word and that word are wholly unlike the relation between members of different species of the same genus.

4. Principles of Logical Division.—That a valid division satisfies the following conditions may be gathered from the preceding section—

I. *Each act of division must have only one basis.*

II. *The sub-classes must be together co-extensive with the whole.*

III *If the division be a continued one* (i e *embrace more than one step*), *each step must be, as far as possible, a proximate one*

Or, more briefly · *The division must* (i) *avoid cross division,* (ii) *be exhaustive*, and (iii) *step by step* Evidently only the first two principles apply to a single act of division , the third refers to the relation of one division to another in the same series

PRINCIPLE I —This principle is fundamental and really implies the other two A division made on more than one basis would be worthless. It would be nearly certain to include some individuals in more than one sub-class, so that the total denotation of the species would be apparently greater than the denotation of the genus If, for example, triangles were divided into isosceles, scalene, and acute-angled, every possible triangle would fall into one or other of these classes (for every equilateral triangle is acute-angled), but some would fall into more than one , viz those which are acute-angled-isosceles and those which are acute-angled-scalene

But we have no guarantee that the opposite fault will not be committed and the division be made *too narrow* by the exclusion of some individuals from every sub-class If we divided triangles, for instance, into equilateral, obtuse-angled, and right-angled, we should not, indeed, include any individual twice, but we should exclude all acute-angled-scalene and acute-angled-isosceles triangles Our division is too narrow. Very probably both faults will be committed , some individuals will be included more than once and others omitted altogether. Thus, if we divide triangles into equilateral, isosceles, and right-angled we include right-angled-isosceles triangles twice, and exclude obtuse-angled-scalene and acute-angled-scalene triangles altogether

It may, indeed, occasionally happen that a division may be made on two ostensible bases and yet be practically accurate. But it is only in the exceptional instances when one attribute solely involves, and is solely involved by, another that this can occur And then, as has been said, the two apparent bases are really one. For example, a division of triangles into equiangular, isosceles, and scalene would be both exclusive and exhaustive; but that is simply because all equilateral triangles, and they only, are equiangular, and so the division *coincides with one made on the single basis of the relative lengths of the sides* Only when we have but one basis of division can we be sure that our sub-classes are necessarily exclusive of each other—that no individual can be placed in more than one

PRINCIPLE II —We have seen that a violation of the first principle is apt to lead to a too narrow division, that is, to the exclusion of part of the denotation of the whole from each of the sub-classes In practice the same fault may be committed, even if that principle be rigidly adhered to, for it is possible to omit one or more of the sub-classes in any division We should get too narrow a division, for example, by dividing triangles into equilateral and scalene, and omitting isosceles

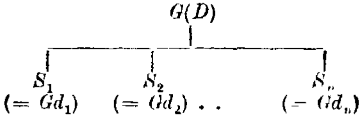
Other examples of too narrow divisions are of men into good and bad, of books into instructive and amusing, of objects into useful and ornamental In such simple cases as these the fault is not likely to be committed, but when we are dealing with matter as complex as nature continually presents to us, it requires great care to ensure that we have made a *complete* enumeration of all the species contained under a genus This, of course, depends on our knowledge It is only when that is adequate that our division really coincides with the distinctions existing in the world. And often we do not know the degree to which our knowledge is complete

So we see that logical division really is an arrangement according to our knowledge—an arrangement which may be of any degree of coincidence with the system of nature. It is here that we see both its inadequacy for science and its basic relation to the classifications of science, which are of necessity arrangements in accordance with men's thoughts of things

The opposite fault is to make the division *too wide*, that is to include among the species some objects not denoted by the genus This, again, is not likely to occur in simple cases; few, for example, would think of dividing coins into gold, silver, bronze, and banknotes. But an indistinct apprehension of the connotation—that is, of the definition—of any of the terms we employ in our division may lead to this fault when we are dealing with complex matter

It is plain that if this rule is broken we have not really divided the genus at all, but either only a part of it—when the division is too narrow, or the genus and something else as well—when the division is too wide In a true division the sum of the denotations of the species exactly coincide with the denotation of the whole, and only when this is the case has the genus given been really and accurately divided

These two related principles may be summed up symbolically. If a genus, G, is divided on the basis, D, into the species, $S_1\ S_2$ - - - S_n, then D appears in each species in a special form, $d_1\ d_2$ - - - d_n The first principle gives



and the second demands that in denotation

$$S_1 + S_2 + \cdot \cdot \cdot S_n = G$$

PRINCIPLE III —This has been already discussed when it was remarked *divisio non faciat saltum*, and it was pointed out that a violation of it usually leads to a division being too narrow.

5. Division by Dichotomy.—A logical division can be assured of absolute *formal* validity when it proceeds by dichotomy, that is by division at every step into a positive term and its corresponding negative This process is formally perfect, for it is wholly based on the principles of contradiction and excluded middle.

A strictly dichotomous, or bifid, classification can always be thus formed, and it can never violate any of the principles just considered But in relation to real thought about real things it lies open to the objections—

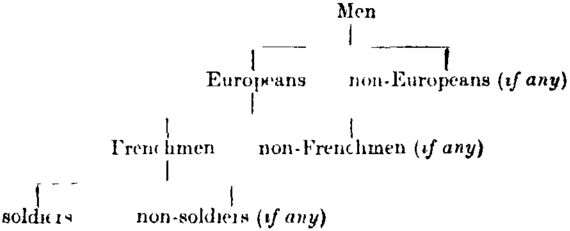
(*a*) That, at each step, one of the sub-classes—and that frequently the largest, viz that denoted by the negative term—is entirely undefined in its extent, and, no matter how far the process of sub-division is carried, the last term must always be formally left thus indefinite.

(*b*) That, in so far as it is formal, it is entirely hypothetical, the division does not guarantee the existence of any of the sub-classes.

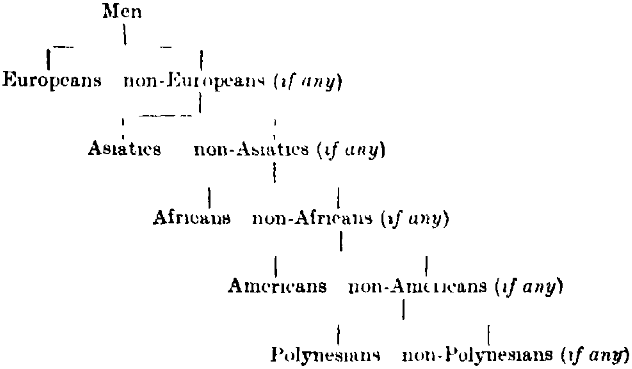
(*c*) That it is excessively cumbrous. It seems absurd to divide a genus into two classes when it evidently falls naturally into some other, and equally definite, number of species, and to do so obscures the fact that these species are co-ordinate.

We may illustrate the process by the following examples:—

Example 1.



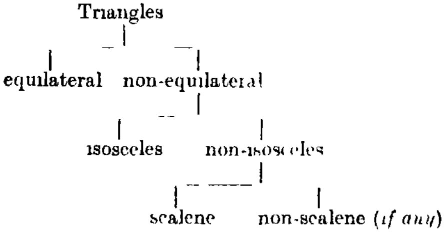
Example 2.



It is evident that these, like all other divisions, in so far as they are not hypothetical, have material bases. It is by appeal to the *matter* that we know that some men are Europeans. Even then, the existence of non-Europeans is hypothetical unless we make a further appeal to outside matter Similarly, 'Frenchmen' is not part of the connotation of Europeans—we must again appeal to fact Every step is, therefore, either partly material, or wholly hypothetical, and it is evident that a purely hypothetical division is of no practical use

In all strictly dichotomous division we must, at least, finish with a hypothetical term of whose existence, or non-existence, the division leaves us absolutely ignorant Every division may be reduced to dichotomy, but, as was said above, it is absurd to do this when we know definitely the number of sub-classes to which our basis of division will give rise Thus we may make the division indicated in Example 3 —

Example 3.



We know that the last class does not exist, for equilateral, isosceles, and scalene forms a complete enumeration of the species of the genus triangle on this basis of division, and these species are co-ordinate This shows, again, that no dichotomous division can proceed one step without appeal to material considerations, *i e.* to matters of fact.

Dichotomy may at times be found a useful mode of testing the validity of a division—particularly in discovering whether it is exhaustive—and in finding the position of any assigned class Thus, Bentham's *Floras*, or descriptive catalogues of

British indigenous plants, contain "Analytical Keys" which are intended to enable anyone who has a specimen of a certain plant before him to discover its species and its technical name, here the arrangement is nearly entirely dichotomous, and, for such a purpose, this form is the most useful (see also p 79). But to adopt dichotomy as a *final* arrangement would be absurd. Sometimes, again, when we are arranging objects, as books in a subject-catalogue, and further division becomes impossible, we add a class "miscellaneous," which really means "all those *not* in any named class", but we never form a *class* that can be indicated by a mere contradictory term A botanist, for example, starts at once with three classes of the *summum genus* 'plant,' viz exogens, endogens, and acrogens, and each of these is sub-divided into varying numbers of orders, and these again into still further varying numbers of genera, and so on, with little or no regard to dichotomy, the object being to make the classification agree with the distinctions existing in the plants themselves.

6. Nature of Classification.—We have seen that logical division is the analysis of the denotation of a term as far as possible on formal grounds, though all reference to material considerations cannot be avoided Such a doctrine can be of little utility by itself, it limits thought to its own content, and thus does not prompt it to advance in mastery of the real world But just as definition builds on the old formal basis of genus and difference, so scientific classification is founded on the principles of formal division It goes beyond it, in that its essential interest is in the actual things of the world and their relations to each other, but it does not discard its principles, for if it did the organisation of reality it presented would be nullified by internal inconsistency. Every classification seeks its material in the world, but it only represents that material truly if it can also stand the test of formal validity

Classification is systematic arrangement, and is thus at once the aim of science and, even in an incomplete stage, a great help to its advance It reduces the bewildering variety of nature to some semblance of order, seeking to group together things according to their likenesses and to separate them according to their differences, and that in such a way that the grouping may be profitable for the purpose in hand. There is no question for logic of an actual arrangement of real things in space and time That, of course, may be made—as of the objects in a museum, but such physical arrangement is only the expression in fact of a system already constructed in thought It is with classification in the sense of mental systematisation that science, and consequently logic, are concerned

The work of classifying the real things of the world is evidently one of extreme complexity, which can only be accomplished little by little The most obvious divisions have been made in the past and are embedded in language. Every general name marks a classing of like things But these classes are not only in many cases somewhat indeterminate in their extent and vague in their outlines, but they generally stand in no definite relations to each other A lexicon of common nouns is in no sense a classification of things, it gives us names of unrelated groups

If, then, we take as a starting-point the name of a wide class of objects, say 'plants' how shall we proceed to group the innumerable plants which exist in the world? Here again the initial work has been largely done for us Language gives us many groupings of individual things of very different degrees of generality So we can speak of cabbages as well as of vegetables, of roses as well as of flowers, of oaks as well as of trees These were the first rough genera and species. The subsuming of them all under the highest genus 'plant' was a great and fruitful step in generalisation

Such groupings were originally based on external resemblance; and the history of science presents many instances in which more exact knowledge has removed whole classes from one wider group to another, even from one highest genus to another, as when sponges were found to be animals and not plants as had previously been assumed from their general appearance

Moreover, such groupings have been made without any particular object The things are massed together first because their similarity in some respect had been noticed. But if we set out to think exactly, it is always in reference to some special purpose. So we want to group the things about which we think in reference to that purpose

Thus if we want to classify plants according to their medicinal qualities we shall take as our basis of division quite different qualities from those we should choose were it our object to arrange them according to their values as foods for man and beast The former of these would interest the doctor, the latter the farmer and market gardener Neither would satisfy the botanist, who would want to think the various plants in those relations to each other which would indicate their origin and descent This last is, obviously, the classification which takes plants just as constituents of organic nature, and it, therefore, best shows their place in the general scheme of things So it would be called the General Classification of plants

There are, of course, as many such general classifications as there are sciences, and they often overlap A medicinal classification will, for example, include objects from both the plant and the mineral world, a chemical classification covers from its own point of view every material object The old idea of a world made up as it were of water-tight compartments, to each of which corresponds a science, has had to yield to the view of one comprehensive system, which, however, man can only study in separate aspects His list of sciences is only a classification of his own modes of thought and investigation, in which he singles out certain classes of forces and relations for examination but this singling out corresponds to no separation in reality A plant is a subject for chemistry, for physics, for geology, as well as for botany. But in botany only it is looked at essentially as a plant, in the other sciences its unity as a plant is disregarded So for plants as plants the botanical is the General Classification; that is to say, the highest genus for botany is 'plants,' just as for medicine it might be 'drugs'

Although there is no real separation, there is real diversity of attributes, hence classifications based on this real diversity are not arbitrary, and the investigator selects as the basis of his classification those attributes which are most useful for his purpose.

7. Special or Artificial Classifications.—In addition to our attempts to organise our thoughts of things for purposes of exact and comprehensive knowledge, we often require to make temporary arrangements of an essentially artificial character. These are intended as a rule to enable us to find or identify any object amidst a number of others That attribute which renders identification as easy and certain as possible is chosen as a basis, whether it has, or has not, importance in itself. A very familiar instance is the alphabetical arrangement which is found to be most serviceable in dictionaries, library catalogues, and indexes of books, the sole purpose of which is to indicate where a certain word, book, or statement, is to be found. At each step the alternatives are quickly narrowed down, until we are led with certainty to the object of our search.

Useful as such an arrangement is as a key, there its validity ends. It is founded on a conventional distinction ; its value is confined to the language in which it is written , it does not admit of any general statement being made about any of the groups which are formed The *M* group, for instance, may —like Monmouth and Macedon—have practically nothing in common except their initial letters Nor does it form a permanent part of the results of the investigation and research to which it is subsidiary

An alphabetical arrangement is impossible where the number of objects to be classified is quite indefinite. Then a less simple method is needed to ensure a speedy identification. Thus the animal and vegetable kingdoms comprise innumerable individuals, and it is desirable for the purposes of study to be able to identify and name any given specimen. Since, from the nature of the case, there are no conventional marks, it is necessary to choose as distinguishing characteristics some property or properties of the objects themselves Any easily recognisable attributes which are sufficiently distinctive will answer the purpose . they are not chosen for their intrinsic importance, but solely as convenient descriptions of the objects specified.

Some of the classifications of the earlier naturalists were of this kind. Linnaeus, for example, arranged plants into twenty-four classes, distinguished by the number or by some other simple characteristic of the stamens This was of great service to the student, who by a brief examination of the stamen and pistil was able at once to assign a new plant to its proper place.

Similar service is rendered by such an index to a more scientific classification as the analytical key prefixed to Bentham's Flora The object is still to enable us to find the name of a plant of which we have a specimen before us. As an arrangement with only two alternatives at every step is found to offer the most ready means for attaining this object, that is the plan almost exclusively adopted Thus, flowering plants are first divided into those whose flowers are compound, and those which are not compound Then the former are sub-divided into those with one seed, and those with more than one , and the latter into those in which the perianth is single, and those in which it is double , and so on. Here we see a direct application of the most formal kind of division—that by dichotomy

A classification which serves as a key to a more general classification is generally called a *Diagnostic Classification* Such classifications have been called *Artificial* as opposed to those based on deep knowledge of nature, which have been termed *Natural* The distinction originated in a doctrine, now exploded, that "natural kinds" existed in nature which were sharply and definitely separated from one another by an unknown and indefinite number of permanent differences, and that a natural classification should correspond in its divisions to such natural groups All other classifications were regarded as arbitrary and, therefore, artificial. But no such fixed divisions do exist in nature, and the distinction as originally conceived consequently falls to the ground. The names, however, are still often retained, and then they correspond broadly to the two divisions we have made

The objection to the terms is that the distinction they indicate by their meaning is not clear For in a sense all classification is artificial it represents that mental grouping most convenient for our purpose, and is based on qualities selected with reference to just that purpose And if it be said that an alphabetical arrangement is purely artificial because it is not based on attributes of the objects themselves, an analytical key will scarcely be called natural because it has such a basis It remains a device or artifice for a special purpose in spite of the fact that the marks of identification are sought in the nature of the object, and are not imposed from without Nevertheless a classification based on the nature of objects is of more importance from the point of view of knowledge than one imposed from without, since in the case of the former one attribute may imply others, and the classification thus suggests generalisations.

8. General or Scientific Classifications.—The aim of all scientific classification is to group objects in thought according to their actual affinities These affinities, as has been said, are many, and differ according to the aspect of truth under consideration The grouping of plants according to their poisonous qualities would be different from the botanical grouping But plants only come into the former classification incidentally—they are not the reason and justification of its existence In the botanical classification they hold the supreme position Yet our knowledge of the world needs to embrace the former relations as well as the latter, and it would be absurd to say that from that widest of all points of view the one is more essential than the other

Yet, as we have seen, certain classifications agree most closely with the most marked and obvious groupings of things The botanical is thus the most natural classification for plants, and indeed the only one which regards them simply as plants But it is as plants that they have their place in existence, as drugs or as food their existence is regarded not in itself, but simply in certain relations to man or animal. So the botanical classification of plants may be regarded as more fundamental than the medicinal or the agricultural, and as dealing more directly with the nature of the things themselves.

Still, this must not be pushed too far For the complete nature of a poisonous plant is only known when its power of harmful reaction on animal life is known. So long as a classification aims at setting out truly relations and affinities actually existing in things it is scientific in its reference and in its nature Whatever the purpose in view—as indicated by the highest genus chosen—the questions to be asked at each step are · In this relation what is the true nature of this object? what are its affinities to other objects? how, then, for this purpose should it be classed so that the arrangement of classes shall correspond with the degree of closeness of these affinities?

The difficulties in the way of classification are great Logic, of course, can never tell us what attributes should be chosen as the basis of a division Wide and intimate acquaintance with the department of knowledge concerned will alone enable a wise selection to be made

The problem is in fact the same as that of framing a scientific definition Just as in common speech every general name marks a class, so, but with greater accuracy, does the definition which results from scientific research. But we have seen how intractable to exact determination are physical objects, whether organic or inorganic In the last resort we are left, say in the case of a chemical element, with the co-existence of certain properties, and in the case of a living thing, whether plant or animal, with the co-existence of certain characteristics without any apparent connection between them Now we desire to hold together in thought those things which really resemble one another, and it becomes essential to determine which collocation of attributes most truly represents their nature In other words, we have to ask what attributes are the most important, and on what principle, if any, are they to be selected

The history of classification shows that men of science have long been groping their way towards answers to these questions, and that only in comparatively recent times has a satisfactory principle been suggested

At first only the most obvious resemblances were noted Thus we have the ancient division of plants into trees, shrubs, and herbs And for a long time the tendency was to seek out the obvious and the superficial, and to count rather than to weigh characteristics that appeared alike. But in time it was found that this procedure was misleading, and that species were often akin although externally very dissimilar. This stimulated men to probe deeper Some characteristics were found to carry with them many others, and though often no reason could be given why this should be the case, they were regarded as dominant characteristics and made the basis of classification Again, the organs which subserve the processes of life are of such obvious importance and utility to the individual and to the species that they were pressed into the same service

The object of the search throughout was to reach divisions in which things having the most affinity should be placed together. The doctrine of evolution taught that affinity should no longer be regarded as a metaphorical term implying resemblance, but should be taken as implying that family relationship which is the primary meaning of the word It thus supplies the principle of community of descent as the binding thread for classification in the biological sciences, and made those characteristics important which indicated a common origin.

Under the influence of this conception the aim of classification has been completely revolutionised Whereas formerly the realm of organic life was assumed to consist of a definite number of species which could be separated from one another by definite marks until the whole number of species had been enumerated and described, now, as it exists at any given moment, it is considered rather as the result of descent from a common ancestry with the modifications which successive ages have witnessed The ideal of the older classifications was that of a formal division in which the highest genus was so divided that the sub-classes were mutually exclusive and at the same time co-extensive with the whole, the aim for the newer is rather the construction of a genealogical tree which will just as surely include every member of the family.

Were it possible, for instance, in the animal kingdom, existing species would be traced back from immediate to remote ancestors until their common origin appeared. At each step the relationship between one class and another would be sufficiently evident for the degree of affinity to be observed, and those which were nearest of kin would be classed together. Thus species which are derived from the same genus would come nearer to one another than to those derived from another genus, and genera would be more nearly related than the species to which they give rise Indeed at each remove upwards the relationship would become closer, until the endless variety of species was seen to issue from an ancestry common to all Such a table would have the great advantage of being drawn up on a common principle throughout

It is not implied that the actual procedure is always from the species upwards The reverse process is also used in practice Indeed the construction of such a genealogical tree is beset with difficulties on all sides For it must embrace not only existing species, but many of which fossil remains are now the only evidence Ideally, too, it should contain others of which the existence can only be conjectured Gaps in the relationship exist, and in many cases all certain evidence of affinity is lost Then the scientist has to fall back upon other characters to constitute his classes

Nevertheless the doctrine of descent with modifications is a clue of the greatest importance, and indicates the kind of evidence which should be sought We are guarded, for instance, from the natural mistake of supposing that characters essential to the maintenance of life are good guides to natural affinity They may be useful, but resemblances in this respect may be merely the result of adaptation

External resemblance is, indeed, of no scientific significance. "It might have been thought (and was in ancient times thought) that those parts of the structure which determined the habits of life and the general place of each being in the economy of nature would be of very high importance in classification. Nothing can be more false No one regards the external similarity of a mouse to a shrew, of a dugong to a whale, of a whale to a fish, as of any importance . . . It may be given as a general rule, that the less any part of an organism is concerned with its special habits, the more important it becomes for classification . So with plants: how remarkable it is that the organs of vegetation, on which their nutrition and life depend, are of little significance [as indications of their true affinities], while the organs of reproduction, with their product the seed and embryo, are of paramount importance."[1] The possession of organs now useless often gives a better indication of descent

The foregoing considerations account for the fact that there are no definite frontier-lines in Nature dividing one group of facts from another—as for example between the animal and vegetable kingdoms The "frontiers" may be compared to *regions* rather than to *lines*

The process of evolution is not yet exhausted Present species are liable to modification or even to extinction, and there is the possibility of new forms being evolved The classifications of to-day, therefore, are in a sense transitory No doubt they are permanent so far as they are correct. Past history shows that vast epochs of time have been necessary for the transformations which are already known, nor is there any reason to suppose that the changes which the future may hold will be effected any the more rapidly The error in taking as fixed what has been described as a cross-section through a continuous process is negligible Error, of course, may arise through defects of observations, or through mistaken affiliation, but this does not affect the validity of the principle employed

Since a direct relation is established between the several classes of such a nature that we can pass from one to another through different degrees of descent, one class may be regarded as subsumed under another because of its affinity The classification is then called *subsumptive* Moreover it is found convenient, in order to describe the classes so fixed and determined, to use in each case, in addition to the terms 'genus' and 'species,' such terms as 'kingdom,' 'class,' 'order,' 'family' Thus the animal kingdom has the vertebrates as one 'sub-kingdom,' and this again is divided into the five 'classes,' mammals, birds, reptiles, batrachians, fishes · these again are sub-divided into orders, families, genera, species, and of the last there may be a further sub-division into varieties.

---

[1] Darwin, *Origin of Species*, sixth edition, Ch xiv.

The theory of evolution has not involved a radical alteration of the classes established before its first enunciation by Darwin in 1859. In Botany, for example, most of the orders and families distinguished by Jussieu towards the close of the eighteenth century are still recognised Other able workers in the same field contributed to the establishment of classes based on real affinities which were little understood Out of wrong principles, or principles only partially correct, arose much valuable work The classifications thus blindly but brilliantly developed received their key and explanation in the doctrine of descent this afforded a clue in doubtful cases, and a norm by which to correct the past and to control the labours of the future "Community of descent is the hidden bond which naturalists have been unconsciously seeking, and not some unknown plan of creation or the enunciation of general propositions and the mere putting together and separating objects more or less alike"[1]

9. Limits of Classification.—The advantages of classification for the purposes of study lie on the surface Whatever introduces order into the material under consideration makes it easier to grasp Where the objects are so numerous that the mind is bewildered by their variety, a system which arranges them in groups on a recognised principle, expecially if it be accompanied by a scientific nomenclature, is an invaluable aid to the memory Only in this way do the species of the organic world, running in number to hundreds of thousands, become at all manageable

Moreover, when a specimen is assigned provisionally to its place amongst those most closely allied to it, properties other than those noted for the purposes of classification are suggested, comparisons may be made, and inferences by analogy may be drawn And so the work of discovery and investigation is aided From classes of things we pass to relations between classes, that is, to laws

In the so-called "natural history" sciences of botany and zoology classification takes the form of a genealogical tree.

---

[1] Darwin, *Origin of Species*, Ch xiv

This is not so in the case of the physical sciences Here the aim of the investigator is to measure, and classification gives place to measurement The laws of physics are quantitative, they are not statements of the relations between classes.

It is only in a few of the sciences that classification has wide scope. In itself, moreover, it is only a preparatory stage. It determines its classes but does not answer the question *why* they are as they are That is the task of *Explanation*, which can only be considered at a later stage.

10. Scientific Nomenclature and Terminology.—*A* **Nomenclature** *is a system of names for the groups of which a classification consists*

No classification could long remain fixed without a corresponding nomenclature, and every good nomenclature involves a good system of classification The two are indissolubly connected It follows that only those sciences which have a fairly complete and generally received classification possess a true general nomenclature—the sciences, that is, of botany, zoology, and chemistry As the classification must be the ground of the nomenclature it follows that the latter is a consequence rather than a cause of extended knowledge.

Whenever a science admits of comprehensive heads of classification a good nomenclature recalls both the resemblances and the differences between classes Such a nomenclature prevents our being overpowered and lost in a wilderness of particulars The number of species of plants, for example, is so enormous that if each had a name which expressed no relation with any other, memory would find it impossible to retain more than a very small fraction of the whole number The nomenclature should, therefore, be so constructed as to suggest these relations There are two main ways of doing this—

(1) The names of the lower groups are formed by combining names of higher and lower generality

(2) The names indicate relations of things by modifications of their form.

The former method is that which, since the time of Linnaeus, has been adopted in botany and zoology In botany, for instance, the higher groups have distinct names, *Dicotyledon*, *Rosa*, *Geranium*, etc The species is marked by adding a distinctive attribute to the name of the genus, as *viola odorata*, *orchis maculata*, etc. These distinctive attributes are not the logical differentia of the species, so the specific name is not a definition They are, on the contrary, formed from all kinds of more or less important considerations, for example, the *Anemone Japonica* was named from the country in which the plant was first observed The names of varieties, sub-varieties, etc., are formed on the same principle as those of species.

The second method of constituting a nomenclature is that employed in chemistry This system of names is founded on the oxygen theory It "was constructed upon . . the principle of indicating a modification of relations of elements, by a change in the termination of the word Thus the new chemical school spoke of sulph*uric* and sulph*urous* acids, of sulph*ates* and sulph*ites* of bases and of sulph*urets* of metals, and in like manner, of phos*phoric* and phos*phorous* acids, of phos*phates*, phos*phites*, phos*phurets* In this manner a nomenclature was produced, in which the very name of a substance indicated at once its constitution and place in the system "[1]

We require, however, *not only* a system of names to designate classes, but *a collection of terms which enables us to describe individual objects* This is a **Terminology,** and it embraces names of the properties—shape, colour, etc —and of the parts of the objects recognised in the science. Terminology is, in brief, the language in which we describe objects, and without description there can be no classification. All the names which form a terminology are general names, though, by their combination, we can describe individuals.

Botany is the only science which, as yet, possesses a complete terminology this, as well as its nomenclature, it owes to Linnaeus "The formation of an exact and extensive descriptive language for botany has been executed with a degree of skill and felicity, which, before it was attained, could hardly have been dreamt of as attainable Every part of a plant has been named, and the form of every part, even the most minute, has had a large assemblage of descriptive terms appropriated to it, by means of which the botanist can convey and receive knowledge of form and structure, as exactly as if each minute part were presented to him vastly magnified . . ."

---

[1] Whewell, *Novum Organon Renovatum*, p 275.

"Thus the flower was successively distinguished into the *calyx*, the *corolla*, the *stamens* and the *pistils*, the sections of the corolla were termed *petals* by Columna, those of the calyx were called *sepals* by Neckar"[1]

If a term used in common life is needed for a scientific description, its meaning must be exactly determined. *Apple-green*, for example, must refer to one specific shade of green Otherwise the term is ambiguous, and, therefore, useless for the purposes of scientific terminology[2]

11. Fallacies in Division.—A violation of any of the principles of division involves fallacy We may thus enumerate three classes of fallacy of division, each violating one of the fundamental principles, viz—

(*a*) Changing the basis of division

(*b*) Omitting part of the genus to be divided

(*c*) In a continued division, not proceeding by proximate steps

These faults have been sufficiently discussed and illustrated in our positive treatment of the principles of division.[3]

---

[1] *Ibid*, p 315

[2] Cf *ibid*, pp 111-13.

[3] See pp 69-72

CHAPTER VIII.

DEFINITION AND CLASSIFICATION OF PROPOSITIONS

1 Definition of Proposition -- In Chapter III we saw that a proposition may be defined as an assertion or statement which is either true or false. The truth or falsity of propositions depends upon their correspondence or lack of correspondence with facts A fact is neither true nor false, it simply exists True propositions correspond with facts, thus, the true proposition *Henry V won the battle of Agincourt* corresponds with the fact that Henry V won the battle of Agincourt. False propositions correspond with no facts, there is, for instance, no fact corresponding with the proposition *Joan of Arc was killed in the battle of Agincourt*

Logic, however, is not directly concerned with the truth or falsity of propositions, since it is only concerned with truth and falsity as either is implied by other propositions assumed to be true or assumed to be false Accordingly, logic is not concerned with the truth or falsity of the proposition *All doctors are short-lived*, but it is concerned with the true and false propositions which the two assumptions of its truth and falsity respectively imply. Thus, if this proposition were true, it would be false that some doctors are not short-lived; whereas if it were false, it would be true that some doctors are not short-lived Hence, while propositions are defined as whatever is either true or false, logic is not directly concerned with their truth or falsity Logic is, however, concerned with the different kinds of propositions.

2. Kinds of Propositions.—Propositions have been classified on different bases, some of which are of greater logical importance than others Traditionally certain distinctions among propositions have been recognised, recent work on logic has made clear the limitations of classifications based on these distinctions, and has suggested more adequate bases of classification

(A) THE TWO CLASSIFICATIONS OF PROPOSITIONS TRADITIONALLY RECOGNISED —These are—

- (*a*) *The threefold scheme of categorical, hypothetical, and disjunctive* propositions
- (*b*) *The fourfold scheme* of *universal affirmative, universal negative, particular affirmative, and particular negative* propositions

(*a*) Consider, first, the threefold scheme The distinctions between *categorical, hypothetical*, and *disjunctive* propositions depend upon the absoluteness and special kind of relatedness of one proposition to another

(i) *Definitions of categorical, hypothetical and disjunctive propositions* A **categorical proposition** makes an absolute statement, as *gold is yellow*, *the quality of mercy is not strained.* A **hypothetical proposition** contains, as constituents, other propositions so related that the truth of one follows from the truth of the other, for instance, *If all prophets spoke the truth some would be believed* The proposition, which is the condition upon which the truth of the other depends, is called the *antecedent* or *protasis*, that which follows from the condition is called the *consequent* or *apodosis* A **disjunctive proposition** contains, as constituents, other propositions related as alternatives, for instance, *He is either a knave or he is a fool*

(ii) *The relations between categorical, hypothetical, and disjunctive propositions* The simplest symbolic expression of the hypothetical proposition is *If P then Q*, where *P* and *Q* are two propositions; the hypothetical states that if *P* is true so is *Q* A hypothetical proposition may be more lengthily expressed as *If A is B, C is D*, but the symbolic expression of the hypothetical deserving special attention is *If S is M it is P*, since this expression brings out the relation between hypotheticals and categoricals on the one hand, and between hypotheticals and disjunctions on the other

It was maintained by Bradley and Bosanquet that hypothetical propositions are most adequately expressed in this way, for they believed that the distinctions between categorical, hypothetical, and disjunctive propositions marked stages in the growth of knowledge Knowledge, they said, starts with knowledge of isolated facts, such knowledge is expressed by categorical propositions As knowledge increases relations between these facts are discovered, we find, for instance, that one fact implies another This stage of knowledge is most adequately expressed by hypothetical propositions Finally we find that one fact not only implies others but implies a definite alternation of others, when knowledge has reached this final stage it is most adequately expressed by disjunctive propositions

No doubt it is true that knowledge begins with knowledge of isolated facts, and that as knowledge advances it becomes systematised so that knowledge of one fact implies knowledge of others, and sometimes of an alternation of others It should however, be recognised that knowledge could only become completely systematised if there were a high degree of relatedness in the universe Only if the universe was a system such that one part depended on, and implied, every other part, would completely systematised knowledge be possible The universe may not be such a system, but, if we recognise the assumption we are making, we may consider in more detail the relations which categorical, hypothetical, and disjunctive propositions would have to one another

The categorical proposition, which we may symbolise as *all S is P*, suggests that it is justified by a complete examination of all instances This, however, is seldom the case The real basis of the judgment is such a knowledge of *S* and *P* as makes it evident that wherever *S* is found, *P* will be present. This would be expressed by saying *S as such is P*, such propositions are called *generic*, and they bridge the gap between categorical and hypothetical propositions. We do not rest content with the knowledge that *S* as such is *P*, but we seek for the ground of this connection between *S* and *P*.

From the generic proposition *S as such is P*, we pass to the proposition *S which is M is P*, further examination having revealed the factor in *S*, namely *M*, which conditions *P*. Finally, we express our knowledge in the hypothetical *if S is M it is P*. Thus from the categorical *all S is P*, we pass to the generic *S as such is P*, then to *S which is M is P*, thence to the hypothetical *if S is M it is P*

We know, for instance, that a particular triangle is inscribable in a semi-circle, we find that all triangles similar to it are inscribable in semi-circles, and thus we know that all such triangles as this are inscribable in semi-circles We find further that this triangle is a right-angled triangle, and thence believe that all right-angled triangles are inscribable in a semi-circle, and lastly, that if anything is a right angled triangle it will be inscribable in a semi-circle

In the opinion of Bradley and Bosanquet, therefore, hypothetical propositions do not constitute a class of propositions entirely distinct from categoricals, they are rather the abstract expression of categoricals In the hypothetical proposition we have got away from the concrete, our proposition is an abstract universal, and deals with only one element in a concrete whole The proposition, if true, is necessarily and universally true, and yet may be incapable of concrete realisation This is seen in such a proposition as 'If a body is given a certain movement, and if no counteracting conditions are operative, it will continue for ever to move in the same direction and with the same velocity.' This is impossible of realisation in actual fact, and yet it is a fundamental law of physics, that is, a necessary element in our mental construction of the material world

Thus the hypothetical proposition is essentially abstract, and, as such, states connection of content But as the generic proposition finds an enumerative or denotative expression in the universal categorical proposition, so many hypothetical propositions can be represented by what may, perhaps, be called concrete conditional propositions, whose general symbolic expression is *If any S is M that S is P*, or *Whenever an S is M that S is P* The denotative form has a reference to occurrence in time and space, it expresses connection of phenomena, and is, therefore, only appropriate when such occurrence is possible In other words, it contains a distinctly categorical element, and is practically equivalent to the proposition *Every S which is M is P* Its form, like the proposition *Every S is P*, suggests that it is based on enumeration of instances, but its real justification is connection of content expressed by the pure abstract hypothetical.

Sometimes, it is an accident whether a judgment is expressed in the hypothetical or the categorical form, for instance 'Right-angled triangles have the square on the hypotenuse equal to the sum of the squares on the sides' really gives the ground for attributing the predicate to the subject, and would appropriately take the hypothetical form 'If a triangle is right-angled, the square on the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares on the sides' But, in all cases, it should be considered whether the categorical or the hypothetical form is the more appropriate, and this depends upon the degree of abstraction involved in the judgment

It was also maintained by Bradley and Bosanquet that as knowledge advances hypothetical propositions give place to disjunctives for, as knowledge increases we see more than that if *S* is *M* it is *P* we see that it is one or other of some kind of *P*. Thus the hypothetical *If S then P* becomes the disjunctive, *S is* P_1 *or* P_2 *or* P_3 The alternative predicates have been subsumed under a genus

Such subsumption is always theoretically possible, and so we see that the *function in a theory of knowledge of the* disjunctive proposition is to express the arrangement and content of a system In other words the subject belongs to a genus, and the alternative predicates are the species which together compose that genus In such a case it is evident that those predicates are mutually exclusive and collectively exhaustive of the denotation of the subject The disjunctive proposition is the form appropriate to the statement of a complete and perfect classification of the denotation of its subject

Our knowledge of the systems of the real world is, however, generally imperfect. It is but seldom that we can in concrete matters set out the whole body of species which necessarily complete the genus. We can say that 'Graduation at the University of London is in either arts or science or law or medicine or music' or any other faculties which we can find recorded in the Calendar But we should be hard put to it to give an equally complete and satisfactory statement of many of the alternatives which yet find a place in our knowledge Moreover we often use the disjunctive form loosely, especially in reference to concrete cases We may read that all the candidates for a certain post must be graduates of Oxford, Cambridge, London, or some other British University Evidently a graduate of two or more of these universities would not be thereby excluded But the system on which the proposition is based is really that the Universities in the British Empire are Oxford, Cambridge, London, etc., and that graduation must have taken place at one of these Then we see that the act of graduation at one is not the act of graduation at another It is these acts which are the real alternatives, and if Jones has performed two of them, he performed them independently and at different times

Such an example—and many others could be given—as *e g.* 'Brown is either drunk or mad', 'Smith is either a liar or a forger', 'Robinson is either a knave or a fool'—shows us that we cannot assume mutual exclusion among the alternative predicates from the mere empty form of the proposition It is true that the logical ideal of the disjunctive proposition is such exclusiveness and comprehensiveness as set forth the articulation of a system But we have to deal with propositions couched in the language of common life, and often they not only represent very imperfect knowledge, but express with considerable looseness the knowledge actually possessed. So to the question—much disputed among logicians—as to whether alternative predicates are mutually exclusive we must reply that ideally they should be, but that actually in many cases they are not, and so we cannot assume them to be so in any. In other words, taking the use of language as it is, alternative predicates do not formally exclude each other

Logically, however, two kinds of alternatives are distinguishable, namely, those which are exclusive but not exhaustive, and those which are exhaustive but not exclusive.

It has been suggested that the term *disjunctive* be restricted for the former which should be symbolised as *not both P and Q*, while the latter should be referred to as *alternatives* and symbolised as *Either P or Q* The difference between a disjunctive and an alternative proposition when used in this sense is brought out by the fact that if we know the disjunctive, *Not both P and Q*, and know that *P* is true, we know that *Q* must be false, while if we know the alternative *Either P or Q* and know that *P* is true, we do not know that *Q* is false, for both may be true Conversely, if we know the alternative *Either P or Q*, and know that *P* is not true, we know that *Q* must be true, while if we know the disjunctive *Not both P and Q*, and know that *P* is not true, we do not know that *Q* is true, for neither may be true

(*b*) Consider now the four-fold scheme of the classification of propositions—

(i) *Basis of the Classification* —The basis of this classification of propositions is the two-fold distinction of *quality* and *quantity* A proposition is either affirmative or it is negative, affirmative propositions differ in *quality* from negative propositions, for instance, *That boy is intelligent* differs in quality from *That boy is not intelligent*

Traditional logic recognised a distinction of quantity as well as of quality. It was believed that every proposition is either *universal* or *particular*, that is to say every proposition is either about *all* things of a certain kind or about *some* of them only [1]

Combining qualitative and quantitative distinctions a fourfold classification of propositions is obtained Thus propositions are either universal and affirmative or universal and negative, or particular and affirmative, or particular and negative.

These it is customary to indicate by the letters **A**, **E**, **I**, **O**, respectively, those letters being the first two vowels of the Latin verb *affirmo* (I affirm), which represent the universal affirmative (**A**) and the particular affirmative (**I**), and the vowels of the Latin verb *nego* (I deny) which stand for the universal negative (**E**) and the particular negative (**O**). By writing these letters between S and P we obtain a brief symbolic mode of expressing propositions. Thus—

---

[1] Propositions with no sign of quantity, such as "Birds are feathered," were called *indesignate*.

A	*Every S is P*	$S\,a\,P$.
I	*Some S's are P*	$S\,i\,P$.
E	*No S is P*	$S\,e\,P$.
O	*Some S's are not P*	$S\,o\,P$.

Though these propositions are categorical, the distinctions of quality and quantity apply also to hypothetical propositions, while that of quantity applies to disjunctive propositions. A hypothetical proposition is negative if the connection between antecedent and consequent is denied, for instance, *If a man is honest it is not the case that he will deceive his fellows*; in all other cases hypotheticals are affirmative, thus a negative antecedent or a negative consequent does not make the hypothetical proposition negative provided that the consequent is affirmed to follow from the antecedent. Hypothetical propositions are as a rule universal in quantity, but they may be particular; when they are, they usually contain *sometimes*, for instance, *Sometimes when a target is aimed at it is not hit*. The abstract hypothetical is always universal.

It follows from the very nature of disjunctive propositions that they can only be affirmative; for they must give a choice of predicates, one or other of which must be affirmed of the subject. Propositions of the form *S is neither P nor Q* give no such choice, nor do they increase the scope of the predicate as do propositions of the form *S is either P or Q*. They are essentially compound categorical propositions. It is true we can have a disjunctive proposition involving negative terms—as *S is either P or non-Q*—but the disjunction is as affirmative as if both terms were positive.

The ideal disjunctive judgment is always both abstract and universal, and expresses relation of content. But it can be expressed in terms of denotation, and in this case we get distinctions of quantity. Thus we get propositions of the form *Every S is either P or Q*, 'Every idle man is either incapable of work or morally blameworthy,' and *Some S's are either P or Q*, 'Some laws are either oppressive or are rendered necessary by an abnormal state of society.'

(ii) *Representation of the Fourfold Scheme by Diagrams, and the Distribution of Terms.*—Diagrams are intended to make obvious at a glance the relations between the terms in a proposition. That any scheme may do this satisfactorily, it is essential that—

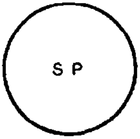
(1) The diagrams employed should be self-interpreting immediately the principle on which they are constructed is understood.

(2) Each diagram should be capable of one, and only one, interpretation, and, conversely

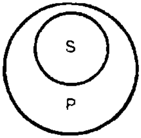
(3) Each proposition should be representable by one, and only one, diagram.

The value of every scheme of diagrams must, therefore, be estimated by the perfection with which it fulfils these requirements

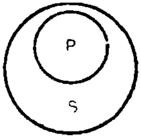
Diagrams in logic often help a beginner to grasp the exact scope of a proposition, and to see more readily the immediate inferences which can be drawn from it



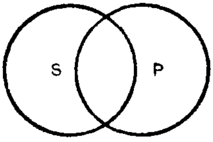
I.



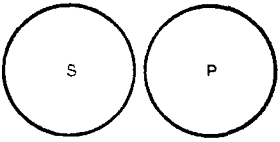
II



III



IV



V

The best known and most commonly used scheme of diagrams is that of Euler, a distinguished Swiss mathematician and logician of the eighteenth century It is based on the actual relations between two classes, each of which is represented by a circle This necessitates the above five diagrams to express all the possible relations

This scheme admirably satisfies the first criterion of excellence—there can be no doubt as to the information given by each of the above diagrams. But, as it is founded on an analysis of the possible relations which may subsist between classes, it is not surprising that the diagrams do not satisfactorily represent the four-fold scheme of propositions. They correspond, in fact, to the five elementary forms of proposition which are necessary to express all possible actual class relations, provided that *some* is taken to mean *some only* and not " some at least ".

I Shows that *S* and *P* are coincident—*All S is all P*
II That *S* is included in, but does not form the whole of *P*—*All S is some* (*only*) *P*.
III. That *S* includes *P*, but is not wholly exhausted—*Some* (*only*) *S is all P*
IV. That *S* and *P* partially include and partially exclude each other—*Some* (*only*) *S is some* (*only*) *P*.
V. That *S* and *P* are mutually exclusive—*No S is any P*.

If, however, we try to fit in the scheme of diagrams with the ordinary four-fold analysis of propositional forms, we find that only in the case of **E** have we an adequate expression in any one diagram Since ' some ' is indefinite in its meaning, it is plain that every other form of proposition can be fully represented only by a combination of diagrams Thus, for **A** we require I and II , for **I** we need I , II , III , IV , and for **O** we must have III , IV , V If, on the other hand, we are given either of the Figures I , II , III , or IV , we cannot say with certainty what proposition it is meant to represent. The scheme, then, cannot represent simply the ordinary forms of proposition ; and when propositions are united into syllogisms, it becomes so complex as to be practically unworkable

Thus, when applied to represent **A, E, I, O** propositions, the scheme does not satisfy either of the two last criteria of excellence To attempt to escape this complexity by representing **A** by II. alone and both **I** and **O** by IV alone—as is often done—is misleading, insufficient, and inaccurate. But even where it is not open to these objections, we should still have an ambiguous diagram; for IV would represent indifferently **I** and **O**. To attempt to avoid this difficulty, as Euler apparently did, by writing the S in the part of the S-circle which is excluded from the P-circle (as is done above) when the proposition intended is **O**, and in the part of the diagram common to both circles when it is **I**, is not satisfactory, for this assumes that we already know what proposition is intended. The diagram itself still remains ambiguous; and, if it is given in the empty and unlettered form, we do not know what predication is intended

Nevertheless, this very want of coincidence between the diagrams and the scheme of propositions will perform a useful service if it makes more emphatic the imperfections of the latter as a mode of interpreting reality The diagrams express facts of existence If, then, we need more than one diagram to represent any proposition we may make about actual things, that very need is a warning to us that our knowledge of the matter is wanting in precision, and at the same time an indication as to where the vagueness lies

The diagrammatic representation of propositions rests on the assumption that the propositions are about classes If this assumption is made we may talk about the *distribution of terms* in a proposition

In every affirmative proposition, whether universal or particular, we assert that certain objects belong to a certain class, but we make no assertion as to whether these objects constitute the whole class to which they belong, we say, for instance, *All lions are fierce,* but we do not assert that the class of fierce things is exhausted by the class of lions Nor when we assert that some dogs are spiteful do we assert that there are no spiteful things except dogs Hence in both kinds of affirmative proposition we refer to some only of the objects constituting the predicate class or term Such terms, namely, those involving reference to some only of the members of a class, are said to be **undistributed**. On the other hand, terms referring to all the members of a class are said to be **distributed**.

The predicate terms of negative propositions, whether universal or particular, refer to the whole of a class, for whether we assert that *All* or that *some* cats are not mice, we exclude cats from the whole class of mice ; predicate terms of negative propositions are therefore distributed It is clear that the subject terms of universal propositions are distributed since they refer to all the members of a class, while subject terms of particular propositions are undistributed since they refer to some members only Thus we may sum up our results as to the distribution of terms in the four-fold scheme of propositions, when these are thought of as stating relations between classes, we have—

(*a*) *Universals* (**A** and **E**) *distribute their subjects*, *Particulars* (**I** and **O**) *do not*

(*b*) *Negatives* (**E** and **O**) *distribute their predicates*, *Affirmatives* (**A** and **I**) *do not*

Thus,
E distributes both subject and predicate
A distributes its subject only
O distributes its predicate only
I distributes neither term

(iii) *Presuppositions of the Four-fold Classification* —It was assumed that the four-fold scheme of propositions was an exhaustive classification, hence every proposition was assumed to be either an **A**, or an **E**, or an **I**, or an **O** proposition. According to the scheme every proposition contains a subject and predicate, these being symbolically represented by *S* and *P* respectively Thus the scheme rests upon the assumption that there is only one logical form in which to express propositions, namely, the form containing subject and predicate united together by the copula " is " or " are," such as *Snow is white*, *Books are expensive* The practical difficulty of expressing all propositions in this form was recognised, for instance, it requires considerable verbal ingenuity to express such a proposition as *More than six men heard the firing* in this form, but it was not realised that there was a more fundamental difficulty, that, in fact, from the point of view of logic there are propositions with neither subject nor predicate.

The distinction between subject and predicate is primarily psychological. The subject is that from which thought starts, the predicate is the development of that thought by the *assertion of something further* The subject is best detected by asking what question the whole sentence may be regarded as answering The answer is the predicate Thus, "This is an orchid" may be an answer to the question "What is this?" when 'orchid' is the predicate, or it may answer the question "Which of these flowers is an orchid?" when 'this' and the actual pointing out which 'this' implies is the predicate. Thus primarily the distinction between subject and predicate depends upon the interest of individuals

Grammatically any sentence can be so phrased that it contains subject and predicate, for instance, instead of the natural expression "More than six men heard the firing," we may use the expression, "All those, who together made more than six men, were hearers of the firing", but such verbal changes are important for one reason only This is that their very clumsiness suggests that we are attempting to change something which cannot be changed, namely, the form or structure of the proposition While some propositions assert that attributes belong to things, others do not, and no verbal ingenuity on our part will make them do so The proposition *Brutus killed Caesar* can be expressed as "Brutus is one who killed Caesar," but this sentence means the *relational* proposition *Brutus killed Caesar* where there are two terms related to one another, not one subject possessing an attribute

The four-fold scheme of propositions, by assuming that all propositions were reducible to the subject attribute form, thus obscured the fact that propositions have different forms or structures

We have seen that Euler's diagrammatic representation of propositions rests on the assumption that propositions belonging to the four-fold scheme refer to relations between classes, and it is the case that traditional logic put forward two views concerning the analysis of propositions In the first place it was maintained that propositions expressed relations between classes, this was known as *the class inclusion* theory of propositions. It was also maintained that propositions referred to a predicative relation between subject and attribute; this was known as *the predicative theory of propositions.* Both theories are too limited in scope to be adequate. While some propositions do undoubtedly refer to relations between classes, and others undoubtedly refer to the relation between subject and attribute, there are yet others which refer to neither of these relations.

Inquiry into forms of propositions other than subject-predicate propositions has shown that relational propositions are equally real and important Relational propositions may be distinguished according to the number and nature of their terms for instance, terms may be individuals or classes; while a relation may have two terms only, as *kills*, or three terms, as *between*, and so on

One of the consequences of the failure of the traditional scheme to recognise relational propositions and their different kinds was that such propositions as *Socrates was a Greek* and *All Greeks are men* were both grouped together as **A** propositions. The distinction between them was partly recognised, for such propositions as the former, that is, propositions containing singular terms as their subjects, were described as *singular*; but it was not seen how important their difference was It was not seen that the singular proposition asserts that an individual belongs to a class while such a proposition as *All Greeks are men* asserts a relation between two classes.

(B) CLASSIFICATION OF PROPOSITIONS BASED ON DISTINCTIONS OVERLOOKED IN THE TRADITIONAL SCHEMES.—The chief defects of the traditional classification of propositions consist in treating every categorical proposition as though it ascribed attributes to a subject, and in treating every singular proposition technically as a universal. It is impossible to draw up a *complete* classification of all possible propositional forms; but the following classification shows the nature of the work which has recently been done.

The primary and fundamental distinction is between Singular propositions and General propositions. A Singular proposition is one the subject of which is a Singular term, and which therefore, directly or indirectly, explicitly or by implication, limits its reference to a particular proposition in space and time. A General proposition, as the term is understood in recent Logic, is one whose range of reference is not limited in this way.

Under the head of Singular propositions we find

(i) Propositions which are logically subject-less. "Thunder!" "Magnificent!" etc Here the space-time reference is essential but indefinite, so far as the content of the proposition goes In others it is more definite "Now is the time," "It's raining," etc , and quite definite in propositions beginning with "This," "That," "Here," "There," and equivalent words, although the logical subject is not named.

(ii) In Singular propositions where the logical subject is named, the space-time reference may be entirely indirect or implicit, but in every such statement, even where the statement is about the history of a man or a nation, as in "Alexander the Great penetrated as far as India"—the definite space-time reference is implicit

Among Singular propositions in which the logical subject is named, we find (*a*) Subject-attribute propositions, the familiar type ascribing a quality or attribute to the subject named, (*b*) Class-membership propositions, assigning the subject to a particular class, as in "Alexander was a great military leader"; (*c*) Relational propositions, stating a relation between two or more terms, as in "Alexander invaded India," "Gainsborough is between Lincoln and Doncaster"

Intermediate between Singular and General propositions are those propositions, apparently general, where the subject is quantified by "all" or "some" but which rest upon enumeration, complete or incomplete They are implicitly cases of counting They state the inclusion or exclusion of classes in reference to one another.

A General proposition, in the strict sense of the word, is one which states a relation between an abstract concept and other abstract concepts It does not affirm a predicate of a subject. Such a proposition is logically "implicative," stating a relation of implication between two propositions.

This is concealed in the contracted form "If A, then C,"—"If human, then fallible" The logical meaning is, "If any being is human, then that being is fallible," and the whole proposition asserts that that the first constituent proposition *implies* the second The *ground* of the implication is not stated in the implicative proposition

Disjunctive and alternative propositions are also general in their logical nature A disjunctive proposition, in the proper meaning of the word, states alternatives which are mutually exclusive "Either A or B," where A and B stand for simple propositions (*i e* propositions which do not contain other propositions as constituents) The logical meaning is "Not both A and B." An alternative proposition is one in which the constituent propositions are simply *alternatives* and not necessarily exclusive of one another They are not "disjoined", and the form "Either A or B" is the natural logical form.

We see therefore that disjunctive and alternative propositions are logically general, because they express a connection of attributes expanded into a disjunction or an alternation[1]

---

[1] For further information and references, see Mace, *Principles of Logic*, Ch iii, iv, and viii, Eaton, *General Logic*, Part III, and Stebbing, *Modern Introduction to Logic*, 2nd edn, Ch viii and following

CHAPTER IX.

FALLACIES INCIDENT TO JUDGMENT.

1. Propositions involving Self-contradiction.—The fallacies incident to judgment are not essentially different from those incident to conception, as, indeed, might be anticipated from the fundamental identity of mental process underlying the two forms of thought In a clearly apprehended proposition there can, of course, be no incompatibility between predicate and subject But when the force of the proposition is not clearly apprehended such incompatibility is by no means impossible.

A proposition involving incompatibility between predicate and subject is self-contradictory One class of self-contradictory proposition is specially interesting. The old logical puzzle involved in 'Epimenides the Cretan says that all Cretans are liars, therefore Epimenides can only speak the truth if he lies, and lies if he speaks the truth,' affords an example of this class of self-contradictory propositions For, Epimenides, a Cretan, says that all Cretans are liars, hence, if what Epimenides says is true, this statement is false, and if what he says is false, it is true Again, the statement that every rule has an exception is true only if it is itself false

The solution of such paradoxes lies in distinguishing a certain class of things of which certain attributes can be predicated from other things of which such attributes cannot be predicated If Epimenides asserts that all statements made by Cretans are false, he, being a Cretan, avoids contradiction only by so limiting the class of statements to which he is referring that it excludes such statements as his own. The limitation required is such that statements about *all* statements are excluded. A similar solution exists in the case of *Every rule has an exception*, for to avoid self-contradiction this statement must not refer to itself as a rule, this is to say, that it must be limited to rules of a certain kind, namely, those excluding reference to *all* rules.

2. Misinterpretation of Categorical Propositions.—Even when the meaning of each individual word in a sentence is clearly apprehended, there is still a possibility of misunderstanding the statement as a whole, owing to some ambiguity of construction or of interpretation This, of course, results from the dependence of terms upon the context for their full meaning. The two chief cases—**Amphibolia** and **Accentus**—were noticed by Aristotle

(i) *Amphibolia*—The *Fallacia Amphiboliae* originates in ambiguity due to the construction of a sentence It is in essence a misinterpretation of a proposition. It does not, therefore, differ fundamentally from fallacies of ambiguous terms, for an ambiguous term employed in a proposition necessarily leads to that proposition also being ambiguous. However, in amphiboly the ambiguity lies in the general structure of the proposition rather than in the terms it contains.

Latin with its construction of accusative with infinitive in indirect narration lent itself very readily to this form of ambiguity. Thus, the oracle given to Pyrrhus "Aio te, Aeacida, Romanos vincere posse"—"Pyrrhus the Romans shall, I say, subdue"—left it entirely in doubt on which side victory was to lie This is very similar, as Shakespeare makes the Duke of York point out, to the witch's prophecy in *Henry VI.*—"The Duke yet lives that Henry shall depose"[1] Open in the same way to double interpretation is the line in W. R. Spencer's poem *Gelert* "The noble hound the wolf hath slain." The walls of Windsor Castle still bear the ambiguous sentence "Hoc fecit Wykeham," whose capability of a double reading is said to have averted the King's displeasure from the bishop, who, like a true courtier, explained it as meaning that the tower made him.

---

[1] *Second Part*, Act I, Sc 4.

One has not far to seek to find numerous instances of amphiboly in modern English, generally due to want of precision in the order in which the words are arranged, a point of great importance in an analytic language A few examples may be given "The first photograph is that of a fourteen pound pike taken in a back yard from the top of a step-ladder", "A lady (through circumstances) wishes to let part of her well-furnished house", "The Territorial band played the hymns as well as the church organ", "A gentleman shortly returning to Australia wishes to meet a lady and marry her before doing so", "The birds were somewhat wild, but all thoroughly enjoyed the sport", "Long leave will be granted to Parents or Guardians of all boys who apply for it", "It would seem possible that almost any woman, no matter what the extent or depth of her wrinkles, might have been removed entirely and for ever by means of this lucky discovery."[1]

A subtle form of amphiboly, and one not uncommon in controversial writings is instanced by De Morgan "Equivocation may be used in the form of a proposition, as for instance, in throwing what ought to be an affirmative into the form of a qualified negative, with the view of making the negative form produce an impression Thus a controversial writer will assert that his opponent has not attempted to touch a certain point, except by the absurd assertion, etc, etc., etc. To which the other party might justly reply 'Your own words show that I have made the attempt, though your phrase has a tendency, perhaps intended, to make your reader think that there is none, or at least to blind him to the difference between *none* and *none that you approve of*' "[2]

(ii) *Accentus* —The *Fallacia Accentus* or *Prosodiae* was, with Aristotle, due to the fact that in Greek the same word, differently accentuated, had a different meaning. In the earlier times Greek writing was devoid of accents and breathings, and hence words when written were sometimes ambiguous which when spoken were not so Aristotle consequently remarks that this ambiguity can scarcely occur in speech But with us the fallacy may be committed by means of false stress either in speech or in writing Thus, as De Morgan points out, the commandment, 'Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour,' may be read "either so as to convey the opposite of a prohibition, or to suggest that subornation is not forbidden, or that anything false except evidence is permitted, or that it may be given *for* him, or that it is only against *neighbours* that false witness may not be borne "[1]

---

[1] The above are actual examples from the periodical literature of the day and are borrowed from *Mr. Punch,* who collects a few such gems every week.

[2] De Morgan, *ibid*, p. 247.

Other ways in which this fallacy may be fallen into are thus summed up by the same writer "A statement of what was said with the suppression of such tone as was meant to accompany it, is the *fallacia accentus* Gesture and manner often make the difference between irony and sarcasm, and ordinary assertion A person who quotes another, omitting anything which serves to show the *animus* of the meaning; or one who without notice puts any word of the author he cites in italics, so as to alter its emphasis, or one who attempts to heighten his own assertions, so as to make them imply more than he would openly say, by italics, or notes of exclamation, or otherwise, is guilty of the *fallacia accentus*. . . . I may here observe that irony is generally accompanied by the *fallacia accentus*, perhaps cannot be assumed without it A writer disclaims attempting a certain task as above his powers, or doubts about deciding a proposition as beyond his knowledge A self-sufficient opponent is very effective in assuring him that his diffidence is highly commendable, and fully justified by the circumstances "[2]

3. Misinterpretation of Hypothetical Propositions.—The chief fallacy of misinterpretation of a hypothetical proposition consists in assuming that the antecedent is the *only* condition on which the consequent depends. Thus to misread a hypothetical is to conceive a relation as holding in reality which does not hold. Such misinterpretation may cause us to make either of two fallacious inferences, we may infer, fallaciously, from the assertion of the consequent the assertion of the antecedent, or we may infer, again fallaciously, from the denial of the antecedent, the denial of the consequent

---

[1] *Ibid*, p 249 [2] *Ibid*, pp 249-50.

4. Misinterpretation of Disjunctive Propositions.—Since the traditional disjunctive proposition specifies neither that the alternatives are exclusive, nor that they are exhaustive, there are two possible fallacious interpretations of it, namely, we may assume that the alternatives are exclusive when they are not, or that they are exhaustive when they are not To argue that because all individual progress implies either moral or intellectual advance, therefore that if one advances morally one cannot advance intellectually, is to assume falsely that the alternatives are exclusive, while to argue that because a man is not both English and French, and is not English, therefore is French, is to assume falsely that the alternatives are exhaustive

CHAPTER X.

GENERAL REMARKS ON IMMEDIATE INFERENCES

1. Nature of Immediate Inferences.—Inference, or Reasoning, is the deriving of one truth from others. By this is meant that the new proposition is accepted as true because, and in so far as, the validity of the propositions from which it is derived is accepted Hence, every inference has a formal and necessary character, and this is not affected by the truth or falsity of the premises. The premises may be false and yet the inference may be formally valid, that is, valid in the sense of avoiding contradiction within itself But in the wider sense of validity, in which the result of the inference must also be consistent with the whole system of knowledge, the truth of the premises is, of course, an essential element[1] This aspect of inference will be dealt with when we consider the doctrine of Induction, we are now primarily concerned with an analysis of the formal aspects of the process

Inference is not a mental process absolutely distinct in its character from judgment The essence of the latter is the explanation of some element of reality by reference of it to some concept already familiar to the mind In inference there is the same essential feature, but with this difference, that the reference is not made immediately, but indirectly through the medium of some previously accepted truth or truths In inference, therefore, we pass beyond the judgment, or judgments, from which we start, and attain a new point of view; though, at the same time, the new judgment thus reached must be a necessary consequence of the data from which we set out.

---

[1] See pp. 6-9.

Inference thus involves both a process and a result; and to each of these the name is sometimes given. But *strictly* speaking inference is the process by which we pass from evidence to conclusion, and is therefore, partly at least, psychological. But the validity or invalidity of inference depends on logical factors The propositions constituting data or evidence are termed *premises*, the proposition derived from them is termed the *conclusion*. Inference is valid if the premises imply the conclusion

Immediate Inference is the process by which the implications of a single proposition are unfolded. By its immediateness is not meant that no activity of thought is required to reach the new proposition, but simply that no datum is necessary besides the one given proposition Such inferences may be styled *interpretative inferences*, as distinguished from mediate inferences obtained from a combination of propositions

It is often questioned whether immediate inferences are really inferences at all, since it is said no new truth is reached by them But such a view is not tenable since by immediate inference implications of the original proposition are elicited These implications always follow from the proposition, but we may or may not elicit them A proposition reached by immediate inference, therefore, does not merely express the original proposition in different words, but is an implication of that proposition

An examination of the forms of reasoning should begin with these immediate inferences, for we should know what is involved in a single proposition before we go on to enquire what results will follow from a union of several propositions

2. Kinds of Immediate Inferences.—There are two main classes of immediate inferences—

(1) *The Opposition of Propositions*, when, from the given truth or falsity of one proposition we infer the truth or falsity of other propositions relating to the same matter—that is, having the same subject and predicate In other words, an examination of the opposition of propositions means a consideration of the relations as to truth or falsity which hold between the four forms of propositions, $S\,a\,P$, $S\,e\,P$, $S\,i\,P$

S o P, when *P* and *S* have the same signification in every proposition

(ii) *Eductions*, in which, from a given proposition regarded as true, we derive other propositions which are implied by it.

We shall consider these two kinds of Immediate Inferences in the next two chapters

CHAPTER XI.

OPPOSITION OF PROPOSITIONS

1. Opposition of Categorical Propositions.—By the **Oppositions** is meant **the relation which holds between any two propositions which have identically the same subject and predicate.** Opposed propositions thus differ in quantity or quality or both, but refer to exactly the same matter, that is, to the same things, at the same time, and under the same circumstances The logical doctrine of Opposition, therefore, sets forth what implications as to the truth or falsehood of each of the other forms of categorical propositions are involved in *positing* (*i e* affirming as true), or *sublating* (*i e.* denying the truth of), any one proposition

This is, evidently, an entirely technical and arbitrary use of the word "opposition" The natural meaning of the word would be that two opposed propositions could not both be true together, that is, that opposition could exist only between the pairs of incompatible propositions, **A** and **O**, **E** and **I**, **A** and **E**. In this sense the word was originally used. It was, however, found convenient to include under the same head the relations between propositions which are not incompatible, that is, those between **A** and **I**, **E** and **O**, **I** and **O**. "Opposition" thus came to include the relation between *any* pair of propositions of different quality or quantity referring to the same matter, whether that relation were one of incompatibility or of compatibility. When once this technical use of the word "opposition" is clearly understood, it is unlikely to cause any confusion

As we have universal and particular, affirmative and negative, propositions, the relations between them will all be included under those subsisting between the following pairs :—

(1) A universal and the particular of the same quality; **A** and **I**; **E** and **O**.
(2) A universal and the particular of opposite quality; **A** and **O**, **E** and **I**.
(3) A universal and the universal of opposite quality, **A** and **E**.
(4) A particular and the particular of opposite quality, **I** and **O**.

This gives us four kinds of opposition, to which the names (1) **Subalternation,** (2) **Contradiction,** (3) **Contrariety,** and (4) **Sub-contrariety** are respectively given We will now examine these in order

(1) SUBALTERNATION —*Subaltern Opposition exists between a universal and the particular of the same quality*, that is, between **A** and **I**, **E** and **O**. Thus, the propositions differ in quantity but not in quality This is one of the technical kinds of opposition, for, not only are the two propositions in subaltern opposition not inconsistent with each other, but the truth of the universal necessitates that of the particular, for any assertion which is true of every member of a class must hold of any number of those individual members, since they must be identical with some of those included under the distributed term The assertion, when made of an indefinite part, simply repeats an assertion which was contained in the universal proposition

In such a pair of opposites, the universal proposition is called the *Subalternant* or *Subalternans,* and the particular the *Subalternate* or *Subaltern* Inference from the former to the latter is styled *Consequentia* or *Conclusio ad subalternatam propositionem*, that from the latter to the former, *Conclusio ad subalternantem*

Hence, the inference of the truth of **I** from that of **A**, and of the truth of **O** from that of **E**, are *ad subalternatam.* The assertion of ‘ All metals are fusible ’ involves that of ‘ Some metals are fusible ’, and if we posit ‘ No horses are carnivorous ’ we equally posit ‘ Some horses are not carnivorous ’ But, if $S\ a\ P$ is denied, then this denial holds equally if P

belongs to some only of the *S*'s, or to none of them. Hence, from the falsity of **A** we cannot say whether **I** is true or false For example, if I deny that 'All metals are malleable' I do not thereby deny that 'Some metals are malleable.' Neither do I affirm the latter proposition (though it happens to be true in fact); for, if I did, then the denial of 'All horses are carnivorous' would involve the assertion of 'Some horses are carnivorous.' Similarly, from the denial of **E** we can neither affirm nor deny **O**. The sublating of the universal leaves us quite in the dark as to the truth or falsity of its sub-alternate

If we now examine the inferences *ad subalternantem* (or from particular to universal), we find that the denial of the particular involves the denial of the universal For what is not true even in some cases cannot be true in all The denial of *S i P* means 'There are no such things as some *S's* which are *P*,' and this, evidently, negates the assertion that *All S's are P* Again, if **A** were true, **I** must be true by inference *ad subalternatam*, and hence, if the falsity of **I** did not involve that of **A**, it would follow that **I** could be both true and false at the same time, which is absurd

The same results hold with **E** and **O**. Thus, if we deny the truth of 'Some horses are carnivorous' we thereby deny that of 'All horses are carnivorous'. and if we assert the falsity of 'Some men are not mortal' we equally assert that of 'No men are mortal' But, to posit the particular cannot justify us in positing the universal, for we can never justify an assertion about *Every S* by asserting that it holds good with regard to *Some S's* For instance, though it may be true that 'Some men are red-haired,' it does not follow that all men possess that attribute. nor does the truth of 'Some men are not six feet high' imply that no men attain that height.

Hence, we reach this general result The truth of the particular follows from that of the universal, but not *vice versa*; and the falsity of the universal is an inference from that of the particular, but not *vice versa*

(2) CONTRADICTION —*Propositions are contradictory to each other when they differ both in quality and in quantity* Hence, there are two pairs of contradictories—**A** and **O**, **E** and **I**,

By the principle of contradiction both the members of such a pair cannot be true together, and by the principle of excluded middle both cannot be false If 'All metals are fusible' is true, it cannot be true that 'Some metals are not fusible', and, similarly, if 'No lions are herbivorous' is a true proposition, then it cannot be true that 'Some lions are herbivorous' And, generally, if we make an assertion about every member of a class, the principle of contradiction forbids us to deny that assertion about any member of the same class Therefore, one of the contradictories in each pair must be *false* But, by the principle of excluded middle, they cannot both be false For, by that principle, any given attribute, *P*, must either belong, or not belong, to every individual *S* It cannot, therefore, be false both to make an assertion of Every *S* and to deny that same assertion of Some of those *S*'s Such propositions as 'All metals are fusible' and 'Some metals are not fusible' cannot both be false together

We see, then, that *contradictories are incompatible with respect both to truth and to falsity* It follows that when two contradictory propositions are given us we infer, by the principle of contradiction, that one of them is false, and, by the principle of excluded middle, that one of them is true *Hence, we can deduce the falsity of one from the truth of the other, and the truth of one from the falsity of the other.* The relation of contradiction is thus seen to be reciprocal, the positing of one proposition and the sublating of its contradictory are assertions of one and the same fact It will be seen, as we examine the other forms of Opposition, that in none of them are the propositions thus mutually inferable, and in none of them is there incompatibility with regard to both truth and falsehood

Contradiction is, therefore, the most perfect form of logical opposition.

Whatever we affirm denies something else The mere asserting of every *S* that it is *P* is, in itself, a denial of any *S* whatever that it is not *P* To assert, therefore, that *Some S's are not P*, in opposition to *Every S is P*, is the minimum of denial It is sufficient to destroy the proposition which it contradicts, but it does not affirm the falsity of every part of it Thus, two contradictory propositions leave no room for an intermediate supposition, one or the other must be accepted as true, as together they exhaust all possible alternatives

It has been customary to regard the opposition of propositions as a relation existing between propositions belonging to the four-fold scheme of propositions discussed in Chapter VIII For this reason contradictory propositions have been defined as those which differ both in quality and quantity. But, as we have just seen, what is important about contradictory propositions is that two such propositions cannot both be true and cannot both be false This property may be used to define contradictory propositions, which are accordingly propositions such that both cannot be true and one must be true This definition is preferable to that given on page 115, provided that we regard contradiction as a relation capable of existing between pairs of propositions which do not necessarily belong to the four-fold scheme of propositions

As we saw in Chapter VIII many propositions do not belong to this scheme Thus, while contradiction, regarded as one kind of opposition which is a relation between propositions belonging to the traditional four-fold classification of propositions, is correctly defined as a relation between propositions differing in both quantity and quality, contradiction, regarded as a relation between pairs of propositions which do not necessarily belong to any of the four classes of proposition recognised in the four-fold scheme, is to be defined as a relation between two propositions such that both cannot be true and one must be true

In this sense of contradiction it is clear that every proposition has a contradictory, if a proposition is simple so is its contradictory, thus the contradictory of the simple subject-predicate proposition *This is white* is *This is not white* But if a proposition is complex its contradictory must be complex, thus the contradictory of the complex conjunctive proposition, *Jack fell down and broke his crown* is *Either Jack did not fall down or he did not break his crown*

(3) CONTRARIETY —*Contrary Opposition exists between a pair of universal propositions of opposite quality*, that is,

between **A** and **E**. Thus, contrary propositions differ in quality only, and not in quantity. By the principle of contradiction both cannot be *true* together. For, if two contraries were both true, then contradictories would also be true together For, by subalternation, the truth of **A** would necessitate that of **I**, and the truth of **E** would secure that of **O**. Hence, **A** and **O** would be true together, and so would **E** and **I**. But this is impossible; and, therefore, **A** and **E** cannot be true together.

But as a contrary proposition does not simply deny the truth of the opposed universal as a whole, but that of every part of it, and thus asserts its entire falsity, there is a possibility of an intermediate alternative Hence, the principle of excluded middle does not apply, and the propositions may both be *false* For, while the negation of a universal allows inference by contradiction to the truth of the particular of opposed quality, this latter does not warrant us in deducing the truth of the universal to which it is subaltern Though by sublating **A** we posit **O**, this will not enable us to posit **E**. Hence contrary propositions are incompatible with regard to truth, but not with regard to falsity If one is true, the other must be false, but the falsity of the one does not involve the truth of the other

Thus it may be equally false that 'All men are red-haired' and that 'No men are red-haired', for the one proposition does not simply negate the other, but makes the opposite assertion with an equal degree of generality It follows that contrary propositions are not mutually inferable, and their formal opposition is, therefore, less perfect than is that of contradictories

From this lesser formal perfection, as well as from the much greater difficulty of establishing the contrary compared with that of merely disproving a given universal proposition, it follows that contrariety is of much less formal importance than contradiction The bringing forward of one single instance which does not agree with a general proposition is sufficient to disprove it, and the contradiction is secure, as it rests on observed fact But to establish, not merely that one *S*, or a few *S's*, but that *every S* disagrees with the general proposition we wish to disprove is a task of much greater difficulty, and the result is much less secure against being itself proved false than is the contradictory For we can scarcely ever be sure that we have really examined every instance, and one exception is fatal to our general proposition, while the simple contradictory, being a particular, can only be overthrown by establishing the opposed general proposition.

Thus we see that contradiction is sufficient for disproof, and is, obviously, a more secure position to take up than is the assertion of the contrary One would deny that 'All men are liars' with much greater strength of conviction than one would assert that 'No men are liars'

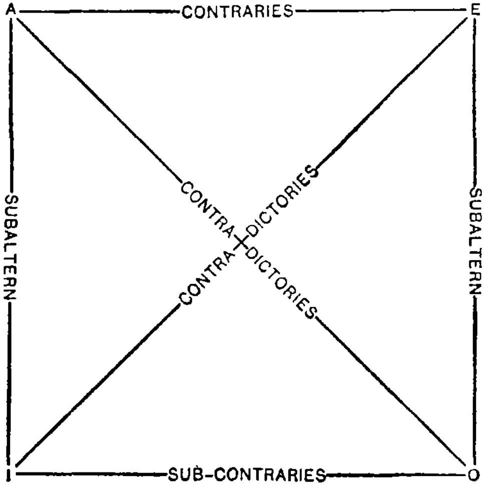
Just as we saw that contradiction can be defined without reference to the quantity and quality of propositions, so it is clear that contrariety can be similarly defined This less limited definition is such that any two propositions are contraries if both cannot be true while both may be false As was the case with contradiction, this definition is applicable to a wider range of propositions than those contained in the fourfold scheme Moreover, it does not imply that the subject and predicate of the contrary propositions must be identical, hence it allows contrariety between singular propositions. This is desirable since it is following common usage to speak of *This is red* and *This is green* as contrary propositions.

(4) SUB-CONTRARIETY —Particular propositions stand in sub-contrary opposition to each other, that is **I** and **O** are sub-contraries This opposition depends on the principle of excluded middle, for there can be no proposition intermediate between 'Some are' and 'Some are not' Moreover, to deny the truth of one particular is to assert that of the universal of opposite quality (by contradiction), and from this follows the truth of the particular which is subaltern to it. Hence, both these propositions cannot be *false* But the principle of contradiction does not apply, for the 'some' in the one case is different in its reference from the 'some' in the other. Both propositions may, therefore, be *true* The truth, for example, of 'Some men are red-haired' does not involve the falsity of 'Some men are not red-haired', for it is not the same 'some men' who are referred to in both cases But the form of the propositions does not show this, since the interpretation

of 'some' must be purely indefinite Thus, there is no real contrariety between **I** and **O**, and the name "Sub-contrary" *is entirely arbitrary*

This is another instance of the technical use of the word "opposition," as the two propositions are perfectly compatible with each other, both may be, and often are, true, though both cannot be false It follows, therefore, that to sublate the one is to posit the other, but not *vice versa* Hence sub-contrary propositions are inconsistent with regard to falsity but not with regard to truth

2. The Square of Opposition.—It has long been traditional in Logic to give, as an aid to remembering the doctrine of opposition, the accompanying diagram, called the Square of Opposition If this diagram, with the proper positions of the letters which symbolise the four kinds of propositions, be once firmly stamped on the mind, but little difficulty will be found in retaining in the memory the whole theory of opposition.



The universals are placed at the top, the particulars at the bottom, the affirmatives on the left, and the negatives on the right. The diagonals, as the longest lines, mark Contradiction, which is the most perfect and thoroughgoing form of logical opposition. The top line indicates Contrariety, and the bottom line, parallel to it, Sub-contrariety. The fact that both are horizontal naturally suggests that each connects propositions of the same quantity. The perpendicular lines appropriately represent Subalternation. As the diagonals run from the one top corner to the opposite bottom corner they indicate that contradictory propositions differ both in quality and quantity. Similarly, the top and bottom lines suggest a difference in quality only, and the side lines a difference in quantity only.

Given		A	O	E	I
1	A true		false (C)	false (Cy, *S*)	true (S, *Scy*)
2	A false		true (C)	doubtful	doubtful
3	E true	false (Cy, *S*)	true (S, *Scy*)		false (C)
4	E false	doubtful	doubtful		true (C)
5	I true	doubtful	doubtful	false (C)	
6	I false	false (S, *Cy*)	true (Scy, *S*)	true (C)	
7	O true	false (C)		doubtful	doubtful
8	O false	true (C)		false (S, *Cy*)	true (Scy, *S*)

The above table exhibits at a glance all the inferences which the doctrine of opposition enables us to draw. The kind of opposition through which they are reached is given by the letter, or letters, in brackets under each result. C means by contradiction; S, by subalternation, Cy, by Contrariety, Scy, by sub-contrariety When any of these letters is printed in italics it means that the process it represents is indirect, that is, the result is obtained, not immediately from the given proposition, but indirectly through its contradictory.

3. Opposition of Hypothetical and Disjunctive Propositions.—Traditionally it has been assumed that opposition applies equally well to those more definite judgments of connection of content which are expressed in hypothetical and disjunctive forms Thus it has been assumed that the true hypotheticals *If S is M it is P*, and *If S is M it is not P*—or expressed in the more general but less definite symbolism, *If* **A** *then* **X**, and *If* **A** *then not* **X**—are universals, and correspond to the **A** and **E** categorical forms respectively, while the particulars *If S is M it may be P*, and *If S is M it need not be P*—or in the wider symbolic form, *If* **A** *then perhaps* **X**, and *If* **A** *then not necessarily* **X**—correspond to the **I** and **O** categorical forms Having thus all the four necessary forms, the whole doctrine of opposition was assumed to be applicable

Similarly with the denotative forms—or conditionals as we have ventured to call them—which give more concrete expression to the content of these abstract propositions.[1] Here the four forms are—

If any S is M that S is always P—corresponding to **A**.
If any S is M that S is never P— ,, ,, **E**.
If an S is M that S is sometimes P— ,, ,, **I**.
If an S is M that S is sometimes not P ,, ,, **O**.

As the last two forms do not imply more than that *S* being *P* is a possible consequence of its being *M*, but not that *S* actually is *P* in any one case in which it is *M*, they may be often better expressed by—

If an S is M that S may be P—corresponding to **I**.
If an S is M that S need not be P— ,, ,, **O**.

---

[1] See p. 92

Again, it was assumed that the doctrine of opposition was applicable to disjunctive propositions The most general symbolic form of the disjunctive proposition—*Either* **X** *or* **Y**—is most suitable to those cases in which the alternative propositions have not the same subject A disjunctive in this form must be regarded as singular The contradictory proposition is *Neither* **X** *nor* **Y,** and this is not itself a disjunctive judgment.

But the more perfectly stated disjunctive proposition in which several predicates are alternatively affirmed of the same subject, admit of distinctions of quantity, and propositions of opposite quality can be found which stand to them in the relations of contradiction and contrariety Thus, with the judgment of content, *S is either P or Q*, the square of opposition can be completed by the propositions *S is neither P nor Q* (contrary), *S may be either P or Q* (subaltern), *S need not be either P or Q* (contradictory)

These distinctions—as in the case of categorical propositions—stand out yet more clearly in the denotative forms of the propositions Here we have the universal affirmative *Every S is either P or Q*, the universal negative *No S is either P or Q*; the particular affirmative *Some S's are either P or Q*; and the particular negative *Some S s are neither P nor Q.* But it will be noticed that none of the negative forms are disjunctive propositions *S is neither P nor Q* is equally well expressed in the conjunctive categorical form *S is both non-P and non-Q* and similar propositions express the negative denotative forms Hence, the full doctrine of opposition cannot be said to be applicable to disjunctive propositions

The traditional assumption that hypothetical and disjunctive propositions belonged to the four-fold scheme, and hence that the doctrine of opposition was applicable to them, becomes unnecessary when it is remembered that there are more adequate classifications of propositions than those traditionally recognised,[1] and accordingly, that not every proposition belongs to the four-fold scheme

---

[1] See Chapter VIII.

CHAPTER XII.

EDUCTIONS

1. Chief Eductions of Categorical Propositions.—Eductions are those forms of Immediate Inference by which, from a given proposition, accepted as true, we educe other propositions, differing from it in subject, in predicate, or in both, whose truth is implied by it. Every categorical proposition gives us information of a certain subject, in terms of a certain predicate. But each of these terms has a conceivable negative, and every categorical proposition, therefore, suggests to our minds, directly or indirectly, four terms—*S*, *P*, *non-S*, *non-P*. The problem before us is to enquire what predications about each, or any, of these possible terms are implied when *S* and *P* are connected in any given categorical proposition. In other words, whether, if we take each of these terms in turn as subject, the given proposition justifies us in predicating of it any of the other terms.

We need not, of course, consider any forms of proposition in which the predicate is either the same term as the subject, or its negative—as *S is S*, *S is non-S*, *P is not P*, etc.—which are either mere tautology, or are self-contradictory and, therefore, self-destructive. Our enquiry is limited to those propositions in which one term is *S* or *non-S*, and the other *P* or *non-P*.

Now, when any one of these four terms is taken as subject, we have two possible predicates offered to us; thus, we can predicate either *P* or *non-P* of *S*, and either *S* or *non-S* of *P*. This leads us to the kind of Eduction called *Obversion*, in which we retain the same subject but negative the predicate of the original proposition. Again, if *S* is the subject, and *P* the predicate, of the given proposition, we can form other propositions whose subjects are respectively, *P*, *non-P*, and *non-S*, and each of these propositions can take two forms, one of which is derived from the other by obversion Thus we get the following possible modes of inference, most of which involve a change, not only in the verbal expression, but in the form of the judgment as thought—

(1) *Obversion*—when the subject of the original proposition is unchanged, but the predicate is negatived

(2) *Conversion*—when the subject of the inferred proposition is *P*, and its predicate *S* or *non-S*

(3) *Contraposition*—when the subject of the inferred proposition is *non-P* and its predicate *S* or *non-S*

(4) *Inversion*—when the subject of the inferred proposition is *non-S*, and its predicate *P* or *non-P*

None of these can be valid inferences from any given proposition, unless the inferred proposition is involved in, and expresses the same truth as, that proposition itself expresses We must therefore, by careful examination, see which of them are justified by propositions of each of the four forms, **A, E, I, O.**

Each of the inferences (2), (3), and (4) in the above list can take two forms, one with a positive, and the other with a negative predicate Each of these forms is obtainable from the other by the process of obversion As however, the simplest forms are those which have the positive predicates, the simple names, *Conversion*, *Contraposition*, and *Inversion*, are applied to the processes by which they are arrived at. Those propositions themselves are called the *Converse, Contrapositive*, and *Inverse*, of the original proposition, while the corresponding forms with negative predicates are termed the *Obverted Converse*, the *Obverted Contrapositive*, and the *Obverted Inverse*, respectively, of that proposition Thus, each of these names expresses the relation in which that derived proposition stands to the given one

If we use S' and P' to denote *non-S* and *non-P* respectively, we have the following empty schema of possible Eductions from categorical propositions—

i.		1	Original Proposition .	S—P
		2	Obverse of (1)	S—P'
ii.	Converses of (1)	3	Converse of (1)	P—S
		4	Obverted Converse of (1)	P—S'
iii.	Contrapositives of (1)	5	Contrapositive of (1)	P'—S
		6	Obverted Contrapositive of (1)	P'—S'
iv.	Inverses of (1) .	7	Inverse of (1)	S'—P
		8	Obverted Inverse of (1)	S'—P'

We have to enquire to what extent this empty schema can be filled out by either of the four kinds of categorical predication—**A, E, I, O**—when the original proposition itself is of either of those forms.

Many of the inferred forms are unusual and unnatural modes of expressing the truth which is stated most simply in the original proposition. Those of them, too, which contain negative terms are open, as primary modes of statement, to the objections already made to propositions containing those terms.[1] But, when they are regarded simply as secondary modes of expressing the content of the original proposition, they are useful, as they make prominent a fresh side of the truth there enunciated. And the whole of them together, by placing that assertion in every possible light, makes its implications much clearer and more definite than does a mere consideration of the proposition by itself.

As Obversion and Conversion are the primary modes by which these eductions are made—for all the other inferences are obtainable by combinations of these—a detailed consideration of them should precede that of the other forms.

(i) **Obversion is a change in the quality of a predication made of any given subject, while the import of the judgment remains unchanged.** The original proposition is called the

---

[1] See p. 52.

Obvertend, and that which is inferred from it is termed the *Obverse*.

Whenever we assert anything we, by implication, deny the opposite That is, the affirmation of any predicate of a certain subject implies the denial of its negative, and the denial of any predicate implies the affirmation of its negative The former of these follows from the principle of contradiction—for, if any S is P it cannot be *non-P*, and the latter from that of excluded middle—for, if any S is not P it must be *non-P*. All obversions of affirmative propositions, therefore, depend on the former of these two principles, and all obversions of negative propositions on the latter But, to deny a negative is to affirm, for two negatives destroy each other, and to affirm a negative is to deny, and, thus, obversion involves no change of meaning. The matter, therefore, which is expressed by an affirmative proposition can always be re-expressed by a negative, and *vice versa* This is, however, a mere change in the mode of expression, it involves no process of thought, and consequently is not a real inference. It is, however, useful as a first step in contraposition

From this it follows that the subject of the obverse is the same as the subject of the obvertend in every respect, as, otherwise, we should not have a true denial of the opposite of that obvertend The *quantity* of the two propositions is, therefore, the same The predicate of the obverse is the negative of that of the obvertend, and this, to avoid alteration in meaning, necessitates a change in the *quality* of the proposition This gives us the one simple rule for obverting any proposition—*Negative the predicate and change the quality, but leave the quantity unaltered*

Applying this rule to the four forms of categorical propositions, we find that

A *obverts to* **E**, **E** *to* **A**, **I** *to* **O**, *and* **O** *to* **I**,

or, expressed symbolically—

Original Proposition	$S\ a\ P$	$S\ e\ P$	$S\ i\ P$	$S\ o\ P$
Obverse	$S\ e\ P'$	$S\ a\ P$	$S\ o\ P$	$S\ i\ P'$

It must be remembered that obversion is a reciprocal process, and thus, that $S\,a\,P$ is as much the obverse of $S\,e\,P'$ as the latter is the obverse of the former

As material examples we may give the following pairs of propositions, each member of every pair being the obverse of the other member—

A. *All men are mortal*
E. *No men are not-mortal*

E. *No thoughtful men are superstitious*
A. *All thoughtful men are non-superstitious.*

I. *Some men are happy*
O. *Some men are not not-happy*

O. *Some men are not rich*
I. *Some men are not-rich*

We may often write the obverse in a form more in accordance with the usages of ordinary speech by using a material contradictory, or a privative term, instead of the formal negative, for the new predicate But, unless this term is exactly equivalent in meaning to the formal negative, we do not make a true obversion by its use For instance, in obverting **A** as given above, we could say, 'No men are immortal,' for 'immortal' and 'not-mortal' exactly correspond But we could not give 'Some men are not unhappy' as the obverse of 'Some men are happy', for 'happy' and 'unhappy' do not exhaust all possibilities, and, thus, the principle of contradiction does not apply to them It is true that this proposition is justified by the given one, for 'not-happy' includes unhappy, as well as all other shades of departure from 'happy' But it is not the obverse; for we cannot get back from it, by obversion, to our original proposition. The same holds in the case of all affirmative propositions; the obverse justifies the denial of all terms which can be brought under the formal negative

But even this is not justifiable in the case of the obversion of negative propositions From 'Some men are not happy' we cannot conclude that 'Some men are unhappy,' for this latter proposition asserts, not merely the absence of happiness, but the presence of a certain amount of positive misery. Still less can we infer from ‘ Some men are not rich ’ that ‘ Some men are poor ’, for ‘ rich ’ and ‘ poor ’ are contraries, and there are many intermediate stages between them Obversion is, in short, a formal process, and, therefore, if we do not use a formal negative term for our new predicate, we must make sure that the term we do use is the exact equivalent of that formal negative

(ii) **Conversion is the eduction of one proposition from another by transposing the terms.** The original proposition is called the *Convertend*, and that which is derived from it is named the *Converse*

We have, evidently, here a complete alteration of standpoint, as we have changed the subject or nucleus of our proposition The predication is now made of *P* in terms of *S*, whereas the original proposition contained an assertion about *S* in terms of *P* Moreover, the truth of the converse follows directly from that of the convertend Hence, the process is a real interpretative inference Every proposition before being converted—or, indeed, used in any kind of formal inference—must be reduced to the strict logical form, *S is P* or *S is not P*, and the *whole* predicate must change places with the *whole* subject

For instance, the converse of ‘ Every old man has been a boy ’ is not ‘ Every boy has been an old man,’ but ‘ Some who have been boys are old men ’, for the original proposition, in its logical form, is ‘ Every old man is a person who has been a boy ’ As the converse simply makes the same assertion as the convertend, looked at, as it were, from the other side, it is clear that the *quality* of both propositions will be the same.

Every act of conversion involves reading the original predicate in its denotation, in order that it may be made a subject-term. That we really do make this change from a connotative to a denotative view is shown by the fact that, if the predicate of the convertend is an adjective—as in ‘ No crows are white ’—a substantive must be supplied before we can use that term as the subject of the converse—as ‘ No white things are crows ’ This involves a consideration of the distribution of the predicate in order that the converse may not assert more than is justified by the convertend; and may necessitate a change of *quantity*. In other words, a mere transposition of terms is not always permissible; we cannot go from 'All cats are animals' to 'All animals are cats.' The only conversion we are concerned with is *Illative Conversion*; that is, conversion which is a valid inference, and in which either both convertend and converse are true, or both are false. Such conversion must obey these two rules:

1. *The quality of the proposition must remain unchanged.*
2. *No term may be distributed in the converse which is not distributed in the convertend.*

We must now apply these rules to the conversion of each kind of categorical proposition.

(*a*) *Conversion of* **A**. In the proposition *S a P*, while *S* is distributed, *P* is not. We cannot, therefore, convert to *P a S*—for that would break Rule 2—but we must retain *P* in its undistributed condition, and write the converse *P i S*. Hence **A** converts to **I**, and the conversion involves a change of quantity from universal to particular. Such conversion was called by Aristotle κατὰ μέρος or *partitive* conversion. This name has, however, given place to the less descriptive one of *conversio per accidens* or *conversion by limitation*.

Though the necessity for this mode of converting **A** propositions is obvious enough when the rules for conversion are kept in mind, yet the improper conversion of **A** propositions is one of the most frequent causes of fallacy. Because it is a fairly well established fact that lazy persons are often out of work, people jump to the conclusion that if a man is often out of work he is necessarily lazy. Since the wages of unskilled labour in England are low, it is frequently assumed that all badly paid persons are unskilful. Because all pious people go regularly to church, regular church-going is commonly regarded as a sure sign of piety. Such mistakes are continually made, yet they are on a par with arguing that every animal is a monkey because every monkey is an animal.

No doubt, in some cases—as tautologous propositions and definitions, or when both subject and predicate are singular names—the simple converse, that is, converse without change of quantity, of **A** would give a true proposition. 'Every equiangular triangle is equilateral' is as true a proposition as is 'Every equilateral triangle is equiangular' But its truth has to be established by a separate and independent demonstration, it cannot be inferred from the latter proposition by conversion For conversion is a formal process of inference and, therefore, must be applicable to every proposition of the same kind, there cannot be two modes of formally converting **A** propositions When the simple converse would be true in fact, it is because of special circumstances which do not appear in the statement of the convertend Hence, as *P i S* is the only converse which is materially true in all cases, and is formally true in any, that is the logical converse of *S a P* For, while *S a P* asserts positively that the attribute which *P* denotes is found in every *S*, it is not stated whether, or not, it is found in other cases

This is further obvious from the fact that we require two diagrams to express an **A** proposition [1]

(*b*) *Conversion of* **E**. An **E** proposition can be converted *simply*, that is, without change of quantity For, *S e P* asserts that the attributes connoted by *P* are found in none of the objects which *S* denotes, but only in other objects Hence, none of the objects in which *P* is found, and which are all denoted by *P* used as a substantive name, possesses the attributes which are connoted by *S* The separation between the things which are *S* and those which possess the attribute *P* is total and absolute, and is, therefore, reciprocal Whether we regard it from the side of *S* or of *P*, each individual *S* differs from each individual *P* Thus, we can convert *S e P* to *P e S*. If 'No horses are carnivorous,' it follows that 'No carnivorous animals are horses'

So, if we refer to the diagrams, we see that only one is required [2]

(*c*) *Conversion of* **I** As neither term in an **I** proposition is distributed, it is clear that, by converting it simply, we shall break neither of the rules of conversion Thus, *S i P* converts to *P i S*, and the proposition remains particular ‘Some herbs are poisonous’ gives as a converse ‘Some poisonous things are herbs’ The ‘some’ remains, of course, purely indefinite, and when we speak of the simple conversion of **I** we do not mean that ‘some’ denotes the same proportion of the total denotation of the subjects of both convertend and converse.

---

[1] See p 98

[2] See p 98.

When the subject of the convertend is a genus of which the predicate is a species, the simple converse reads somewhat awkwardly Thus, ‘Some human beings are boys’ converts to ‘Some boys are human beings’ which, we feel, is not so definite an assertion as our knowledge of the matter would warrant us in making This is particularly noticeable when we reconvert the converse of an **A** proposition The converse of *S a P* is *P i S*, and we can only convert this again to *S i P*, where the double logical process has led to a loss of fullness in the statement For example, ‘All monkeys are animals’ converts to ‘Some animals are monkeys’ and the simple converse of this is ‘Some monkeys are animals’ This shows that conversion *per accidens* is not a reciprocal process, as simple conversion is But, no matter what the **I** proposition is, or whence it is derived, it can, by itself, only justify us in deducing another **I** proposition as its converse

This indefiniteness is illustrated by the fact that **I** requires four diagrams to express the possible relations between *P* and *S* which it covers, from examination of these it is evident that the relation between the terms is always positive, but so far as quantity is concerned absolutely indefinite [1]

(*d*) *Conversion of* **O**. As the predicate of an **O** proposition is distributed, but the subject undistributed, we cannot convert a proposition of that form at all For, by Rule 1, *S o P* must convert to a negative proposition with *S* for its predicate This would distribute *S*, but Rule 2 forbids this distribution, as *S* is not distributed in the convertend *S o P* asserts that Some *S's* have not the attribute *P*, but it says nothing about the other possible *S's* Hence, though the *Some S's* which form the subject are entirely separated from all those things which possess the attribute *P*, it does not follow that these latter are excluded from *all* the *S's*. It is possible that every *P* is *S*, though there are other instances of *S* as well which are not *P*. For example, 'Some men are not honest' will not justify us in inferring that 'Some honest beings are not men'; nor can we say that some who pass an examination do not sit for it, because it is true that some who sit for an examination do not pass.

---

[1] See p. 98.

In many cases, no doubt, the simple converse of an **O** proposition would be materially true; thus 'Some men are not black' and 'Some black things are not men' are both true propositions, but neither can be inferred by formal conversion from the other, for neither statement is justified by the other.

If we examine the three diagrams required to represent **O** we see that no relation between *P* and *S* is common to them all.[1] Therefore we cannot convert the proposition *S o P*.

To sum up the results we have obtained—

A *converts per accidens*; **E** *and* **I**, *simply*; **O**, *not at all*.

(*e*) *Obverted Conversion.* As any categorical proposition whatever can be obverted, we can get a new inference from the original proposition by obverting the converse, according to the rules given in sub-section (i). Thus, expressed symbolically, we get—

1	Original Proposition	$S\ a\ P$	$S\ e\ P$	$S\ i\ P$	$S\ o\ P$
2	Converse of (1)	$P\ i\ S$	$P\ e\ S$	$P\ i\ S$	(None)
3	Obverted Converse of (1)	$P\ o\ S'$	$P\ a\ S'$	$P\ o\ S'$	(None)

As material examples we may give—

Original Proposition	**A**	*Every truthful man is trusted.*
Converse	**I**	*Some trusted men are truthful.*
Obverted Converse	**O**	*Some trusted men are not untruthful.*
Original Proposition	**E**	*No cultivated district is uninhabited.*
Converse	**E**	*No uninhabited district is cultivated.*
Obverted Converse	**A**	*All uninhabited districts are uncultivated.*

---

[1] See p. 98.

Original Proposition	**I**	*Some British subjects are dishonest.*
Converse	**I**	*Some dishonest people are British subjects.*
Obverted Converse	**O**	*Some dishonest people are not aliens*

(iii) **Contraposition is the inferring, from a given proposition, another proposition whose subject is the contradictory of the predicate of the original proposition.** The derived proposition is called the *Contrapositive* , there is no corresponding distinctive name for the original proposition

The contrapositive of any given proposition is most easily arrived at indirectly It makes a predication about the contradictory of the predicate of the given proposition Now, this contradictory appears as the predicate of the obverse of that proposition If, then, this obverse can be converted it gives a proposition of the form required, in which the negative of the original predicate is the subject, and the subject of the original proposition is the predicate Hence, the simple rule for contraposition is—*First obvert, then convert*

This will give, in every case, a proposition differing in *quality* from the original one , for obversion changes the quality, and conversion does not change it back again But the *quantity* remains unchanged, except in the case of the contraposition of **E** ; for, obversion does not change quantity, and therefore any change in quantity must be due to the subsequent conversion Now, as **A** and **O** obvert to **E** and **I** respectively, and both of these convert simply, the quantity will remain unaltered But **E** obverts to **A**, which can only be converted *per accidens*, and hence the contrapositive of the universal negative is a particular affirmative Thus, comparing the contraposition with the conversion of universal propositions in respect to quantity, it is seen that when the one inference causes a change in quantity, the other does not, and *vice versa*

As **I** obverts to **O**, which cannot be converted, there can be no contrapositive of **I**.

Contraposition is sometimes called *Conversion by Negation* and, as we see, it can be applied to **O** propositions, and is the only form of 'conversion' which can be so applied. But it is better not to use 'conversion' in this sense, as the contrapositive has not the same subject as the converse, and also differs from it in quality.

Obverted Contraposition Having obtained the contrapositive of any proposition we can obvert it, and thus get a proposition of the same quality as the original one This *Obverted Contrapositive* has for each of its terms the contradictory of a term in the given proposition—its subject is the negative of the original predicate, and its predicate the negative of the original subject Some writers have confined the name contrapositive to this form The older logicians all did this, as they held that contraposition, being a kind of conversion, should not change the quality of the given proposition There seems, however, to be no reason for thus restricting the application of the name. Both forms are contrapositives, and when we wish to distinguish them, we call the simpler—that is, the one which retains one of the original terms—the contrapositive, while the proposition derived from that by obversion is fitly named the obverted contrapositive

We get then, the following results, expressed symbolically—

1	Original Proposition	$S\,a\,P$	$S\,e\,P$	$S\,i\,P$	$S\,o\,P$
2	[Obverse of (1)]	$[S\,e\,P']$	$[S\,a\,P']$	$[S\,o\,P']$	$[S\,i\,P']$
3	Contrapositive of (1)	$P'\,e\,S$	$P'\,i\,S$	(None)	$P'\,i\,S$
4	Obverted Contrapositive of (1)	$P'\,a\,S'$	$P'\,o\,S'$	(None)	$P'\,o\,S'$

As material examples we may give—

Original Proposition	A	*Every poison is capable of destroying life*
[Obverse]	[E]	[*No poison is incapable of destroying life*]
Contrapositive	E	*Nothing incapable of destroying life is poisonous*
Obvd. Contrapositive	A	*Everything incapable of destroying life is non-poisonous.*

Original Proposition	E	*No lazy person is deserving of success*
[Obverse]	[A]	[*Every lazy person is undeserving of success*]
Contrapositive . .	I	*Some people undeserving of success are lazy*
Obvd. Contrapositive	O	*Some people undeserving of success are not not-lazy*

Original Proposition .	O	*Some unjust laws are not repealed.*
[Obverse]	[I]	[*Some unjust laws are unrepealed*]
Contrapositive	I	*Some unrepealed laws are unjust*
Obvd Contrapositive	O	*Some unrepealed laws are not just*

The great value of contraposition is this The aim of science is to reach propositions which are in fact reciprocal In such propositions the predicate is stated so definitely that it is strictly characteristic of the subject, that is, it belongs in exactly that form to nothing else, and the knowledge expressed by the proposition is, therefore, of the most precise form attainable When, then, $S\ a\ P$ is established, we want to know if $P\ a\ S$ is also true , and the readiest way to establish this is generally to examine cases of S' and endeavour to establish the proposition $S'\ e\ P$ which is the contrapositive of $P\ a\ S$.

(iv) **Inversion is the inferring, from a given proposition, another proposition whose subject is the contradictory of the subject of the original proposition.** The given proposition is called the *Invertend*, that which is inferred from it is termed the *Inverse*

The forms of immediate inference available are conversion and obversion Starting with the given proposition, we apply these processes alternately until we either reach the required result (a proposition with *non-S* as its subject-term), or are brought to a standstill by a proposition which cannot be converted It will be found that an Inverse is obtainable only when the original proposition is universal. Thus —

Given All S is P,
Obvert No S is *non-P*,

Convert · No *non-P* is S
Obvert All *non-P* is *non S*,

Convert Some *non-S* is *non-P*,
Obvert Some *non-S* is-not *P*

The last proposition is the required Inverse In the case of an **A** proposition, as above, we must begin with obversion In the case of an **E** proposition, we begin with conversion —

Given No *S* is *P*
Convert No *P* is *S*,
Obvert All *P* is *non-S*,
Convert Some *non-S* is *P*.

The last proposition is the required Inverse In the case of an **I** or an **O** proposition, we come to an inconvertable result before any Inverse is obtained

The rules for Inversion therefore are these

(1) To "invert" an **A** proposition obvert and convert alternately,

(2) To "invert" an **E** proposition, convert and obvert alternately

The following examples are illustrative of all the processes of eduction —

(*a*) *Given* Every truthful man is trusted (**A**),
Converse Some trusted men are truthful (**I**),
Obverted converse Some trusted men are-not untruthful (**O**)

(*b*) *Given* No cultivated district is uninhabited (**E**),
Converse No uninhabited district is cultivated (**E**),
Obverted converse All uninhabited districts are uncultivated (**A**)

(*c*) *Given* Some British subjects are dishonest (**I**),
Converse Some dishonest persons are British subjects (**I**),
Obverted converse Some dishonest persons are-not aliens (**O**)

(*d*) *Given* Every poison is capable of destroying life (**A**),
Obverse No poison is incapable of destroying life (**E**),

Contrapositive: Nothing incapable of destroying life is poison (or, is poisonous) (**E**);
Obverted contrapositive Everything incapable of destroying life is non-poisonous (**A**).

(*e*) *Given* · Some unjust laws are-not repealed (**O**);
Obverse: Some unjust laws are unrepealed (**I**),
Contrapositive: Some unrepealed laws are unjust (**I**);
Obverted contrapositive: Some unrepealed laws are-not just (**O**).

(*f*) *Given* · No unjust act is worthy of praise (**E**),
Inverse · Some just acts are worthy of praise (**I**),
Obverted inverse · Some just acts are-not unworthy of praise.

All the forms of Eduction may be thus tabulated—

			A	**E**	**I**	**O**
I.	1	Original Proposition	$S a P$	$S e P$	$S i P$	$S o P$
	2	Obverse of (1)	$S e P'$	$S a P'$	$S o P'$	$S i P'$
II	3	Converse of (1)	$P i S$	$P e S$	$P i S$	
	4	Obverted Converse of (1)	$P o S'$	$P a S'$	$P o S'$	
III	5	Contrapositive of (1)	$P' e S$	$P' i S$		$P' i S$
	6	Obverted Contrapositive of (1)	$P' a S'$	$P' o S'$		$P' o S'$
IV	7	Inverse of (1)	$S' o P$	$S' i P$		
	8	Obverted Inverse of (1)	$S' i P'$	$S' o P'$		

2. Eductions of Hypothetical Propositions.—As the opposition of propositions was assumed to be applicable to hypothetical and disjunctive propositions, so too were the various processes of eduction Both assumptions were made because it was believed that hypothetical and disjunctives belong to the four-fold scheme of propositions

Embracing this belief we have forms corresponding to each of the four forms of categorical propositions, and the full table of eductions is applicable to them. These inferences are seen, perhaps, more clearly when the propositions are not written in the abstract form directly expressive of connection of content, but in the following more concrete and denotative forms which are justified by and correspond to them, and which we have called conditional[1] .—

A. *If any S is M, then always, that S is P*
E. *If any S is M, then never, that S is P.*
I. *If an S is M, then sometimes, that S is P*
O. *If an S is M, then sometimes not, that S is P.*

It must be remembered that ‘ sometimes ’ is purely indefinite, like ‘ some,’ and moreover it does not necessarily imply the actual occurrence of the consequent in any one instance ; its force is really ‘ it may be,’ while ‘ sometimes not ’ simply means, ‘ it need not be ’

As examples we will give the eductions from **A** expressed symbolically—

Orig Prop	**A**	*If any S is M, then always, that S is P.*
Obverse .	**E**	*If any S is M, then never, that S is not P*
Converse	**I**	*If an S is P, then sometimes, that S is M.*
Ob. Conv	**O**	*If an S is P, then sometimes not, that S is not M*
Contrap.	**E**	*If any S is not P, then never, that S is M*
Ob Contr	**A**	*If any S is not P, then always, that S is not M*
Inverse	**O**	*If an S is not M, then sometimes not, that S is P*
Ob Inv	**I**	*If an S is not M, then sometimes, that S is not P.*

Eductions can be derived from disjunctive propositions in which alternative predicates are affirmed of one subject; but the derived propositions are not disjunctive, and the process is too artificial to require further notice here

---

[1] See p 92

CHAPTER XIII.

FALLACIES INCIDENT TO IMMEDIATE INFERENCE

1. False Opposition.—Any of the inferences based on the opposition of propositions may be wrongly drawn, and we then have a fallacy of opposition Thus, for example, to infer the falsity of the subaltern from that of its subalternans, or the truth of the subalternans from that of its subaltern, would be such a fallacy But the most dangerous and frequently committed fallacies of opposition are those connected with contradiction The contrary may be confused with the contradictory It is easy to state a number of alternatives and assume that they are all that are possible. As we have already noted, one form of misinterpretation of a disjunctive proposition is due to thus assuming that the alternatives given exhaust the possibilities Under this head may be brought Aristotle's fallacy of Many Questions

PLURES INTERROGATIONES —The *Fallacia Plurium Interrogationum* or *Fallacy of Many Questions*, is the attempt to get a single answer to several questions asked in one, as in the old example ' Have you left off beating your father ? ' Other examples would be ' Where did you hide the goods you stole last night ? ' ' Have you cast your horns ? ' This last is a traditional example, and from it the fallacy is sometimes called the *Cornutus* The whole is to-day quite frivolous, and the only justification for noting it as a separate class of sophism was that the common method of disputation amongst the Greeks was a procedure by question and answer. It lingers among ourselves as a common device of a cross-examining counsel.

The essential nature of the fallacy is false opposition, due to the wrong application of the principle of excluded middle The usual examples take the form 'Is it x or y?' and assume that it must be either x or y, that there is no other alternative Thus the first example omits the alternative 'You never did beat your father,' and assumes that the only possible alternatives are 'You still beat your father' and 'You used to beat him but do so no longer'

2. Illicit Conversion. (i) *Abstract*—To convert a proposition so that a term is used universally in the converse which was only used particularly in the convertend is a fallacy not infrequently committed This is only possible with **A** and **O** categorical propositions, and with the hypothetical forms which correspond to them When the fallacy is committed openly it may be called *abstract*, when it is hidden by the language it may be said to be *concrete* The former class of fallacies has been already discussed with sufficient fullness.[1] Under the latter head come two of Aristotle's fallacies, viz. *Accidens*, where the illicit conversion is that of an **A** categorical proposition, and *Consequens*, where it is of a universal hypothetical

(ii) *Accidens*—The *Fallacia Accidentis* arises when a predication which can be correctly made of any subject is made of all the 'accidents' of that subject But by 'accident' is here meant, not what is denoted by that name in the scheme of Predicables,[2] but, any subordinate part of a general notion Thus, every species and individual is an accident of its genus, in this sense of the term The fundamental invalidity in such inferences is the simple conversion of an **A** proposition, whence the correct conversion of that form of proposition is said to be *per accidens*

Thus, to take an example given by Aristotle "Every triangle has its three angles equal to two right angles; every triangle is a figure, therefore, every figure has its three angles equal to two right angles" Here we have a spurious syllogism with illicit process of the minor term, that is,

---

[1] See pp. 130 and 132 ff.

[2] See p 39

'figure' is distributed in the conclusion though not in the premise. But if the minor premise were simply converted the formal argument would be a correct syllogism, though with a false minor premise The error is obvious.

"Yet," says Grote, "Aristotle intimates that a scientific geometer of his day, in argument with an unscientific opponent, would admit the conclusion to be well proved, not knowing how to point out where the fallacy lay he would, if asked, grant the premises necessary for constructing such a syllogism; and, even if not asked, would suppose that he had already granted them, or that they ought to be granted," which, as Grote remarks, "affords us a curious insight into the intellectual grasp of the scientific men contemporary with Aristotle."[1] Under this head should come a form of fallacy which is classed by De Morgan under the head of *aequivocatio*. "To call you an animal is to speak truth, to call you an ass is to call you an animal, therefore, to call you an ass is to speak truth"

Many logicians have failed to understand the nature of this fallacy, and have regarded it as but another name for the *Fallacia a dicto simpliciter ad dictum secundum quid*

(iii) *Consequens.*—The *Fallacia consequentis* was intended by Aristotle to denote simply the formal error of inferring the truth of the antecedent from that of the consequent, or the falsity of the consequent from that of the antecedent. In the former case the error involved is that of invalid conversion; in the latter case we have an instance of illicit inversion. Like other fallacies, the invalidity is often hidden by the length and complexity of the argument in which it occurs

The most dangerous form of it is, undoubtedly, the assumption that a conclusion is necessarily wrong because it is supported by invalid arguments, or, conversely, that the arguments urged in support of a proposition accepted as true must necessarily be cogent In both these cases personal bias and prejudice have abundant scope to come into operation. When a conclusion is deduced from an invalid argument, we are only justified in saying that such a conclusion is not proven, not that it is disproved In any case, it must be remembered, a proposition can only be disproved by a cogent argument establishing its contradictory

---

[1] *Aristotle*, p. 391.

3. Illicit Contraposition.—Contraposition is illicit when the conclusion contains a distributed term which was undistributed in the premise As contraposition involves both obversion and conversion, it will be found that the invalidity is always in the latter process Thus, a fallacy of contraposition is only possible when the given premise is an **E** or **I** proposition or a hypothetical proposition of corresponding form

4. Illicit Inversion.—To infer from *Every S is P* that *No S′ is P* or from *No S is P* that *Every S′ is P* would be to commit the fallacy of illicit inversion Thus to argue that 'Thought is existence, therefore, what contains no element of thought is non-existent' or that 'A bad man must be miserable because happiness is the result of well-doing' is to commit this fallacy.

Similarly, to assume that because the proposition *If S is M it is P* is established, therefore, we are justified in assuming that *If S is not M it is not P* would be to commit this fallacy. Inductive enquiry is somewhat liable to this error The sufficiency of a positive condition to secure a given result must not, however, be held to demonstrate that the result could be attained in no other way Because a certain flower is fertilised when it is visited by insects, it does not follow that it could not be fertilised if no insects came near it Whether it is so or not must be settled by a special enquiry conducted under conditions which exclude the positive agent already known to be sufficient to secure the result

CHAPTER XIV

GENERAL NATURE OF SYLLOGISM

Definition of Syllogism.—A Syllogism is an inference in which, from two propositions, which contain a common element, and one, at least, of which is universal, a third proposition is derived, which is not merely the sum of the two first, and whose truth follows from theirs as a necessary consequence.

The word Syllogism may be considered as retaining its strict etymological meaning—'a collecting together'—and as implying that the elements of a syllogism are thought together The word thus emphasises the fact that a syllogistic inference is one indivisible act of thought

As one of the propositions given as data must be universal, every syllogism is an inference from the general, in many cases it is an argument from the general to the particular or individual Syllogism is the one means by which a general principle can be applied to specific instances, and in no case can the derived proposition be more general than those from which it is drawn

The whole force of a syllogism depends upon the necessity with which the inferred proposition follows from those given as data, and this necessity must be evident from the mere form of the argument

The *matter* of a syllogism is given in its terms, which vary according to the subject to which the argument refers Its *form* consists in that relation of the terms by which they are united in two propositions necessitating a certain conclusion. Syllogistic inference is, thus, purely formal, and can, consequently, be entirely represented by symbols We are concerned in a syllogism, not with the truth or falsity of either of the individual propositions which compose it, but simply with the dependence of one of them upon the other two, so that, if we grant the latter, we, of necessity, accept the former. The derived proposition, therefore, propounds no truth which was not contained in the data But this is no objection to the syllogism as a process of inference, for one proposition may be contained in another without our knowing that it is, and the syllogistic reasoning by which we come to know that it is, is genuine inference

If the given data are objectively true, the proposition inferred from them must also be true, but, if the given data are objectively false, it may accidentally happen that the derived proposition is true in fact This is, however, a mere coincidence, its truth is known from other sources, and is not established by the syllogism For example, from the data

Lions are herbivorous
Cows are lions

we derive the proposition *Cows are herbivorous*, which is true, but whose truth cannot be held to be a consequence of the given data, which are both false

It is essential that the propositions which form the data should have a common element, as, otherwise, they would have no bond of connection with each other, and, consequently, no third proposition could be drawn from their conjunction But this common element does not appear in the derived judgment, which is an assertion connecting the remaining elements of the syllogism

The *Elements of a Syllogism* are the propositions and terms which compose it 'Terms' is here used widely to cover, not only the true terms of categorical propositions, but also the propositions which form the antecedents and consequents of hypothetical propositions The three propositions which compose a syllogism are called its *Proximate Matter*, and the terms (in the wide sense just noted) which are united in those propositions are styled its *Remote Matter* The derived proposition is the *Conclusion* of the syllogism, and the two propositions from which it is derived are the *Premises*

These names are applicable when the syllogism is stated in the ordinary and strictly logical form, in which the premises precede the conclusion—as when we say 'Everything which tends to reduce the supply of any article tends to raise its price; Protective Duties tend to reduce the supply of those articles on which they are imposed, therefore, Protective Duties tend to raise the price of those articles on which they are imposed.' But, when the conclusion is put forward first, as a thesis to be proved, it was called by the old logicians the *Question*, and the propositions which establish it, and which are then introduced by 'because,' or some other causal conjunction, were termed the *Reason* In this form, the syllogism given above would read—'Protective Duties tend to raise the price of those articles on which they are imposed, because they tend to reduce the supply of those articles, and everything which tends to reduce the supply of an article tends to raise its price' These latter terms are, however, but little used by modern writers

The element common to the two premises is called the *Middle Term*, and is most conveniently symbolised by M, while the other two terms are styled the *Extremes*. Distinguishing between the extremes, that which is the predicate of the conclusion is called the *Major Term*, and may be expressed by the symbol P; that which is the subject of the conclusion is named the *Minor Term*, and is appropriately represented by S. The premise in which the major and middle terms occur is known as the *Major Premise*, that in which the minor and middle terms are found is called the *Minor Premise.* The order in which the premises are stated is, of course, of no consequence so far as the validity of the argument is concerned, but, as the relation of the propositions is most clearly expressed by stating the major premises first, that order must be regarded as the legitimate logical form of a syllogism

The use of the words Minor, Middle, and Major to denote the terms of a syllogism arose from the consideration of that form of syllogism in which the conclusion is a universal affirmative proposition, and both whose premises are also universal affirmatives This syllogism may be symbolised by

$$\begin{array}{l} M\ a\ P \\ S\ a\ M \\ \therefore S\ a\ P \end{array}$$

Here, as the extent of the predicate of an affirmative proposition must be, at least, as great as, and is generally greater than, that of the subject, it is plain that *P* must be at least as wide as, and is probably wider than, *M* in extent, and similarly with *M* and *S* Hence the extent of *M* is, in most cases, intermediate between that of *S* and that of *P*, and, in other cases, is coincident with that of one, at least, of those terms This relation of extent does not hold in all syllogisms and is not essential to the validity of syllogistic argument. For instance

$$\begin{array}{l} M\ a\ P \\ M\ a\ S \\ \therefore S\ i\ P \end{array}$$

is a perfectly valid argument, though *S* is here greater than, or at least as great as, *M* in extent

Similarly, when one of the premises is negative, this relation of extent is not assured For example, in

$$\begin{array}{l} M\, e\ P \\ S\ a\, M \\ \hline S\ e\ P \end{array}$$

the inference is perfectly just whether *P* be greater than, equal to, or less than, *M* in extent, we cannot tell which is the case, nor is it material, as the total exclusion of *P*, which does not depend on its extent relatively to that of *M*, is secured

The names Minor, Middle, and Major are not, therefore, appropriate in all cases, if they are regarded as referring to the extension of the terms, but they are universally accepted and recognised, and are as convenient as any others which could be invented In another sense, moreover, the expression 'Middle Term' is quite appropriate, for that term in every syllogism *mediates* the conclusion, and is the middle bond of union connecting the premises

This terminology of Terms and Premises is primarily applicable to syllogisms which are entirely composed of categorical propositions, but it may be broadly transferred to those which consist, wholly or in part, of hypothetical or disjunctive propositions.

2. Kinds of Syllogisms.—As there are different kinds of propositions—Categorical, Hypthetical, and Disjunctive—all of which can be used in syllogistic arguments, it follows that syllogisms can be of different kinds, or *relations* as it is technically called

When both the premises in a syllogism are of the same character as regards the relation of the terms—categorical, hypothetical, or disjunctive—the syllogism is said to be *Pure*, and the conclusion is, in every case, of the same relation as the premises Thus, two categorical premises yield a categorical conclusion, two hypothetical premises necessitate a hypothetical conclusion, and from two disjunctive premises there follows a disjunctive conclusion. There are, therefore, three kinds of pure syllogisms—the *Categorical*, the *Hypothetical*, and the *Disjunctive*

When the premises are propositions of different relations the syllogism is called *Mixed* In the first place, the major premise may be either hypothetical or disjunctive, and the minor categorical A syllogism in which this order was reversed would be impossible, as the minor premise must state, in a definite manner, the special case which is to be brought under the more general statement of the major premise This gives two kinds of Mixed Syllogisms—the *Hypothetical* and the *Disjunctive* These Hypothetical Syllogisms are sometimes called Hypothetico-Categorical, but it is more usual to name a mixed syllogism in accordance with the relation of the major premise

To avoid confusion, we shall always call syllogisms in which all the propositions are hypothetical or disjunctive propositions *Pure Hypothetical* and *Pure Disjunctive Syllogisms*, while those with categorical minor premises and conclusions we shall style *Mixed Hypothetical* and *Mixed Disjunctive Syllogisms*, according to the character of the major premise.

In the second place, the major premise may be hypothetical and the minor disjunctive This gives that peculiar form of mixed syllogism called the *Dilemma*, in which, according to the number of terms in the major premise, the conclusion is either categorical or disjunctive.

We thus get the following table of kinds of syllogisms :—

- Syllogisms . .
  - 1 Pure . .
    - (*a*) Categorical
    - (*b*) Hypothetical
    - (*c*) Disjunctive
  - 2 Mixed .
    - (*a*) Hypothetical.
    - (*b*) Disjunctive
    - (*c*) Dilemmas.

The distinction between Pure Hypothetical and Pure Disjunctive Syllogisms on the one hand, and Categorical Syllogisms on the other is not of as great importance as is the distinction between hypothetical, disjunctive, and categorical propositions ; for, in all cases the force of the syllogism depends on the necessity with which the conclusion follows from the premises, and the same rules will be found to apply to all kinds of Pure Syllogism. But the Mixed Syllogisms require somewhat different treatment.

We shall, in the next three chapters, confine our attention to Pure Syllogisms, working out the details fully with categorical syllogisms, and then showing how they can be applied to pure hypothetical and pure disjunctive syllogisms. We shall then, in the following chapter, discuss Mixed Syllogisms.

CHAPTER XV.

THE PRINCIPLE AND RULES OF SYLLOGISTIC REASONING.

1. **The Dictum de omni et nullo**.—The Aristotelian logicians regarded as the perfect type of categorical syllogism that in which the middle term is the subject of the major premise and the predicate of the minor premise—that is, in which the empty schema is

M — P (major premise)
S——M (minor premise)
S——P (conclusion).

The Aristotelian logicians devised methods by which any other form of valid categorical syllogism can be expressed in the form shown above, by applying the various modes of Immediate Inference (Conversion, etc.) to the premises. This process is Technically termed "reduction." The validity of such other forms can, therefore, be tested, by first reducing them to this standard form, and then enquiring whether or not they conform to the general axiom which applies directly to this form only. These logicians, therefore, gave one axiom as the fundamental principle of syllogistic reasoning. This is the time-honoured *Dictum de omni et nullo*, which is, perhaps, most satisfactorily expressed by saying:—*Whatever is distributively predicated, whether affirmatively or negatively, of any class may be predicated in like manner of anything which can be asserted to belong to that class.*

Thus, in the formal syllogism above *P* is predicated of the class of things which are *M*, while whatever is *S* belongs to the class *M*, hence *P* can be predicated or whatever is *S*; or negatively, *P* is denied of the class *M* while *S* belongs to this class, hence *P* must be denied of *S*.

2. General Rules or Canons of Categorical Syllogisms.—The mediaeval logicians preferred usually to state the *Dictum* in the form here shown, making it refer to the mutual inclusion or exclusion of *classes*. Some modern writers have criticised it on the ground that it assumes and is bound up with the *class* interpretation of propositions.[1] This, however, is a mistake. Aristotle did not limit the *Dictum* to propositions stating relations between classes. His clearest and most concise statement of it appears to be intentionally neutral as regards the interpretation of propositions. "*Whatever is said of the predicate is said of the subject.*"

In this form the *Dictum* is applicable to propositions stating relations between attributes. "An attribute of an attribute is an attribute of the subject" (*Nota notae nota rei ipsius*), thus, in the example given above, *M* is an attribute of *S* and *P* is an attribute of *M*, therefore *P* is an attribute of *S*.

The nature of this type of reasoning may be stated thus: it is the application of a general principle (affirmative or negative) to a related case or group of cases. When stated in the form corresponding to the logical nature of the inference the general principle is the major premise, "All *M* is *P*"; the assertion that something comes under it is the minor premise "All *S* (or "some *S*" or "this *S*") is *P*", and the conclusion is "All *S* (or "some *S*" or "this *S*") is *P*". The reader will see that this agrees with the definitions of the "major" and "minor" terms and premises given in the previous chapter (Ch. XIV.)

The major premise, therefore, in this type of syllogism, must be a universal proposition (affirmative or negative) for it states the general principle which is to be applied, and the minor premise must be affirmative (and may be universal), for it brings forward a related case under the general principle

---

[1] See, in particular, Mill, *Logic*, Bk. II, Ch. ii, § 3.

We noticed that in the type of syllogism now under consideration, the minor premise need not be universal. When it is universal, we get the valid form *All M is P, All S is M, ∴ All S is P*

When the minor premise is a "particular" proposition it says nothing at all about "All *S*", it only says that *some at least* of *S* comes under the principle or rule stated in the major, hence we cannot go beyond this in the conclusion, which must also be particular, and we get the valid form *All M is P, Some S is M, ∴ Some S is P*

We also noticed that the general principle or rule may take the form of a universal negative proposition When the minor premise is also universal, it states that all of *S* comes under a class (or has an attribute) which is wholly excluded from *P*, and we get the valid form *No M is P, All S is M, No S is P*

Finally, when the major is a universal negative and the minor is "particular," we get the valid form *No M is P, Some S is M, ∴ Some S is not P*

Aristotle discovered the valid forms of categorical syllogisms by examining and testing the various possible combinations of the propositions forming the premises Long after the valid forms had been discovered and analysed, the principles common to all these valid forms were set out in a code of rules known as the "General Rules of the Syllogism" A convenient arrangement gives six Rules and three Corollaries. Each of these is directly applicable to every form of syllogism, and no syllogism is a valid inference in which any one of these rules is violated An examination of them shows that the first two relate to the nature of a syllogism, the second two to quantity—or distribution of terms, and the last two to quality. They may, therefore, be summarised thus

(*a*) Relating to Nature of Syllogism

I *A syllogism must contain three, and only three, terms*

II *A syllogism must consist of three, and only three, propositions* (*b*) Relating to Quantity :

III. *The middle term must be distributed in one, at least, of the premises*

IV *No term may be distributed in the conclusion which is not distributed in a premise.*

(*c*) Relating to Quality .

V *One, at least, of the premises must be affirmative.*

VI. *A negative premise necessitates a negative conclusion, and to prove a negative conclusion requires a negative premise*

We will now examine each of these rules in detail

Rules I and II.—These are not rules of syllogistic inference, but rules for deciding whether or not we have a syllogism at all Rule I forbids all ambiguity in the use of the terms employed in the syllogism , for, if any term is used ambiguously, it is really two terms,[1] and so the argument really contains four instead of three terms, and is not a true syllogism at all, though it may at first sight appear to be one If there is ambiguity it is most likely to occur in the case of the middle term, and hence, Rule III is frequently stated with the additional words "and must not be ambiguous " But this is unnecessary, for Rule I provides against that error, and also against a similar fault in connection with either the major or the minor term, which, if not so common, is equally fatal, when it does occur, to the validity of the inference

A good example of an ambiguous middle is given by De Morgan[2]—

"*All criminal actions ought to be punished by law*

"*Prosecutions for theft are criminal actions ,*

" *Prosecutions for theft ought to be punished by law*

" Here the middle term is doubly ambiguous, both *criminal* and *action* having different senses in the two premises." If the middle term is not exactly the same in both premises it is evident there is no connecting link between the major and minor terms. There must be a common element, and this must be identical in the two premises Mere resemblance, however close, is not enough ; for then *S* and *P* might resemble *M* in different ways, and so no connection be established between them.

---

[1] See pp 55-59. [2] *Formal Logic*, pp 241-2

Again, if *S* or *P* is used in a different sense in the conclusion from that which it bears in the premise in which it occurs, the inference is invalid , for the premises justify only the predication of that *same P* which was connected in the major premise with *M*, of that *same S* which was related in the minor premise to the same *M*

Of Rule II. but little need be said. If there are three terms, two of which are to occur in each proposition, and the same two in no two propositions, it is evident there must be three, and only three, propositions. The very definition of a syllogism secures this rule directly, and Rule I indirectly , for two premises with a common term contain evidently three, and only three terms, and the conclusion relates the two terms which are not common to the two premises

Rule III —The violation of this rule is called the *Fallacy of the Undistributed Middle.* It is essential that the middle term should be distributed in one, at least, of the premises, as only thus can there be any assurance that there exists that element of identity which is necessary to constitute a bond of connection between the extremes Unless it is certain that the extremes are related to one and the same part of the middle term, there can be no inference as to the relation in which those extremes stand to each other Now, if only an indefinite reference is made to the middle term in each premise, either the same, or an entirely different, part of its extent may be, in fact, involved in each case For example, because All Englishmen are Europeans, and All Frenchmen are Europeans, it does not follow that All (or any) Frenchmen are Englishmen. In fact, every possible relation between *S* and *P* is consistent with the two propositions *All P is M* and *All S is M*, where *M* is an undistributed middle term

This is seen at a glance by a reference to Euler's diagrams, which give all the possible objective relations of two classes[1]

---

[1] Cf. p 97.

Each of those five figures may be entirely enclosed in a larger circle representing *M*, and in each case *P a M* and *S a M* will hold true. Thus, it is evident that from two such propositions no inference whatever can be drawn as to the relation of *S* and *P*. Similar ambiguity will be found to follow from every other case in which, in a pair of propositions, *M* is not once distributed

As, then, we have no security when *M* is undistributed that there is any bond of connection between *S* and *P*, we can draw no inference concerning the relation of those two terms For formal inference can depend only upon that bare minimum of assertion which the premises must be held to make unconditionally, and, therefore, as it is formally possible that the same part of *M* is not referred to in both premises, we must not assume that it is so referred to in any particular case Only, then, by securing the whole of the middle term in one premise can we be formally certain that there is an identical element in both premises And, though the middle term may be distributed in both premises, yet a single distribution is sufficient to secure this. For, if the whole extent of *M* is related to one of the extremes, no matter what part of *M* is related to the other extreme, it must be identical with some at least of the *M* referred to in the former case

Of course it is the identical part of *M* which is the ground of the inference The rule of distribution is only a formal safeguard that such a common bond of reference is present

Rule IV —The violation of this rule is called Illicit Process. If the minor term is distributed in the conclusion and not in the minor premise, we have the *Fallacy of Illicit Process of the Minor Term*, if the same unwarranted treatment is accorded to the major term, it gives rise to the *Fallacy of Illicit Process of the Major Term* As the conclusion must follow necessarily from the premises, we can never be justified in making a predication about a definite *All S* when the minor premise only refers to *Some S* For, if merely an indefinite part of *S* is stated to be related to *M*, that statement can give us no right to trace, through *M*, a connection between *P* and *all S*. Because all criminals are deserving of punishment, and *some* Englishmen are criminals, it does not follow that *all*

Englishmen are deserving of punishment The conclusion must be no more definite than the premises warrant And the same holds of the major term We are justified in relating the whole of *P* to *S* only when the whole of *P* has been previously related to *M* in the major premise

It will be noticed that we can only use *P* universally in the conclusion when that conclusion is negative, for *P* is always its predicate, and the predicate of an affirmative proposition is always undistributed In this case, therefore, one of the premises must be negative (Rule VI) If that premise be the minor, then *P* must be the subject of the major premise, which must be an **A** proposition , but if the negative premise be the major, *P* may always be its predicate, though it can be its subject only when it is universal In every other case, if *P* is distributed in the conclusion, we have Illicit Process of the Major.

For example, if we argue from 'All fishes are oviparous,' and 'No birds are fishes,' to 'No birds are oviparous,' our inference is invalid. In this case, as in most such cases, the conclusion is also false in fact But even were it true in fact it would not be a valid inference from the premises , its truth would not be a result of their truth, but would be an accidental coincidence and known only through some other source. For instance, 'All fishes are cold-blooded, No whales are fishes, therefore No whales are cold-blooded ' is exactly as invalid an inference as the one just considered, though the proposition given as its 'conclusion ' is objectively true For there is nothing in the premises to deny to whales the attribute 'cold-blooded,' as will be seen by substituting the word 'snakes ' for 'whales,' when the 'conclusion' becomes false in fact

Thus, no conclusion is justified in which any term is distributed which is undistributed in the premise in which it occurs. The violation of this rule may be compared with the simple conversion of an **A** proposition, a process which has been already shown to be illicit [1]

Rule V.—From two negative premises no conclusion can be drawn ; for, from mere negation of relation no statement of relation can be deduced It is only when one of the extremes is connected with the middle term, that we can, through that connection, infer its agreement with, or separation from, the other extreme For, if both *S* and *P* are declared to be separated from *M*, there is, clearly, no bond of union to connect them with each other They may, or may not, be related in fact , but whatever relation they hold, it is impossible to infer it from the negation of relation with the common element which is contained in the premises

---

[1] See p 130

Compare, for instance, the pairs of negative propositions · 'No cows are carnivorous—No sheep are carnivorous' , 'No men are immortal – No negroes are immortal' In the first case the minor term is, in fact, wholly excluded from, and, in the second case, wholly included in, the major term , but neither the exclusion nor the inclusion can be deduced from the premises, which simply separate both the classes represented by the major and minor terms from the common attribute expressed by the middle term , and premises identical in form must, if they give any conclusion, always give one of the same form

That from two negative premises no conclusion can be derived has been questioned For example, Jevons wrote : "The old rule informed us that from two negative premises no conclusion could be drawn, but it is a fact that the rule in this bare form does not hold universally true , and I am not aware that any precise explanation has been given of the conditions under which it is or is not imperative Consider the following example —

> "*Whatever is not metallic is not capable of powerful magnetic influence* ,
>
> "*Carbon is not metallic* ,
>
> ". . *Carbon is not capable of powerful magnetic influence.*

"Here we have two distinctly negative premises, and yet they yield a perfectly valid negative conclusion The syllogistic rule is actually falsified in its bare and general statement."[1]

---

[1] *Principles of Science*, second ed., p. 63.

Expressed symbolically this argument is

No non-M is P
S is not M
∴ *S is not P*,

where we have, apparently, four terms, *S*, *P*, *M*, and *non-M*. But, if we examine the argument more closely, we shall see that what the minor premise really asserts is that *S* is included in those things of which *P* is denied, *i. e.* the *non-M's*. Hence, the middle term is really *non-M*, and it is this which is predicated *affirmatively* of *S* in the minor premise. We reduce the above argument, therefore, to a syllogism by obverting the minor premise, when we get

$M'eP$
SaM'
$\therefore SeP$

which is perfectly valid and in which Rule V. is observed, as the minor premise is affirmative.

In the following example there is also an apparent inference from two negatives:—

Jones is not over six feet tall,
Jones is not under six feet tall,
Jones is six feet tall.

But the inference is really from the implied disjunctive major, *Everyone is either six feet, over six feet, or under six feet tall.* The two premises given are really the minor, *Jones is neither over nor under six feet.*

Rule VI.—If one premise is negative, the other must, by Rule V., be affirmative. Hence, the two extremes are related to the middle term in opposite ways. Now, if two terms agree with each other, they must, necessarily, stand in the same relation to any third term. If, then, the relations of *S* and *P* respectively to *M* are not the same, but contradictory, relations, *S* and *P* cannot agree with each other. We reach the same result in a slightly different way by considering that, in so far as anything agrees with *M*, it must be separated from everything from which *M* is separated. If, then, one premise declares the agreement of one extreme with *M*, and the other premise asserts the incompatibility with *M* of the other extreme, those extremes must be inferred to be incompatibile with each other. Hence, a negative premise involves a negative conclusion.

And the converse of this is also true The non-agreement of S and P with each other must follow from the fact that one agrees with, and the other is separated, wholly or in part, from M. For, if they both agreed with M, they would agree with each other Therefore, a negative conclusion can only be inferred when one of the premises is negative

(C) COROLLARIES FROM THE RULES OF THE SYLLOGISM — Though the four rules of syllogistic inference (Rules III -VI) are not equally fundamental, yet all are so far independent that all are necessary for the immediate detection of invalidity in syllogistic inference , and for this purpose they are sufficient There are, however, three corollaries from these rules which, though not absolutely requisite for the detection of syllogistic fallacy, are useful for that purpose It was long customary to give the first two of these as independent rules of syllogism They are—

1 *From two particular premises nothing can be inferred.*
2 *If one premise is particular the conclusion must be particular*
3. *From a particular major and a negative minor nothing can be inferred*

We will now show in detail how each of these can be deduced from the rules already given

Cor 1 This may be established by an examination of each of the possible combinations of particular premises—

In every valid syllogism the premises must contain one distributed term more than the conclusion For if any term is distributed in the conclusion it must also be distributed in the premise in which it occurs, and, in addition to this, the middle term must be distributed once, at least, in the premises From this it follows that no conclusion can be drawn from two particular premises For, if they are both **O** propositions, by Rule V nothing can be inferred If they are both **I** they contain no distributed term at all and, thus, break Rule III. If one is **I** and the other is **O** then the conclusion must be negative (Rule VI), and consequently it distributes the major term But **I** and **O** distribute only one term between them, and, therefore, cannot distribute both the major and the middle terms Hence, nothing can be inferred, for to draw a conclusion would be to break either Rule III or Rule IV.

Cor. 2 That a particular premise necessitates a particular conclusion may be thus proved—

If both premises are affirmative and one particular, they can, between them, distribute only one term, which must be the middle term (Rule III) Hence, both the extreme terms are undistributed in the premises, and, consequently, must be undistributed in the conclusion (Rule IV)—that is, the conclusion must be *particular* affirmative

If, however, in such a syllogism, one premise is negative, it distributes its predicate, and the premises, therefore, contain between them two, but only two, distributed terms One of these must be the middle term (Rule III) Hence, only one distributed term can enter the conclusion (Rule IV) But the conclusion must be negative (Rule VI), and it, therefore, distributes the major term, which must, consequently, be the second distributed term in the premises (Rule IV). The minor term is, therefore, undistributed in the premises and must be undistributed in the conclusion—that is, the conclusion must be *particular* negative

As both premises cannot be negative (Rule V), these are the only possible cases

Cor. 3. That nothing can be inferred from a particular major and a negative minor may thus be proved—

As both premises cannot be negative the major is affirmative particular (**I**), and distributes neither of its terms The major term, therefore, cannot be distributed in the conclusion (Rule IV). But, as one premise is negative, the conclusion must be negative Therefore, the major term must be distributed in the conclusion. This contradiction shows that no valid inference can be made.

3. Application of the Rules to Pure Hypothetical and Pure Disjunctive Syllogisms. (1) *Pure Hypothetical Syllogisms.*—Since, as we have seen, it was traditionally assumed that hypothetical propositions admit of the same distinctions of quality and quantity as categorical propositions, there can be forms of pure hypothetical syllogisms corresponding to every form of categorical syllogism. Hence, all the rules given above apply to pure hypothetical syllogisms. The denotative, or conditional, forms bear a closer analogy to the ordinary quantified forms of the categorical syllogism than do the pure abstract hypothetical forms, and the application of the rules is more clearly seen when those quantified forms are considered. The ' terms ' here are, however, propositions—the consequent of the conclusion corresponding to the major term of a categorical syllogism, the antecedent of the conclusion to the minor term, and the element which appears only in the premises to the middle term

In considering the distribution of these ' terms ' it must be remembered that, as ' always,' ' never,' ' sometimes,' ' sometimes not,' in conditional propositions correspond to ' all,' ' no,' ' some,' ' some not,' in categorical propositions, these words indicate the quantity of the antecedent. The quantity of the consequent must be determined by the same rule which decides the quantity of the predicate of a categorical proposition That is to say, the consequent of a negative conditional proposition is distributed, and that of an affirmative conditional is undistributed For example, *If any S is M then always that S is P* does not distribute the proposition *that S is P*, for it neither states nor implies that the only possible condition of *S* being *P* is that it should be *M*—it is quite possible that *S* is *P* under many other conditions, as when it is *N* or *Q* or *X*

In short, the distribution of the ' terms ' in a pure hypothetical syllogism must not be determined by a reference to those terms by themselves and out of connection with their context, any more than in a categorical syllogism

(ii) *Pure Disjunctive Syllogisms* —Since disjunctive propositions are all affirmative, the syllogistic rules (V and VI.) relating to quality do not apply The rule for securing the distribution of the middle term (III) can only be fulfilled when one of the alternatives in the minor premise is the negative of one of those in the major premise This will be more fully considered in the next chapter [1]

---

[1] See pp 177-178.

CHAPTER XVI.

FIGURE AND MOOD

1. Distinctions of Figure.—Figure is the form of a syllogism as determined by the function of the middle term in the two premises. This term may function as subject or as predicate in either premises

If account be taken of the premises alone, so that it is immaterial which of the extreme terms is the subject, and which the predicate, of the conclusion, only three figures are possible For *M* must either be (1) subject in one premise and predicate in the other, (2) predicate in both, or (3) subject in both If, however, it is determined which term shall be the subject, and which the predicate, of the conclusion, the distinction of major and minor is introduced into the premises. The first alternative now becomes two-fold, according as *M* is subject in the major and predicate in the minor premise, or predicate in the major and subject in the minor.

There are thus four possible Figures of syllogism—

First Figure *M* is subject in major, and predicate in minor, premise
Second Figure *M* is predicate in each premise.
Third Figure *M* is subject in each premise
Fourth Figure *M* is predicate in major, and subject in minor, premise

The empty forms of syllogisms arranged in Figures, and with the premises written in the usual order of major first, are, therefore—

FIG. I.	FIG II.	FIG III.	FIG IV.
M——*P*	*P*——*M*	*M*——*P*	*P*——*M*
S——*M*	*S*——*M*	*M*——*S*	*M*——*S*
∴ *S*——*P*	∴ *S*——*P*	∴ *S*——*P*	∴ *S*——*P*

It will be seen that the syllogisms illustrated in our discussion of the *Dictum de omni et de nullo* are all of the "First Figure." The distinction of the "Fourth Figure" from the first does not depend on the *order* of the two premises but on the position of the middle term in the major and minor premises respectively. Aristotle discovered the valid forms of the fourth figure, but he regarded them as a useless variety of the first figure. Later Greek logicians made them into a separate fourth figure. It is, however, an artificial arrangement of terms, and arguments forced into it are usually more naturally expressed in one of the other figures, as will be seen in nearly every actual case by converting whichever of the premises admits of the simple form of that process.

2. Special Rules of the Four Figures.—The arrangement of terms in the premises of each Figure necessitates the imposition of certain limitations of quality and quantity. We thus get special derivative rules for each Figure.

(i) *In the First Figure*, if one premise is negative it must be the major in order to secure that *P* is distributed; therefore the minor premise is always affirmative. This necessitates that *M* be distributed in the major premise which must therefore be universal. So the special rules are—

1. *The minor premise must be affirmative.*
2. *The major premise must be universal.*

(ii) *In the Second Figure*, distributed middle can be secured only if one of the premises is negative. This implies the distribution of *P* in the consequent negative conclusion; therefore the major premise must distribute *P*. So the special rules are—

1. *One premise must be negative.*
2. *The major premise must be universal.*

(iii) *In the Third Figure*, the minor premise must be affirmative, for if it were not, the conclusion would be negative, and therefore *P* would be distributed in the conclusion. But *P* could not be distributed in the major premise unless this premise were negative, since *P* is the predicate of this premise in the Third Figure But this premise cannot be negative, for we started with the assumption that the minor was negative. We must therefore abandon this hypothesis, hence the minor premise must be affirmative Consequently it does not distribute its predicate *S*, hence this term must be undistributed in the conclusion So the special rules are—

1. *The minor premise must be affirmative*
2. *The conclusion must be particular*

(iv) *In the Fourth Figure*, the distribution of *M* can be secured either by a negative major premise or by a universal minor premise, and that of *P* by a universal major premise Consequently no definite limitation in quality of either premise exists, and the special rules are conditioned by the possibilities of quality in the premises

If the arrangement of terms be examined it will appear that when there is a negative premise, and consequently a negative conclusion, the major premise must be universal so as to secure the distribution of *P*, that when the major premise is affirmative the minor premise must be universal so as to distribute *M*, that when the minor premise is affirmative it does not distribute *S* So the special rules are—

1. *If either premise is negative the major premise must be universal*
2. *If the major premise is affirmative the minor premise must be universal*
3. *If the minor premise is affirmative the conclusion must be particular*

3. Determination of Valid Moods.—**Mood is the form of a syllogism as determined by the quality and quantity of the three constituent propositions,** *e g* **AAA, EAE, AOO** are moods.

As all moods are not valid in every figure, a syllogism is only described fully when both its Figure and its Mood are given. There thus arises a more specific use of the term 'mood of a syllogism' in which the same general mood—*e.g* **EAE**—is regarded as including specifically different moods in the different Figures. This is the more convenient use of the term 'mood' and one sanctioned by custom

We will now see how many such moods are justified by the general laws of the syllogism. The simplest way of doing this is to ask what moods will give as formal valid conclusion each of the four forms of categorical proposition, **A**, **E**, **I**, **O**.

(*a*) *To prove* **A**.—Both premises must be affirmative (Rule VI.), and, consequently, they distribute only their subjects. As the conclusion is universal, S must be distributed in the minor premise. This leaves M to be distributed in the major premise. Consequently only one syllogism of the general mood **AAA** is possible, and that is in the First Figure—

$$\begin{array}{l} M\ a\ P \\ S\ a\ M \\ \therefore S\ a\ P \end{array}$$

(*b*) *To prove* **E**.—One premise must be negative (Rule VI.) and one affirmative (Rule V.). These premises must distribute between them all the three terms S, P, M (Rules III., IV.). One premise must, therefore, be **E**, and in this the order of the terms is immaterial. The other must be **A** and must distribute the extreme term—S or P—which occurs in it. There are thus four specific moods according to whether the major or minor premise is affirmative and to the order of terms in the negative premise—

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
$M\ e\ P$	$P\ e\ M$	$P\ a\ M$	$P\ a\ M$
$S\ a\ M$	$S\ a\ M$	$S\ e\ M$	$M\ e\ S$
$\therefore S\ e\ P$	$\therefore S\ e\ P$	$\therefore S\ e\ P$	$\therefore S\ e\ P$

Of these (1) and (2) are specific forms of the general mood **EAE** in Figures I. and II.; (3) and (4) are specific forms of **AEE** in Figures II. and IV.

(*c*) *To prove* **I**.—Both premises must be affirmative (Rule VI.). As neither S nor P is distributed in the conclusion, M is the only term which must be distributed in the premises, though P may be distributed, or M distributed twice, without making it possible to draw another conclusion. If, however, S were distributed in the minor premise, though the conclusion $S\ i\ P$ would be valid it would be inadequate, as we could then deduce $S\ a\ P$. We may have, then, any combination of affirmative premises which secure the distribution of *M* and make that of *S* impossible. We thus get—

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
$M\,a\,P$	$M\,a\,P$	$M\,i\,P$	$P\,i\,M$	$M\,a\,P$	$P\,a\,M$
$S\,i\,M$	$M\,i\,S$	$M\,a\,S$	$M\,a\,S$	$M\,a\,S$	$M\,a\,S$
$\therefore S\,i\,P$	$\therefore S\,i\,P$	$\therefore S\,i\,P$	$\therefore S\,i\,P$	$\therefore S\,i\,P$	$\therefore S\,i\,P$

Of these (1) and (2) are in the general mood **A I I** in Figures I and III, (3) and (4) in **I A I** in Figures III and IV, (5) and (6) in **A A I** in Figures III and IV.

(*d*) *To prove* **O**.—One premise must be negative (Rule VI.) and one affirmative (Rule V.). The distribution of *M* and *P* must be secured in the premises (Rules III and IV.) and that of *S* avoided for the reason given under **I**. It is immaterial whether *M* is distributed once or twice

If the major premise is **E**, it secures in itself all the distribution required, no matter what the order of its terms the minor premise may then be any affirmative proposition except *S a M* If the major premise is **O** it must secure the distribution of *P* by having that term as its predicate, then the minor premise must be *M a S* to secure the distribution of *M*. The minor premise cannot be **E**, as then it would distribute *S* If it is **O** it must have *M* as its predicate to secure its distribution, for the affirmative major must distribute *P*, and, therefore, be of the form *P a M* We thus get—

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
$M\,e\,P$	$P\,e\,M$	$M\,e\,P$	$P\,e\,M$
$S\,i\,M$	$S\,i\,M$	$M\,i\,S$	$M\,i\,S$
$\therefore S\,o\,P$	$S\,o\,P$	$S\,o\,P$	$S\,o\,P$
(5)	**(6)**	**(7)**	**(8)**
$M\,e\,P$	$P\,e\,M$	$M\,o\,P$	$P\,a\,M$
$M\,a\,S$	$M\,a\,S$	$M\,a\,S$	$S\,o\,M$
$\therefore S\,o\,P$	$S\,o\,P$	$S\,o\,P$	$S\,o\,P$

Of these the first four are in the general mood **E I O**, one in each figure, (5) and (6) in the general mood **E A O** in Figures III. and IV., (7) is the only form of the mood **O A O**, and is in Figure III., (8) is the only form of **A O O**, and is in Figure II.

Collecting our results it appears that—

A can be proved in only one mood, and only in Figure I.

E can be proved in four moods, and in every Figure except the Third

I can be proved in six moods, and in every Figure except the Second.

O can be proved in eight moods, and in every Figure.

Thus **O** is seen to be proved in the greatest number of moods, and **A** in the smallest But these propositions are contradictories, and the establishment of the one disproves the other Hence, it is often said that **A** is the most difficult proposition to establish and the easiest to disprove

At the same time, it must be remembered that "*universal affirmative* conclusions have the highest *scientific value*, because they advance our knowledge in a positive manner and admit of reliable application to the individual The *universal negative* come next, they guarantee only a negative but a distinctly definite view Then come the *particular affirmative* which promise a positive advance, but leave us helpless in the application to individual cases Lastly, the *particular negative* conclusions are of the lowest value.

"Particular propositions, however, are by no means without scientific meaning. Their special service is to ward off false generalisations The universal negative or affirmative judgment, falsely held to be true, is proved not true by the particular affirmative or negative conclusion, which is its contradictory opposite "[1]

4. The Mnemonic Lines.—We have found that there are nineteen valid specific moods—four in Figure I, four in Figure II., six in Figure III, and five in Figure IV It has long been customary to designate these moods by the names which compose the following mnemonic lines, each of these names containing three vowels, and thus specifying a mood by indicating the quality and quantity of the constituent propositions by the usual symbols—**A**, **E**, **I**, **O**, thus *Cesare* denotes the mood **E A E** in Figure II.—

---

[1] Ueberweg, *Logic*, English translation, pp 436 7

Barbără, *Cēlārent*, *Dărĭi*, *Fĕrĭō*que prioris ·
Cēsărĕ, *Cāmēstres*, *Festīnŏ*, *Bărōcŏ*, secundae ·
Tertia, *Dāraptī*, *Dĭsămis*, *Dātīsĭ*, *Fĕlapton*,
Bōcardō, *Fērīsŏn*, habet quarta insuper addit
Brāmantip, *Cămĕnes*, *Dĭmăris*, *Fēsāpŏ*, *Frēsīson*

These mnemonics are given here for the convenience of referring to the moods by their ordinary names. They will be more fully explained in the chapter on Reduction.

5. Strengthened and Weakened Syllogisms.—In three of the nineteen valid moods—viz **A A I** in Figure III and **E A O** in Figures III and IV—the middle term is distributed twice, and in **A A I** in Figure IV the distribution of *P* in the major premise is not demanded by the conclusion. These are therefore sometimes called *Strengthened* Syllogisms because in each a premise may be reduced to its subaltern particular without affecting the conclusion. The matter is, however, of no importance.

In discussing the moods which prove **I** and **O** we required that *S* should be undistributed in the premises, on the ground that otherwise the conclusion would be weaker than the premises justify. There is, however, no fallacy in proving less than is warranted by the evidence. If, then, in these moods we strengthen the *S i M* into *S a M* and the *S o M* into *S e M* and still conclude only to *S i P* and *S o P*, in every case we draw a particular conclusion when the premises justify a universal. These conclusions are the subalterns of the legitimate **A** or **E** which the premises justify. So these quite worthless and rather misleading forms—**A A I** in Figure I., **E A O** in Figures I., II., and **A E O** in Figures II. and IV.—are called *Subaltern Moods* and the syllogisms are said to be *Weakened*.

6. Valid Moods in each Figure.—We will now give some examples of valid moods in each figure.

(1) BARBARA.—This, as we have seen[1], was regarded as

---

[1] See p. 150

the most important of all the forms of syllogistic inference; it is most frequently employed—though often elliptically—not only in all branches of sciences but in common life, for to establish a universal connection between subject and attribute is the constant effort of thought, and object of research. Its schema is

$$\begin{array}{l} M\ a\ P \\ S\ a\ M \\ \therefore S\ a\ P \end{array}$$

In Physics, *Barbara* is the most important mood From the general law of the radiation of heat—that, unless some medium intervenes, a warm body radiates part of its heat through the atmosphere to a colder body surrounding it—we infer that, as the surface of the earth on a clear night is a warm body under those conditions, it will thus become cooled

The application of Law is equally syllogistic The whole aim of legal procedure is to determine whether or not a particular case does, or does not, fall under a certain general rule, and, if it does, what are the resultant consequences. Thus, in a criminal trial, the law which has been violated furnishes the major premise, the conclusion drawn from an examination of the acts of the accused person supplies the minor premise, the verdict of 'Guilty' or 'Not Guilty' gives the conclusion from those premises, a conclusion to which the sentence of the judge gives practical effect.

From such examples it stands out clearly that syllogistic reasoning is inevitable within its sphere, but that its premises are abstract, in that they single out one relation from the very complex whole in which alone that relation is found. So its conclusion is true only within the same limitations: it is the whole truth only on the assumption that the premises are not only true but complete

It is further evident that even when—as in Law—we have the required major, it is a task of no small difficulty in practice to determine whether the case before us is a real minor premise. Syllogism, indeed, is a convenient synthesis of work already done Its function in the extension of knowledge will be considered in the discussion of Induction.

(2) CELARENT.—This is the typical mood in which it is proved that a certain subject does not possess certain attributes. As it is neither of so much importance, nor of so much interest, to prove what a thing is not as to show what it is, this mood is not so universally used as *Barbara*. Its schema is

$$\begin{array}{l} M\ e\ P \\ S\ a\ M \\ \hline \therefore\ S\ e\ P \end{array}$$

As an example we may give: 'Duties on imports levied solely for the purposes of revenue are not protective; all English import duties are of this class; therefore, no English import duty is protective.'

(3) BAROCO.—The schema of this mood is

$$\begin{array}{l} P\ a\ M \\ S\ o\ M \\ \hline \therefore\ S\ o\ P \end{array}$$

As an example of *Baroco* we may give: 'All truly moral acts are done from a right motive; some acts which benefit others are not done from such a motive; therefore, some acts which benefit others are not truly moral.'[1]

(4) BOCARDO.—The schema of this mood is

$$\begin{array}{l} M\ o\ P \\ M\ a\ S \\ \hline \therefore\ S\ o\ P \end{array}$$

A good example is given by Ueberweg: "Some persons accused of witchcraft have not believed themselves to be free from the guilt laid to their charge; all those accused of witchcraft were accused of a merely feigned crime: hence some who were accused of a merely feigned crime have not believed themselves free from the guilt laid to their charge."[2]

(5) BRAMANTIP.—The schema of this mood is

$$\begin{array}{l} P\ a\ M \\ M\ a\ S \\ \hline \therefore\ S\ i\ P \end{array}$$

---

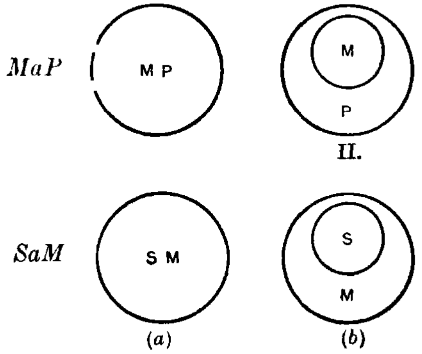
[1] Aristotle, *Ethics*, III, 4.

[2] *Logic*, English translation, pp. 425-6.

Very few arguments fall naturally into the Fourth Figure. The following is an example of *Bramantip*. From the premises 'All moderate physical exercise is beneficial to health; everything beneficial to health is inculcated by the Moral Code,' we may, if our attention is concentrated on moral precepts, most naturally conclude that 'Among the commands of the Moral Code is one which insists on moderate physical exercise.'

7. The Representation of Syllogisms by Diagrams.—The main purpose of applying diagrams to the representation of syllogisms is to make immediately obvious to the eye, by means of geometrical figures, the relation established between the extreme terms by the premises, and, thus, to render easier the apprehension of the conclusion.

This purpose is very imperfectly fulfilled by the circles of Euler. The fundamental objections to the application of these diagrams to the four-fold scheme of propositions have been already stated.[1] As every proposition—except **E**—requires a plurality of diagrams for its complete representation, it is evident that the combination of the two premises of a syllogism can only be fully set forth by a series of diagrams, which, may hinder rather than aid, in apprehending the result of an argument. Take, for example, the representation of *Barbara*. Each premise requires two diagrams to express it, thus—

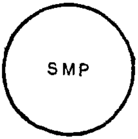


---

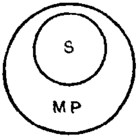
[1] See pp 98-99.

To represent the conclusion, we must combine each of the diagrams which express the major premise with each of those setting forth the minor premise This gives a combination of four diagrams, and unless they are all considered, we cannot be sure that the result given by those we have examined will not be inconsistent with that yielded by those we have omitted. Thus—

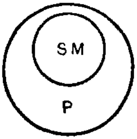
I and (*a*) give



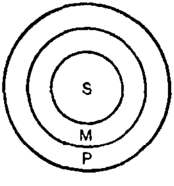
I and (*b*) give



II and (*a*) give



II and (*b*) give

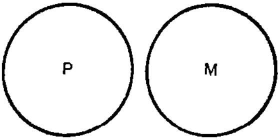


To draw the conclusion we must seek out the relation of *S* and *P*, and in this respect the last three of the diagrams coincide—*S* in each is contained in *P* but does not exhaust it We then compare this result with the first diagram, and we find that in every case it is true to say that *Every S is P*.

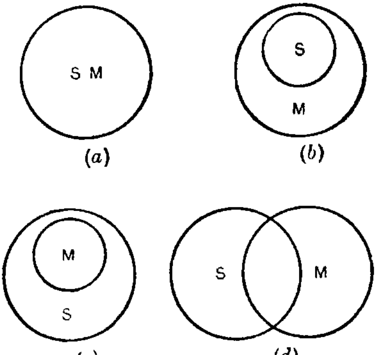
Similarly, if we combine **E** and **A** propositions as premises, we require two diagrams to represent the syllogism, for **A** can *only be fully expressed by using the two diagrams given* above, and **E** by diagram V. on p 97. There are, therefore, two combinations, and these, moreover, will be lettered and interpreted differently according as the **A** proposition is the major or the minor premise.

If we take a syllogism involving a particular premise, the representation becomes still more complex To take *Festino,* for instance, the major premise requires only one diagram, but for the minor four are needed

The diagrams are as follows —



I.



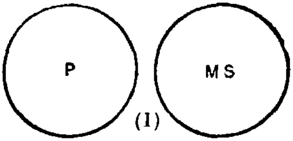
(*a*) (*b*)

(*c*) (*d*)

The combination of major and minor in every possible way yields no less than eight diagrams—

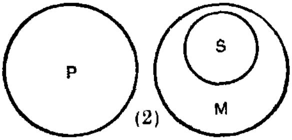
These diagrams are as follows:—

I. and (*a*) give



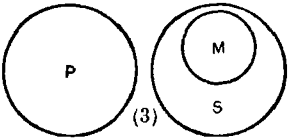
(1)

I. and (*b*) give

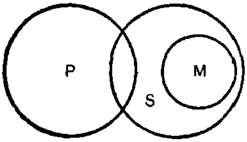


(2)

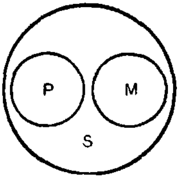
I. and (*c*) give



(3)

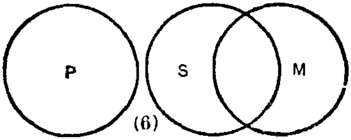


(4)

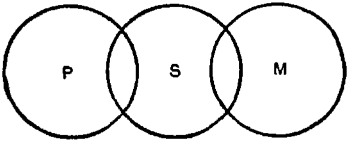


(5)

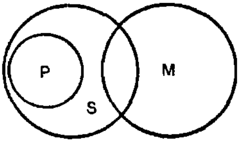
I. and (*d*) give



(6)



(7)



(8)

From this group of figures, we have, by disregarding *M*, to find the relation of *S* and *P*. On examination we find that (1), (2), (3), (6) express the relation of entire mutual exclusion between *S* and *P*, that (4) and (7) represent the partial coincidence and partial exclusion of those terms, and (5) and (8) give the case in which *P* is entirely included in, but does not form the whole of, *S*. We reach, then, the three diagrams which express the proposition *S o P*.

It will be obvious from the above examples that to represent thus the different moods of the syllogism scarcely makes the reasoning more immediately self-evident Indeed, the chief value of this system of diagrams is the negative one of showing what premises will *not* yield a valid conclusion, when the diagrams are compatible with every possible relation between *S* and *P*—as in the case of two negative premises—we know that no conclusion can be drawn

5. Pure Hypothetical Syllogisms.—As according to the assumption traditionally made, hypothetical propositions have the same distinctions of quality and quantity as categorical propositions, it follows that they can be combined into syllogisms in exactly the same number of ways. There can, therefore, be forms of pure hypothetical syllogism corresponding to every figure and mood of categorical syllogism, and governed by the same rules But, as the universal hypothetical propositions are the only ones of much importance, it follows that the important pure hypothetical syllogisms are those composed of such propositions, and of these, those which correspond in form to *Barbara* are the most useful, and the most frequently employed

Moreover, as the whole force of syllogistic inference consists in the necessity with which the conclusion follows from the premises, and as this necessity is not affected by the hypothetical or categorical form in which those premises are expressed, it follows that such hypothetical premises can always be reduced to the categorical form without affecting the validity of the inference This reduction is most conveniently made when the quantified—or conditional—forms of the hypothetical are employed, as they correspond most closely with the quantified form in which the propositions composing a categorical syllogism are usually written. Of course, when this is done, though the inference is equally necessary, the abstract and necessary character of the conclusion is more or less hidden.

It will be sufficient to give an example of a pure hypothetical syllogism in each figure expressing each of our propositions in the quantified denotative form

FIGURE I Corresponding to *Barbara* we have the form

If any S is X, that S is P,
If any S is M, that S is X,
If any S is M, that S is P.

As a material example may be given 'If any person is selfish, he is unhappy; if any child is spoilt, that child is selfish; therefore, if any child is spoilt, he is unhappy.'

FIGURE II. Corresponding to *Cesare* is the form

If any S is P, then never is it X,
If any S is M, then always it is X,
∴ *If any S is M, then never is it P*

An example is 'If any act is done from a sense of duty, it is never formally wrong; if any act is done from purely selfish motives, it is always formally wrong; therefore, if any act is done from purely selfish motives, it is not done from a sense of duty'

FIGURE III Corresponding to *Bocardo* is the form

If an S is X, then sometimes it is not P,
If any S is X, then always it is M,
∴ *If an S is M, then sometimes it is not P.*

We may give as an example: 'If a war is just, it is sometimes not successful; if any war is just, it is always waged in defence of some right; therefore, if a war is waged in defence of some right, it is sometimes not successful' Here it is evident nothing is lost by transferring the syllogism to the categorical form, and saying: 'Some just wars are not successful; all just wars are waged in defence of some right, therefore, some wars waged in defence of a right are not successful.' This has exactly the same force as the conditional form, for the latter does not imply that the want of success is a necessary consequence of the character of the war. But, in the examples with universal conclusions, it is evident there is such a dependence of consequent upon antecedent, which is lost if the syllogism be transferred to the categorical form

FIGURE IV. Corresponding to *Dimaris* is the form

If an S is P, it is sometimes X,
If any S is X, it is always M,
If an S is M, it is sometimes P.

This may be illustrated by. 'If the currency of a country consists of inconvertible bank notes, it is sometimes depreciated, if the currency of any country is depreciated, it causes an artificial inflation of prices, therefore, if the currency of a country causes an artificial inflation of prices, it sometimes consists of inconvertible bank notes.' Here, again, it is evident that the antecedent does not state the necessary ground or reason for the consequent, and nothing is lost by reducing the whole argument to the categorical form.

9. Pure Disjunctive Syllogisms.—The possibility of syllogisms consisting entirely of disjunctive propositions has not usually been considered by logicians Indeed, it is only with certain limitations that such syllogisms are possible at all. They can, to begin with, only be syllogisms with an affirmative conclusion, as no disjunctive proposition can be negative. Only the affirmative moods are, therefore, possible, and, of these, that corresponding to *Barbara* is the only one of any importance. Further, we only secure a middle term when one of the alternatives in the minor premise negatives one of those in the major premise. From

S is either P or Q
S is either P or R

no conclusion can be drawn, except that *S is either P or Q or R*, which simply sums up the premises But from

S is either P or Q
S is either P′ or R

we can draw the conclusion *S is either Q or R* This will, perhaps, be more clearly seen if each premise is expressed as a hypothetical proposition We can write the premises in the form

If S is P′ it is Q
If S is R′ it is P′

whence it follows that *If S is R′ it is Q*, which expresses the disjunctive *S is either Q or R* Such syllogisms are, however, of infrequent occurrence. As the order of the alternatives is indifferent it will be seen that the distinctions of figure have here no proper application.

CHAPTER XVII.

REDUCTION OF SYLLOGISMS.

1. Function of Reduction.—Reduction is the process by which a given syllogistic argument is expressed in some other Figure or Mood.

Reduction is generally confined to expressing in the First Figure arguments given in the other Figures, and though the process can be applied with equal ease to changing reasonings from any one figure to any other which contains the required conclusion, and even from one mood to another in the same figure, these processes are of no utility and need not be considered

Nor is reduction to Figure I necessary to establish the validity of a syllogism expressed in another figure As has been seen the figure of a syllogism is due to the nature of the propositions which form its premises, so that some arguments fall most naturally into figures other than the First, and to reduce them to that form is to substitute an awkward and unnatural expression for a simple and natural one. The validity of such arguments is as immediately obvious as is that of the moods of the First Figure, and, consequently, Reduction is unnecessary in order to prove validity.

Reduction has an important place in the history of syllogistic theory. When the first figure was regarded as *the* perfect figure it was essential to show that the other figures were equivalent to the first figure, and this was done by reduction But since each Figure is now admitted to be valid "in its own right," with its own "Special Rules" derivable directly from the "General Rules," the process of "reduction" is not necessary. It is only a valuable exercise in accuracy of treatment.

2. Explanation of the Mnemonic Lines.—The primary intention of the mnemonic lines given in the last chapter is to indicate the processes by which syllogisms in figures other than the first can be reduced to that figure This is ingeniously done by means of the consonants employed For convenience of reference we will here repeat the lines—

Barbara, *Celarent*, *Darii*, *Ferio*que prioris
Cesare, *Camestres*, *Festino Baroco* [or *Faksoko*], secundae ·
Tertia, *Darapti*, *Disamis*, *Datisi*, *Felapton*,
Bocardo [or *Doksamosk*], *Ferison*, habet Quarta insuper addit
Bramantip, *Camenes*, *Dimaris*, *Fesapo*, *Fresison*

The two additional names, given in square brackets, refer to the direct process of reduction, while *Baroco* and *Bocardo* indicate the indirect process adopted by the scholastic logicians.

Some writers replace the *c* in *Baroco* and *Bocardo* by *k*, but this letter is required for the two additional and different mnemonics for those moods.

The initial letters of the moods in the First Figure are the first four consonants The same initial letters in the moods of the other figures indicate that the moods so named can be reduced to the mood in the First Figure which has the same initial In the other figures—

s denotes simple conversion of the preceding proposition.
p indicates that the preceding proposition is to be converted *per accidens*.
m signifies metathesis, or transposition, of the premises
k denotes obversion of the preceding proposition
ks indicates obversion followed by conversion—that is, contraposition—of the preceding proposition.

sk signifies that the simple converse of the preceding proposition is to be obverted.

c shows that the syllogism is to be reduced indirectly (*conversio syllogismi*, or change of the syllogism).

When one of these letters occurs in the middle of a word, one of the premises of the *original* syllogism is to undergo the process of eduction indicated. Now, when one of the changes indicated is the transposition of premises, the position of the extreme terms is reversed, and the major term of the original syllogism becomes the minor term of the new. The conclusion must, therefore, be converted to bring it to the original form.

Thus every word in which *m* occurs ends in *s*, *p*, or *sk*, and these letters indicate that the conclusion of the *new* syllogism is to be converted. It will be noticed that no other significant letter ends a word. The only meaningless letters are thus seen to be *r*, *t*, *l*, *n*, and *b* and *d* when they are not initial. Several attempts so to change the forms of the words as to omit meaningless letters, and to employ a distinctive letter for each mood have been made, but none of them is likely to replace the traditional forms.

3. Kinds of Reduction.—It was indicated in the last section that there are two kinds of Reduction—*Direct* and *Indirect*, the latter being usually restricted to *Baroco* and *Bocardo*.

(1) DIRECT OR OSTENSIVE REDUCTION.—*Reduction is direct when the original conclusion is deduced from premises derived from those given.* The original premises are changed by conversion, transposition, or obversion.

(*a*) *Conversion.*

(i) The moods *Cesare*, *Festino*, *Datisi*, *Ferison*, and *Fresison*, are reduced to the First Figure by simply converting one, or both, of the premises. For example, *Cesare* (Fig. II.) becomes *Celarent* in Fig. I.—

$$\begin{array}{ll} & P\,e\,M \text{ ------------------ } M\,e\,P \\ & \underline{S\,a\,M} \qquad\qquad\qquad \underline{S\,a\,M} \\ \therefore & S\,e\,P \qquad\qquad\qquad\ \ \therefore S\,e\,P \end{array}$$

and *Fresison* (Fig IV.) becomes *Ferio* (Fig. I.)—

$$\begin{array}{lcl} P\,e\,M & \text{--------------} & M\,e\,P \\ M\,i\,S & \text{--------------} & S\,i\,M \\ \cline{1-1}\cline{3-3} \therefore S\,o\,P & & S\,o\,P \end{array}$$

(ii) The moods *Darapti* and *Felapton* are reduced by converting the minor premise *per accidens.* Thus *Darapti* (Fig III) becomes *Darii* (Fig. I.)—

$$\begin{array}{lcl} M\,a\,P & & M\,a\,P \\ M\,a\,S & \text{--------------} & S\,i\,M \\ \cline{1-1}\cline{3-3} \therefore S\,i\,P & & \therefore S\,i\,P \end{array}$$

(iii) *Fesapo* (Fig IV) is reduced to *Ferio* (Fig I) by the simple conversion of its major, and the conversion *per accidens* of its minor premise—

$$\begin{array}{lcl} P\,e\,M & \text{--------------} & M\,e\,P \\ M\,a\,S & \text{--------------} & S\,i\,M \\ \cline{1-1}\cline{3-3} \therefore S\,o\,P & & S\,o\,P \end{array}$$

(*b*) *Transposition of Premises* —This, as has been seen, involves conversion of the new conclusion

(i) The moods *Bramantip, Camenes,* and *Dimaris,* all in Figure IV , reduce to the First Figure by merely transposing the premises. Thus *Bramantip* becomes *Barbara*—

$$\begin{tikzcd} P\,a\,M \arrow[dr, dash] & M\,a\,S \\ M\,a\,S \arrow[ur, dash] & P\,a\,M \\ \therefore S\,i\,P & \therefore P\,a\,S \\ & \therefore (\text{by conv.})\ S\,i\,P \end{tikzcd}$$

(ii) *Camestres* and *Disamis* are reduced to the First Figure by transposing one premise with the simple converse of the other. Thus, *Disamis* (Fig. III.) becomes *Darii* (Fig. I.)—

$$\begin{tikzcd} M\,i\,P \arrow[dr, dash] & M\,a\,S \\ M\,a\,S \arrow[ur, dash] & P\,i\,M \\ S\,i\,P & \therefore P\,i\,S \\ & \therefore (\text{by conv.})\ S\,i\,P \end{tikzcd}$$

(*c*) *Obversion.*

(i) The mnemonic *Faksoko* indicates that *Baroco* (Fig. II) may be reduced to *Ferio* (Fig I.) by contraposing the major premise and obverting the minor. Thus—

$$\begin{array}{lcl} P\ a\ M & \text{—} & M'\ e\ P \\ S\ o\ M & \text{—} & S\ i\ M' \\ \hline S\ o\ P & & S\ o\ P \end{array}$$

(ii) Similarly *Doksamosk* signifies that *Bocardo* (Fig III) may be reduced to *Darii* (Fig I) by contraposing the major premise and making it the minor, and then obverting the simple converse of the new conclusion Thus—

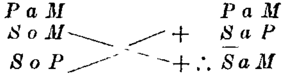
$$\begin{array}{lcl} M\ o\ P & \text{—} & M\ a\ S \\ M\ a\ S & \text{—} & P\ i\ M \\ \hline S\ o\ P & & P'\ i\ S \end{array}$$

$$\text{(by conv)}\ S\ i\ P'$$
$$\text{(by obv)}\ S\ o\ P$$

(2) INDIRECT REDUCTION —*Reduction is indirect when a new syllogism is formed which establishes the validity of the original conclusion by showing the illegitimacy of its contradictory* This method is also called *Reductio per impossibile* or *Reductio ad absurdum* It can be applied to any mood, though in practice it is usually confined to *Baroco* and *Bocardo* ; and this application is the only one contemplated in the original mnemonics The method is founded on the principle of contradiction When a conclusion is legitimately deduced from two given premises, it is formally true , when it is not so deduced from them, it is formally false In judging of the validity of an inference, this formal truth, or self-consistency, is all we are concerned with Now, if the conclusion is formally false, its contradictory must be formally true If this contradictory is combined with one of the original premises, a new syllogism is formed whose conclusion will either be identical with, or will contradict, the remaining original premise. If it contradicts it, it proves that the contradictory of the original conclusion was formerly false, that is, that conclusion was

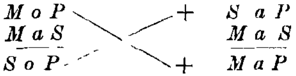
formerly true. Thus the validity of the original syllogism is established.

For example, *Baroco* is proved valid by a syllogism in *Barbara*. For if the conclusion, *S o P*, is formally false, then its contradictory, *S a P*, is formally true, that is, is an inference from the two premises *P a M*, *S o M* Replacing the premise followed by *c* by this contradictory of the original conclusion, we get the following syllogism in *Barbara*, with *P* for its middle term—



Thus, if *S a P* is formally true so is *S a M*. But *S a M* contradicts *S o M*, which is one of the original premises, and is, therefore, formally false Hence, *S a P* is also formally false, that is, the original conclusion, *S o P*, is formally true, and *Baroco* is a valid mood.

Similarly with *Bocardo*. If the conclusion, *S o P*, is formally false, its contradictory, *S a P*, is formally true Replacing the premises followed by *c* by this proposition, we get a syllogism in *Barbara*, with *S* for its middle term—



But *M a P* contradicts the original major premise *M o P* Therefore, *M a P* is formally false, and this entails the formal falsity of *S a P*. Therefore, the original conclusion, *S o P*, is formally true, and *Bocardo* is a valid mood

This process, though formally cumbrous, and, therefore, inferior for purposes of logical theory to the direct reduction by obversion, is a very effective weapon in controversy and is perhaps one of those most commonly employed. Euclid, as we all know, used it frequently as a method of proof

4. Reduction of Pure Hypothetical Syllogisms.—The validity of the reduction of any syllogism depends upon the legitimacy of the processes of immediate inference involved With hypothetical propositions all these processes are valid, consequently pure hypothetical syllogisms can be reduced in exactly the same way as categorical syllogisms. For example, the pure hypothetical syllogism corresponding to *Cesare* (Fig. II.)[1] is reduced to the form in Figure I. agreeing with *Celarent*, by simply converting the major premise, so that we get—

(conv. of orig major) *If any S is X, then never is it P,*
If any S is M, then always it is X,
∴ *If any S is M, then never is it P*

The form corresponding to *Bocardo* (Fig III)[2] is directly reduced to that agreeing with *Darii* by contraposing the major premise and transposing the premises The new conclusion has then to be converted, and the converse obverted We thus get—

(orig minor) *If any S is X, then always it is M,*
(contrap of orig major) *If an S is P′, then sometimes it is X,*
If an S is P′, then sometimes it is M ;
∴ (by conv) *If an S is M, then sometimes it is P′,*
∴ (by obv.) *If an S is M, then sometimes it is not P.*

---

[1] See p 176

[2] See p 176.

CHAPTER XVIII.

MIXED SYLLOGISMS.

Mixed Hypothetical Syllogisms.—When one of the premises of a syllogism is a hypothetical and the other a categorical proposition, the former is called the major, as it furnishes the ground of the inference; while the latter is the minor, as it states a case in which the major is applicable.

The inference conforms to the same principles whether the major premise is stated in the fundamental abstract connotative or in the derived concrete enumerative form, which we have called conditional[1] But in the latter case the fundamental character of syllogistic inference—the application of a general principle to a special case—is perhaps more plainly seen than in the former. For, when the major premise is a conditional proposition, it lays down, in so many words, a general dependence of one phenomenon upon another, though it makes no assertion as to whether or not either of these phenomena occurs in any special instance The categorical minor affirms, or denies, the occurrence of one of these phenomena in some special case, and thus enables us, by applying the general rule given in the major, to conclude as to the occurrence, or non-occurrence, of the other phenomenon in that same case

When, however, the major premise is stated in the abstract hypothetical form making explicit the ground for the connection of content—*If S is M it is P*—then the application to reality is not made through some particular instance of *S*, but must be mediated by the ascertained nature of *S* itself; in other words the minor premise must be the generic judgment *S is M*, and the conclusion is the generic judgment *S is P*.

---

[1] See p. 92.

(i) BASIS OF MIXED SYLLOGISTIC REASONING FROM A HYPOTHETICAL MAJOR PREMISE.—If the implication between one proposition and another is given in the major premise, the assertion of the antecedent in the minor justifies the assertion of the consequent in the conclusion. Such inference is purely formal. If the antecedent and consequent are denoted by X and Y respectively, the simple formula for hypothetical propositions is *If* X *then* Y; thus if X is asserted in the minor, Y must be asserted in the conclusion. Also, if Y is denied in the minor, X must be denied in the conclusion. On the other hand, as we have seen,[1] if Y is asserted in the minor, we cannot assert X in the conclusion, nor if X is denied in the minor can we deny Y in the conclusion.

(ii) DETERMINATION OF VALID MOODS.—It is thus seen that the assertion of the truth of the antecedent of a hypothetical proposition justifies the assertion of the truth of the consequent, and the denial of the consequent necessitates the denial of the antecedent. But the same consequent may result from more than one antecedent; and, therefore, the denial of the given antecedent will not justify the denial of the consequent, nor will the assertion of the consequent warrant that of the given antecedent. For example, though if a man is shot through the heart he dies, yet men also die from other causes. The denial that he is shot through the heart will not, therefore, warrant the denial of his death; nor will the assertion of his death necessitate the statement that it was due to this particular cause. We may express symbolically the various antecedents which lead to the same consequent, using the most general formula of the hypothetical proposition, as in this respect it does not matter whether the consequent has the same subject as the antecedent or not:—

If **A**, *then* **C**.
If **X**, *then* **C**.
If **Y**, *then* **C**.
If **Z**, *then* **C**.

Here, it is evident that if we deny **A**, we still leave open several possibilities of the occurrence of **C**, for either **X**, **Y**, or **Z**, may be true, and if we assert **C**, though we, thereby, assert *one* of its possible antecedents, we cannot tell *which one*, nor have we, indeed, in either case, any security that all the possible antecedents of **C** are known to us If, indeed, **A** is the only possible antecedent of **C**, its denial is a material justification for the rejection of **C**, and the affirmation of **C** is a material warranty for that of **A**. But these material conditions do not hold in all cases, and we are not, therefore, justified in assuming them in any, in formal inference we can deal only with that which holds universally

---

[1] See pp. 108-9.

Now, as **C** may follow from several other antecedents besides **A**, it corresponds to an undistributed term If, however, the denial of **C** were deduced from the denial of **A**, **C** would be used universally in the conclusion Again, when **C** is affirmed, it is affirmed in one case only out of several possible ones, to posit **A** as a result of such affirmation of **C** would be to disregard this Thus, the fallacy of denying the antecedent is analogous to an illicit process of the major term, and that of affirming the consequent bears a similar resemblance to an undistributed middle In each, the unwarranted assumption is made, that the major premise embraces every case in which the consequent can be true

There are thus two, and only two, valid processes of formal syllogistic inference from a hypothetical major premise. They are covered by the canon *To affirm the antecedent is to affirm the consequent, to deny the consequent is to deny the antecedent*

In the former case the syllogism is said to be *Constructive*, or in the *Modus Ponens*, in the latter case *Destructive*, or in the *Modus Tollens*.

When, in such a syllogism, the major premise is a negative hypothetical, it is more convenient, and equally natural, to regard the negation as belonging to the consequent. The major may, then, take any one of four forms, as both the antecedent and the consequent may be either affirmative or negative. There can, therefore, be four forms both of the *Modus Ponens* and of the *Modus Tollens*

But it must be remembered that these names have no reference to the quality either of the minor premise or of the conclusion, but simply to whether the minor enables us, in the conclusion, to affirm the consequent, or to deny the antecedent, of the major, whatever that antecedent or consequent may be To each of these varieties of the two moods separate names are given by German logicians. These names, however, are based on the quality of the minor premise and the conclusion—*ponens* marking affirmative, and *tollens* negative, quality—and thus the same name may denote either a *Modus Ponens* or a *Modus Tollens* Still using the one general formula to denote all forms of hypothetical propositions, these varieties of the two moods are thus expressed symbolically—

(*A*) Modus Ponens.

(1) *Modus ponendo ponens.*
If **A** *then* **C**,
A.
C.

(2) *Modus ponendo tollens.*
If **A**, *then* not **C**,
A,
∴ Not **C**.

(3) *Modus tollendo ponens.*
If not **A**, *then* **C**,
Not **A**,
C.

(4) *Modus tollendo tollens.*
If not **A**, *then* not **C**,
Not **A**,
∴ Not **C**.

(*B*) Modus Tollens.

(1) *Modus tollendo tollens.*
If **A**, *then* **C**,
Not **C**,
∴ Not **A**.

(2) *Modus ponendo tollens.*
If **A**, *then* not **C**,
C,
∴ Not **A**.

(3) *Modus tollendo ponens*
If not **A**, *then* **C**,
Not **C**,
∴ **A**.

(4) *Modus ponendo ponens.*
If not **A**, *then* not **C**,
C,
A.

The identity of the names of the subordinate moods points out that the *Modus Ponens* and the *Modus Tollens* are, at bottom, identical On comparing the majors of the moods with the same name it is seen that they are the obverted contrapositives of each other, with the antecedent and consequent transposed It follows that, if we obvert the contrapositive of the major of any form of the *Modus Ponens*, we shall get the corresponding form of the *Modus Tollens*, and that the latter can be similarly reduced to the former For example, if we take *modus ponendo ponens* of the *Modus Ponens*

If **A**, *then* **C**,
A,
C,

and obvert the contrapositive of its major, we get

If not **C**, *then* not **A**,
A,
∴ **C**,

which is the *modus ponendo ponens* of the *Modus Tollens*

Similarly, if we take the *modus ponendo tollens* of the *Modus Tollens*,

If **A**, *then* not **C**,
C,
∴ Not **A**,

by obverting the contrapositive of its major we get

If **C**, *then* **not A**,
C,
∴ **Not A**,

which is the corresponding form of the *Modus Ponens*.

It must be borne in mind that as, in a hypothetical proposition when it is stated in the conditional or enumerative form, the subject of both the antecedent and the consequent are quantified, the minor may negate the consequent of the major by affirming either its contradictory or its contrary, in each case, however, we are only justified in merely denying the antecedent of the major, that is, in asserting its *contradictory* as our conclusion Thus, from the premises 'If all prophets spoke the truth, some would be believed, but none are believed' we are only justified in inferring that 'some prophets do not speak the truth,' not that 'no prophets do so.'

(iii) EXAMPLES —We will now give some material examples of the various forms of mixed hypothetical syllogisms—

(*A*) **Modus Ponens.**

(1) *Modus ponendo ponens* If any country increases in wealth, it increases in power, England is increasing in wealth; therefore, England is increasing in power

(2) *Modus ponendo tollens.* If any import duty is imposed simply for revenue purposes, that duty is not protective, English import duties are imposed simply for purposes of revenue, therefore, English import duties are not protective

(3) *Modus tollendo ponens.* If any swan is not white, it is black; Australian swans are not white, therefore, Australian swans are black

(4) *Modus tollendo tollens* If any war is not defensive, it is not just; the wars waged by Napoleon the Great were not defensive, therefore, those wars were not just.

(*B*) Modus Tollens.

(1) *Modus tollendo tollens* If any country is civilised it has a population among whom education is general; the people of Russia are not generally educated, therefore, Russia is not a civilised country

(2) *Modus ponendo tollens.* If any social institution is justifiable, it oppresses no class of the community; slavery does oppress a class, therefore, slavery is not a justifiable social institution

(3) *Modus tollendo ponens.* If any railway is not required in the district through which it runs, it is a financial failure, the great English lines are not financial failures; therefore, they are required in the districts through which they run.

(4) *Modus ponendo ponens.* If any country has no capital invested abroad, its imports will not exceed its exports, England's imports do exceed her exports, therefore, England has capital invested abroad.

A few examples may be added of similar inferences when the hypothetical major has not been reduced to the fundamental form with the same subject to both antecedent and consequent.

(*A*) Modus Ponens.

(1) *Modus ponendo ponens.* If all men are fallible, all philosophers are fallible, but all men are fallible, therefore, all philosophers are fallible

(2) *Modus ponendo tollens.* If all our acts are within our own control, no vice is involuntary, all our acts are within our own control, therefore, no vice is involuntary

(3) *Modus tollendo ponens* If vindictiveness is not a justifiable emotion, all punishment should be simply preventive, vindictiveness cannot be justified, therefore, all punishment should be simply preventive.

(4) *Modus tollendo tollens* If seeking his own pleasure is not man's chief end, the egoist is not truly moral, the seeking his own pleasure is not man's chief end, therefore, the egoist is not truly moral

(*B*) **Modus Tollens**

(1) *Modus tollendo tollens* If all prophets spoke the truth, some would be believed, but none are believed, therefore, some do not speak the truth

(2) *Modus ponendo tollens* If some of a man's deliberate acts are wholly determined by circumstances, he is not morally responsible for them, but a man is morally responsible for all his deliberate acts; therefore, no such acts are wholly determined by circumstances

(3) *Modus tollendo ponens.* If no men were mad, lunatic asylums would be useless, but they are not useless, therefore, some men are mad

(4) *Modus ponendo ponens* If the earth did not rotate on its axis, there would be no alternation of day and night, there is such alternation, therefore the earth does rotate on its axis

2. Mixed Disjunctive Syllogisms.—A Mixed Disjunctive Syllogism, in the strict sense of the term, is one in which the inference is drawn from the disjunctive form of the major premise.

(1) BASIS OF SYLLOGISTIC INFERENCE FROM A DISJUNCTIVE MAJOR PREMISE —If two alternatives are given in the major premise, the denial of one of them in the minor justifies the assertion of the other in the conclusion Such an inference is purely formal Though the common formula for a disjunctive proposition is *S is either P or Q*, yet even here the alternation is, at bottom, between the two propositions *S is P* and *S is Q*. And an alternation may be equally well asserted between two propositions with different subjects, as *Either S is P or M is Q*

If, then, we denote the alternative propositions by **X** and **Y**, we shall have the simple formula for disjunctive propositions —*Either* **X** *or* **Y**, which is more comprehensive than the customary *S is either P or Q*. Now, if we accept as the major premise the disjunctive proposition *Either* **X** *or* **Y**, we know that one, at least, of these alternatives must be true, *i.e.* **not X** ensures **Y**. If the minor premise denies **X**, it must, by the principle of excluded middle, affirm **not X**, and this justifies the affirmation of **Y**. But the alternatives may be both negative—*Either* **not X** *or* **not Y**, and this may be written *Not both* **X** *and* **Y**. Here again, if one of the alternatives is false, the other must be true; that is, **X** ensures **not Y**. If, then, the minor posits **X**, it must by the principle of contradiction, deny **Y**, for, in this case, **X** and **Y** cannot be true together.

(ii) FORMS OF MIXED DISJUNCTIVE SYLLOGISMS.—The denial of one alternative, then, justifies the affirmation of the other. And, if the number of alternatives is greater than two, the same rule holds—the denial of any number justifies the affirmation of the rest, categorically if only one is left, disjunctively if more than one remain. Thus—

Either **X** *or* **Y** *or* **Z**,
Neither **X** *nor* **Y**,
∴ **Z**.

and—

Either **X** *or* **Y** *or* **Z**,
Not **X**,
Either **Y** *or* **Z**.

As the traditional disjunctive proposition does not formally imply that the alternatives are mutually exclusive, we cannot infer the denial of one of them from the assertion of the other.[1] Our previous discussion assumes that the proposition is only the formal statement of an alternation. We may, then, give as the canon of syllogistic inference from a disjunctive proposition:

To deny one member (or more) of any alternation is to affirm the other member or members.

---

[1] See pp. 94-5.

This gives one mood only of mixed Disjunctive Syllogisms, commonly called the *Modus tollendo ponens* because it affirms one alternative by denying the other

As, however, both the alternative members may be either affirmative or negative, this mood may take four forms, corresponding to the subordinate forms of the two more fundamental moods of mixed hypothetical syllogisms Both minor premise and conclusion, therefore, may be either affirmative or negative categorical propositions The forms are thus expressed symbolically, the first being the standard—

(1) *Either* X *or* Y,
Not X,
∴ Y.

(2) *Either* X *or* not Y,
Not X,
∴ Not Y.

(3) *Either* not X *or* Y,
X,
∴ Y.

(4) *Either* not X *or* not Y,
X.
∴ Not Y.

(iii) We have already observed that in the case of propositions of the type "Either X or Y" we cannot tell *from the form of the proposition* that the alternatives are mutually exclusive Hence some logicians, who treat this subject on formal grounds alone, regard the forms of mixed disjunctive syllogism which are given above as the only logical forms of this type of argument It is true that if the alternatives are mutually exclusive, then we can only know this from the material nature of the alternatives "Jones is either first or second" is a simple example In such cases, on material and not merely formal grounds, we may infer the denial of one alternative from the affirmation of the other, or *vice-*

versa We thus get (in addition to the forms already given) the following

(1) *Either* **X** *or* **Y**,
X,
∴ **Not Y.**

(2) *Either* **X** *or* **Y**,
Y,
Not X

It must be carefully observed, however, that the validity of these inferences depends on the nature of the alternatives themselves By no other means can we tell whether they are mutually exclusive or not

(iv) EXAMPLES —As examples of the four possible forms of mixed disjunctive syllogisms we may give—

(1) Every tax which provokes general dissatisfaction is either onerous in amount, or unjust in its incidence , the unpopular Poll Tax of Richard II was not onerous in amount , therefore, it was unjust in its incidence

(2) Any country which maintains a protective tariff either intends to subordinate present to future advantage, or fails to see its own interest clearly , America, in maintaining her protective policy, has no intention of subordinating the interests of the present to those of the future , therefore, she fails to see her own interests clearly

(3) Every revolution is either unjustifiable, or is provoked by oppression , the French Revolution of 1789 was justifiable , therefore, it was provoked by oppression

(4) Any penalty which fails to diminish the crime of which it is the appointed punishment, is either of insufficient severity, or is sometimes not incurred by the criminal , the penalty for murder thus fails, and being death, is of sufficient severity ; therefore, its infliction on the culprit is not certain.

We will add a few examples in which the alternatives in the major premise have not the same subject—

(1) Either the ancient Athenians were highly civilised, or the highest artistic culture is possible amongst a people of inferior civilisation, but this latter alternative is impossible. therefore, the ancient Athenians were highly civilised

(2) Either vice is voluntary, or man is not responsible for his actions, but man is so responsible, therefore, vice is voluntary

(3) Either no man should be a slave, or some men are incapable of virtue, but no men are incapable of virtue, therefore, no man should be a slave

(4) Either poverty is never due to misfortune, or desert sometimes goes unrewarded, but poverty is sometimes due to misfortune, therefore, desert does sometimes go unrewarded

3. Dilemmas.—A Dilemma is a syllogism with a compound hypothetical major premise and a disjunctive minor.

In other words, the major contains a plurality either of antecedents or of consequents, which are either disjunctively affirmed, or disjunctively denied, in the minor The peculiar feature of a dilemmatic argument is the choice of alternatives which it thus offers, and, when it is used rhetorically, the aim is to make these alternatives of such a kind that, whilst one must be accepted, all lead to results equally disagreeable to an opponent Hence arose the saying ‘ to be on the horns of a dilemma ’

Strictly speaking, a *Dilemma* contains only two alternatives, if three are offered we have a *Trilemma*, if four, a *Tetralemma*, and if more than four, a *Polylemma* As these more complex forms are governed by the same principles as the dilemma, it will be sufficient to consider the latter

(i) FORMS OF THE DILEMMA (*A*) *Determination of Forms.*—Like all mixed hypothetical syllogisms, a dilemma may be either *Constructive*—when the antecedents are affirmed, or *Destructive*—when the consequents are denied In the former case, there must, of necessity, be two antecedents in the major premise, as otherwise the minor premise could not be disjunctive; but there may be either a single consequent—which the conclusion will affirm in the same form, which is usually the simple categorical, or two consequents—when the conclusion will always be disjunctive. In the former case the dilemma is *Simple*, in the latter case *Complex.* Similarly, the major premise of a destructive dilemma must contain two consequents, which may have either one or two antecedents, the dilemma being again *Simple* or *Complex* accordingly We thus get four main forms of the dilemma, which may be expressed by the following formulae, in which each letter represents a proposition—

(1) *Simple Constructive*

(*a*) *If either* **A** *or* **B**, *then* **C**,
Either **A** *or* **B**,
∴ **C**.

(*b*) *If either* **A** *or* **B**, *then either* **C** *or* **D**,
Either **A** *or* **B**,
∴ *Either* **C** *or* **D**.

(2) *Simple Destructive*

(*a*) *If* **A**, *then both* **C** *and* **D**,
Either not **C** *or* not **D**.
∴ Not **A**.

(*b*) *If both* **A** *and* **B**, *then both* **C** *and* **D**,
Either not **C** *or* not **D**,
∴ *Either* not **A** *or* not **B**.

(3) *Complex Constructive*

If **A**, *then* **C**, *and if* **B**, *then* **D**,
Either **A** *or* **B**,
∴ *Either* **C** *or* **D**.

(4) *Complex Destructive*

If **A**, *then* **C**, *and if* **B**, *then* **D**,
Either not **C** *or* not **D**,
∴ *Either* not **A** *or* not **B**.

The second form of the Simple Constructive dilemma is simple because the alternative hypotheticals which form the major premise have only one consequent The conclusion is disjunctive because this single consequent is disjunctive in form Similarly, the second form of the simple destructive dilemma is not complex, although it has a disjunctive conclusion, for that conclusion is merely the simple denial of the one single antecedent of the major premise It thus appears that these forms are not fundamental, but are only special cases of somewhat greater complexity of the simple forms

It will be noticed that the major premise of both forms of the simple destructive dilemma has its consequent copulative, and not disjunctive, in form (*i e* "both *C* and *D*" instead of "either *C* or *D*") Otherwise we should not get a "dilemma" at all, but only a mixed hypothetical syllogism The reason is that when two consequents are alternatives their disjunctive denial will not justify the denial of the antecedent, for, if one of two alternatives is false, the other must be true, and the truth of one consequent is all that the antecedent of such a proposition demands It is necessary that *both* the consequents should be connected with the whole antecedent, in order that the denial of their conjunction may justify the rejection of the antecedent as a whole.

We will now illustrate each of the above forms

(1) *Simple Constructive* —(*a*) The inhabitants of a besieged town might express their position in some such dilemma as this ' If we hold out, we shall suffer loss by the bombardment destroying our property, if we surrender, we shall suffer loss through having to pay the enemy a heavy ransom, but we must adopt one or other of these two courses, therefore, whichever way we act, we are bound to suffer loss '

(*b*) This form, which is more indefinite than the former, neither antecedent being limited to one consequent, is much less frequently employed As an example of it we may give 'If either England is over-populated or its industry is disorganised, many people must either emigrate or live in deep poverty, England at present suffers either from overpopulation or from disorganisation of industry, therefore, many Englishmen must either emigrate or live in deep poverty'

(2) *Simple Destructive*—(*a*) Euclid's proof of Proposition VII of the First Book may be exhibited as a dilemma of this kind 'If two triangles on the same base, and on the same side of it, have their conterminous sides equal, then two angles are both equal and unequal to each other, but they are either not equal or not unequal, therefore, the existence of two such triangles is impossible'

Whately gives the following example of such an argument "If we admit the popular objections against Political Economy, we must admit that it tends to an excessive increase of wealth and also, that it tends to impoverishment; but it cannot do *both* of these, (*i e* either not the one, or not the other) therefore we cannot admit the popular objections, etc"[1]

(*b*) This form is very seldom used As an example we may give 'If compulsory education is unnecessary and no legal regulation of the conditions of the labour of children is justifiable, then all guardians of children both understand and try to perform their duty to those under their charge, but some guardians either do not understand their duty to their young wards or do not try to perform it, therefore, either compulsory education is necessary or some legal regulation of the conditions of children's labour is justifiable'

(3) *Complex Constructive*—A good example of this form of dilemma is found in the oration of Demosthenes *On the Crown*, where he argues 'If Aeschines joined in the public rejoicings, he is inconsistent, if he did not, he is unpatriotic, but either he did or he did not, therefore, he is either inconsistent or unpatriotic'

The following argument is in the same form 'If the Czar of Russia is aware of the persecutions of the Jews in his country, he is a tyrant, if he is not aware of them, he neglects his duty, but either he is, or he is not, aware of them; therefore, either he is a tyrant or he neglects his duty'

---

[1] Whately, *Elements of Logic*, fifth ed, pp 117-18

(4) *Complex Destructive*—This, again, is not a very common form An example is 'If the industry of England is well organised, there is work for every efficient labourer who seeks it, and if all labourers are industrious, all will seek work, but either some labourers cannot get work or they will not seek it, therefore, either the industry of England is not well organised or some labourers are idle'

(*B*) *Mutual Convertibility of Forms*—Like the simpler mixed hypothetical syllogisms, the constructive and destructive dilemmas are, at bottom, identical, for any form of the one may be converted to the corresponding form of the other by obverting the contrapositive of the major premise Thus, the complex destructive and complex constructive dilemmas are, fundamentally, the same, and each of the two forms of the simple destructive is mutually convertible with the corresponding form of the simple constructive dilemma In illustration of this it will be sufficient to reduce each of the destructive to a constructive form

Simple Destructive—(*a*) By obverting the contrapositive of the major premise and retaining the original minor, we get—

If either not **C** *or* not **D**, *then* not **A**,
Either not **C** *or* not **D**,
∴ Not **A**,

which is the simple constructive form with negative, instead of affirmative, elements

(*b*) Similarly, by obverting the contrapositive of the second form of the simple destructive we get the second form of the simple constructive, with negative elements—

If either not **C** *or* not **D**, *then either* not **A** *or* not **B**,
Either not **C** *or* not **D**
∴ *Either* Not **A** *or* not **B**

Complex Destructive.—The obverted contrapositive of the major premise being taken, we get—

If not **C**, *then* not **A**, *and if* not **D**, *then* not **B**,
Either not **C** *or* not **D**,
∴ *Either* not **A** *or* not **B**,

which is the complex constructive form with negative elements.

This convertibility may be illustrated by an example A man in bad health, and who has no income but his salary, may argue that his recovery is hopeless, either in the simple destructive dilemma 'If I am to regain health, I must both give up work and live generously but I cannot do both of these (that is, either I cannot do one, or I cannot do the other), therefore, I cannot regain health', or in the simple constructive, 'If I either continue to work, or live meagrely, I cannot regain health, but I must either continue to work or live meagrely, therefore, I cannot regain health'

(ii) REBUTTING A DILEMMA —The conclusiveness of a dilemma depends upon material, as well as formal, considerations Not only must the connection of antecedent and consequent be a real one, but the disjunction in the minor premise must exhaust every possible alternative The difficulty of securing this is the reason dilemmatic arguments are so often fallacious

Very often a faulty dilemma can be *rebutted* or *retorted* by an equally cogent dilemma proving the opposite conclusion. In such a case, the consequents of the major change places, and their quality is changed Thus—

If **A**, *then* **C**, *and if* **B**, *then* **D**,
Either **A** *or* **B**,
∴ *Either* **C** *or* **D**,

may be rebutted by the dilemma

If **A**, *then* not **D**, *and if* **B**, *then* not **C**,
Either **A** *or* **B**,
∴ *Either* not **C** *or* not **D**.

But the conclusion proved is not really incompatible with that of the original dilemma, for both can be satisfied by **C** and **not D** or by **D** and **not C** being true together Only the complex constructive forms of the dilemma lend themselves to this treatment (though destructive dilemmas can be reduced to the constructive form and then rebutted), and, of course, only those in which some flaw exists in the original argument , a valid dilemma cannot be rebutted There are several classical examples of dilemmas thus rebutted, the consideration of which will tend to make the subject clear

An Athenian mother is said to have advised her son not to enter public life , 'for,' said she, 'if you act justly men will hate you, and if you act unjustly the gods will hate you ; but you must act either justly or unjustly , therefore, public life must lead to your being hated ' This argument he rebutted by the equally cogent dilemma 'If I act justly the gods will love me and if I act unjustly men will love me , therefore, entering public life will make me beloved.' But, according to the given premises, a public man must always be both hated and loved , the given conclusions are not, therefore, incompatible

More famous is the *Litigiosus* Protagoras agreed to train Euathlus as a lawyer, one-half the fee to be paid at once, and the other half when Euathlus won his first case As Euathlus engaged in no suit, Protagoras sued him, and confronted him with this dilemma Most foolish young man, if you lose this suit you must pay me by order of the court, and if you gain it you must pay me by our contract ' To which Euathlus retorted 'Most sapient master, I shall not pay you , for if I lose this suit I am free from payment by our contract, and if I gain it, I am exonerated by the judgment of the court '

Of this difficulty several solutions have been offered The most reasonable seems to be this As Euathlus had until then won no case, the condition of the bargain was not fulfilled, and the judges should have decided in his favour It was then open to Protagoras to bring a fresh suit, when the judgment must have gone against Euathlus

Somewhat similar is the *Crocodilus* A crocodile had seized a child, but promised the mother that if she told him truly whether or not he was going to give it back, he would restore it. Fearing that if she said he was going to give it back he would prove her wrong by devouring it, she answered, 'You will not give it back', and argued 'Now you must give it back—on the score of our agreement if my answer is true, and to prevent its becoming true if it is false' But the crocodile answered 'I cannot give it back, for if I did your answer would become false, and thus I should break our agreement, and even could your answer be correct I could not give it back, as that would make it false'

On this Lotze says "There is no way out of this dilemma, as a matter of fact, however, both parties rest their cases on unthinkable grounds, for the answer really given can as little be true or untrue independently of the actual result as could the answer she might have given, an answer which only differs from this in being more fortunate"[1] For, had she said 'You will give it back,' then its restoration would both have made her answer true and have fulfilled the agreement

---

[1] *Logic*, English translation, Vol II, p 20

CHAPTER XIX.

ABRIDGED AND CONJOINED SYLLOGISMS.

1. Enthymemes.—An Enthymeme is a syllogism abridged in expression by the omission of one of the constituent propositions.

The most common form in which syllogistic arguments are met with is the enthymematic The tendency of speech is always to state explicitly no more than is required for clearness, and as, in most cases, when two of the constituent propositions of a syllogism are given the third is sufficiently obvious, it would be mere pedantry to express it in ordinary discourse It is, therefore, but seldom that fully expressed syllogisms are met with outside treatises on logic This condensation, however, makes it both more easy to commit fallacy and more difficult to detect it. A false conclusion is often supported by a perfectly true premise The fact that the implied premise is false or wanting in pertinence is not realised

In reasoned discourse the omission of a premise is more usual than the suppression of the conclusion The latter is essentially a rhetorical device and always carries a suggestion of feeling As, however, any one of the three constituent propositions of a syllogism may be omitted, we can speak of enthymemes as of three *orders* -

First Order—when the major premise is omitted
Second Order —when the minor premise is omitted
Third Order —when the conclusion is omitted

For example, the argument of the fully stated syllogism :

'All democratic governments are liable to frequent changes in foreign policy, the English government is democratic; therefore, the English government is liable to frequent changes in foreign policy'—may be expressed by an enthymeme of each order—

First Order 'The English government is liable to frequent changes in foreign policy, because it is democratic'

Second Order 'The English government is liable to frequent changes in foreign policy, because all democratic governments are liable to this'

Third Order 'All democratic governments are liable to frequent changes in foreign policy, and the English government is democratic'

When an enthymeme is of the first or second order, more frequently than not the conclusion is stated first, and the premise given in its support is introduced by some such illative particle as 'because' or 'since'

When an enthymeme is of the third order, it is, of course, immediately obvious to which of the syllogistic figures it belongs When it is of either the first or second order, this must be determined by the position in the given premise of either the minor or the major term If the given premise contains the subject of the conclusion, it is, necessarily, the minor premise, and the enthymeme is of the first order, if it contains the predicate of the conclusion, the enthymeme is of the second order

Now, if both the given premise and the conclusion have the same subject, the enthymeme must be in either the First or the Second Figure, for in those figures only is *S* the subject of the minor premise Similarly, if both the propositions have the same predicate, the figure is either the First or the Third, for in these *P* is predicate of the major premise If the predicate of the conclusion is the subject of the given premise, the argument belongs either to Figure II. or to Figure IV, in each of which *P* is the subject of the major premise Finally, if the subject of the conclusion is the predicate of the given premise, the figure is either the Third or the Fourth, for in each of these *S* is the predicate of the minor premise

2. Progressive and Regressive Chains of Reasoning.—A train of thought may be conducted by means of a succession of syllogisms in which the conclusion of each syllogism supplies a premise to that which follows. Two cases may be distinguished. In the first the conclusion forms the major premise, and in the second the minor premise, of the syllogism which it precedes. Symbolically, therefore, the two cases may be represented as follows.—

(I.)	(II.)
$Y\ a\ P$ (major)	$Y\ a\ X$ (major)
$X\ a\ Y$ (minor)	$S\ a\ Y$ (minor)
∴ $X\ a\ P$ (concl.)	∴ $S\ a\ X$ (concl.)
$X\ a\ P$ (major)	$X\ a\ M$ (major)
$M\ a\ X$ (minor)	$S\ a\ X$ (minor)
∴ $M\ a\ P$ (concl.)	∴ $S\ a\ M$ (concl.)
$M\ a\ P$ (major)	$M\ a\ P$ (major)
$S\ a\ M$ (minor)	$S\ a\ M$ (minor)
∴ $S\ a\ P$ (concl.)	∴ $S\ a\ P$ (concl.)

In a chain of syllogisms, where the *conclusion* of one furnishes *either* the major *or* the minor premise of the next, the syllogism whose conclusion furnishes one of the premises of the next is called the "prosyllogism," and the syllogism which uses a previous conclusion for one of its premises is called the "episyllogism." As used in these terms, the prefixes *pro* and *epi* mean respectively *before* and *after*, but in this case the reference is not to sequence in time but to *logical* sequence—the episyllogism is logically dependent on the prosyllogism.

The following is a good example.[1] "Large-scale production means an increase in real income, for it cheapens articles of ordinary consumption, and so makes our incomes go further than they would otherwise. Now an increase in real income is obviously a boon to people of small means. Therefore large-scale production is a boon to people of small means" Here we have two syllogisms In the first the order of statement is that of conclusion first, minor premise next, major premise last In the second syllogism the major premise is stated first, and is followed at once by the conclusion—the minor premise being supplied by the conclusion of the first syllogism and therefore not repeated

---

[1] From A. Wolf, *Textbook of Logic*, Ch. xi., p. 114.

In these examples the process of thought has been from prosyllogism to episyllogism

Such a process of demonstration is called Progressive, Synthetic, or Episyllogistic These terms are used not only with reference to arguments expressed in a series of formal syllogisms Any process of inference in which we work out the consequences of the premises from which we start, or argue from causes to effects, is called a *synthetic* process It is very common in mathematics and is constantly used by Euclid in his direct proofs

But in physical science it more frequently happens that the highest and most general principles are the last to be discovered "Certain general propositions are first discovered (as, *e g* the laws of Kepler) under which the individual facts are syllogistically subsumed The highest principles are discovered later (*e g* the Newtonian law of Gravitation) from which those general principles are necessary deductions "[1] In such a course of reasoning, thought advances from the episyllogism to the prosyllogism, going backwards further and further towards the first principles A demonstration of this kind is, therefore, called **Regressive, Prosyllogistic,** or **Analytic** In this type of reasoning we work back to find the grounds on which our premises rest, or to argue from effects to causes The process can be expressed symbolically, but the symbols conceal rather than reveal the logical nature of the argument, since we begin with the conclusion and proceed to discover the premises "$S\ a\ P$, because $M\ a\ P$ and $S\ a\ M$, $M\ a\ P$, because $Q\ a\ P$ and $M\ a\ Q$", and so on

Such a train of reasoning, whether progressive or regressive, is often called a *Polysyllogism*

---

[1] Ueberweg, *Logic*, English translation, p 465

3. Sorites.—**A Sorites is a progressive chain of reasoning whose expression is simplified by the omission of the conclusion of each of the prosyllogisms.**

The Sorites is, thus, a series of enthymemes, of which the first is of the third order, as both its premises are stated, and the last is of either the first or the second order, as one premise and the conclusion are given. But each of the intermediate enthymemes is represented by one premise alone, as the other premise is the omitted conclusion of the preceding prosyllogism. In somewhat different words, therefore, it may be said that a sorites is a series of enthymemes, in each of which, except the first, one premise is implied by a prosyllogism, and the other is explicitly stated. From this it follows that a full analysis of a sorites resolves it into a number of separate syllogisms, less by one than the total number of premises.

(1) KINDS OF SORITES.—It was seen in the last section that the conclusion of a prosyllogism may form either the minor or the major premise of the episyllogism. There are, consequently, two forms of sorites—the *Aristotelian*, in which the suppressed conclusions form the minor premises of the following episyllogisms; and the *Goclenian*, in which they form the major premises. The symbolic expression of each may be thus given—

Aristotelian Sorites—*Every S is X*
Every X is Y
Every Y is Z
Every Z is P
∴ *Every S is P*

Goclenian Sorites—*Every Z is P*
Every Y is Z
Every X is Y
Every S is X
∴ *Every S is P*

If both forms are analysed into their constituent syllogisms, it will be seen that in the Aristotelian form the omitted conclusions—which we enclose in square brackets—form the minor, and in the Goclenian form the major, premises of the succeeding episyllogisms.

Analysis of Aristotelian Sorites—

(1) *Every X is Y* (major)
Every S is X (minor)
∴ [*Every S is Y*] (concl.)

(2) *Every Y is Z* (major)
[*Every S is Y*] (minor)
∴ [*Every S is Z*] (concl.)

(3) *Every Z is P* (major)
[*Every S is Z*] (minor)
Every S is P (concl.)

Analysis of Goclenian Sorites—

(1) *Every Z is P* (major)
Every Y is Z (minor)
∴ [*Every Y is P*] (concl.)

(2) [*Every Y is P*] (major)
Every X is Y (minor)
∴ [*Every X is P*] (concl.)

(3) [*Every X is P*] (major)
Every S is X (minor)
∴ *Every S is P* (concl.)

It is evident that the two forms agree in the fact that each omitted conclusion is a premise of the following syllogism. Now, this advance from previous to consequent inferences is the characteristic of progressive reasoning; it is, therefore, an error to speak of the Goclenian Sorites, as some logicians have done, as a regressive form of reasoning.

Either form of sorites may be entirely composed of hypothetical propositions. In the Goclenian Sorites the last premise may be categorical, and then the concluding enthymeme is the abridged form of a mixed syllogism, in which the categorical minor premise either affirms the antecedent, or denies the consequent, of the implied conclusion of the preceding prosyllogism, e.g. —

If **C**, *then* **D**,
If **B**, *then* **C**,
If **A**, *then* **B**,
A,
∴ **D**.

If **C**, *then* **D**,
If **B**, *then* **C**,
If **A**, *then* **B**,
Not D,
∴ **Not A**.

In the Aristotelian Sorites, however, the same result can only be obtained by adding to the sorites a categorical minor premise, and then regarding the implied conclusion of the preceding prosyllogism as the major, instead of the minor premise of the last episyllogism. In other words, a mixed syllogism at the end of a sorites must, in all cases, correspond to the Goclenian form, e.g. —

If **A**, *then* **B**,
If **B**, *then* **C**,
If **C**, *then* **D**,
A,
∴ **D**.

If **A**, *then* **B**,
If **B**, *then* **C**,
If **C**, *then* **D**,
Not D,
∴ **Not A**.

Aristotle's argument that "action" (i.e. incident and "plot") are of supreme importance in tragedy, is an interesting example of a sorites.[1] It may be analysed thus: "In everything the end and aim are of supreme importance, representation of happiness and its opposite is the end and aim of tragedy, happiness and its opposite are involved in action, therefore the arrangement of action is of supreme importance in tragedy." The following shows the hypothetical form. "If any man is avaricious, he is intent on increasing his wealth, if he is so intent, he is discontented, if he is discontented, he is unhappy, therefore, if any man is avaricious, that man is unhappy."

In all these cases, if we reverse the order of premises, we get a sorites of the Goclenian form.

---

[1] Aristotle, *Poetics*, vi, 12.

(ii) SPECIAL RULES OF THE SORITES. (*a*) *The Aristotelian Sorites*—In this form of sorites, the predicate of the last premise is, in the conclusion, affirmed or denied of the first subject, through one or more intermediate propositions. Each intermediate term must, therefore, be affirmatively predicable of the whole of the preceding one, or the chain of connection is broken This gives us the two following as—

Special Rules of the Aristotelian Sorites—

1 *Only one premise, and that the last, can be negative*
2 *Only one premise, and that the first, can be particular*

The necessity of these rules is evident when the sorites is analysed into its constituent syllogisms

Rule 1. More than one premise cannot be negative, for as a negative premise in any syllogism necessitates a negative conclusion, if more than one premise in the sorites were negative, one of the constituent syllogisms would contain two negative premises

If any premise in the sorites is negative, the conclusion must be negative, therefore the predicate of the conclusion must be distributed in the last premise, of which it is the predicate, that is, the last premise must be negative

Rule 2 As every premise except the last must be affirmative, it is evident that if any, except the first, were particular, it would involve the fallacy of undistributed middle

(*b*) *The Goclenian Sorites* In this form of sorites the predicate of the first premise is, in the conclusion, either affirmed, or denied, of the subject of the last, through one or more intermediate propositions Each intermediate term must, therefore, be affirmed universally of the succeeding one, or the necessary connection will not be secured We thus get the two following as—

Special Rules of the Goclenian Sorites—

1 *Only one premise, and that the first, can be negative*
2 *Only one premise, and that the last, can be particular*

A consideration of the constituent syllogisms again shows the necessity of these rules.

Rule 1. As in the Aristotelian sorites, a plurality of negative premises would result in one of the syllogisms containing two negative premises.

If any premise is negative, the conclusion must be negative, therefore its predicate must be distributed in the first premise, of which it is the predicate, that is, the first premise must be negative

Rule 2 If any premise but the last were particular, the conclusion of the syllogism in which it occurred would also be particular, and, as that proposition would be the major premise of the succeeding syllogism, we should have the fallacy of undistributed middle

The above rules assume, in each case, that the sorites is entirely in the First Figure, that is, that each of the constituent syllogisms is in that figure

4. Epicheiremas.—An Epicheirema is a regressive chain of reasoning abridged by the omission of one of the premises of each prosyllogism.

Each prosyllogism, therefore, appears in the epicheirema as an enthymeme, though the episyllogism is stated in full Each prosyllogism furnishes a reason in support of one of the premises of the episyllogism, and the whole epicheirema may be described as a syllogism with a reason given in support of one or both of its premises

When one premise only is thus supported, the epicheirema is *Single*, when both are furnished with reasons, it is *Double*, and when those reasons themselves have other reasons attached to them, it is *Complex* The progress of thought in an epicheirema is from the episyllogism to the prosyllogisms on which it depends, from the conclusion to the principles which support it.

Symbolic examples of the Double Epicheirema are—

(1) *Every M is P, because it is X,*
Every S is M, because it is Y,
∴ *Every S is P*

(2) *Every M is P, because every A is,*
Every S is M, because every B is,
∴ *Every S is P.*

In the first case the enthymemes expressing the reasons are both of the first order, the suppressed major premises being *Every X is P*, and *Every Y is M* In the second case both the enthymemes are of the second order, the implied minor premises being *Every M is A*, and *Every S is B* Of course, both need not be of the same order If we leave out one of the reasons in either of the above examples we have a single epicheirema

We will now illustrate what has been said by material examples of the two forms of double epicheirema given above

(1) 'All unnecessary duties on imports are impolitic, as they impede the trade of the country, the American protective duties are unnecessary, as they support industries which are quite able to stand alone, therefore, the American protective tariff is impolitic'

(2) 'All Malays are cruel, because all savages are, all the aboriginal inhabitants of Singapore are Malays, because all the natives of that part of Asia are, therefore, all the natives of Singapore are cruel'

CHAPTER XX.

FUNCTION, VALIDITY, AND LIMITATION OF THE SYLLOGISM

1. Universal Element in Syllogistic Reasoning.—The essential feature of syllogistic reasoning is the application of a general principle (or general rule or law) to a related case. This is sometimes called the "subsumption of a particular case under a general law." This is the meaning of the rule that at least one premise of a valid syllogism must be universal.

This necessity has been denied by certain writers, of whom Mill may be taken as representative. He says: "All inference is from particulars to particulars: general propositions are merely registers of such inferences already made, and short formulae for making more: the major premise of a syllogism, consequently, is a formula of this description: and the conclusion is not an inference drawn *from* the formula, but an inference drawn *according to* the formula: the real logical antecedent, or premise, being the particular facts from which the general proposition was collected by induction."[1] To which he adds in a later passage that the "universal type of the reasoning process" is "resolvable in all cases into the following elements: Certain individuals have a given attribute; an individual or individuals resemble the former in certain other attributes; therefore they resemble them also in the given attribute."[2]

We frequently do reason by analogy from our experience of particulars to another particular instance, and such reasoning is fairly described in the last sentence quoted above from Mill, though we must demur to the claim that it is the "universal type of the reasoning process." Such arguments, when they are valid, really rest on an implicit universal, that is, on the presence in all the cases of a common factor It is not from the concrete case as a particular that the conclusion is drawn, but only from this common factor which relates that case to the new one And such a common bond is what is meant by a universal Similarity implies such identity amid some diversity. When we conclude from one case to other cases similar to it, it is the common factor, not the difference, which carries our thought from the one to the other

---

[1] *Logic*, Book II., Ch. iii., § 4.

[2] *Ibid.*, § 7.

This is evident upon a careful examination of an example Mill himself gives " It is not only the village matron, who, when called to a consultation upon the case of a neighbour's child, pronounces on the evil and its remedy simply on the recollection and authority of what she accounts the similar case of her Lucy "[1] But why does she account it " a similar case " ? Is it not because she regards the symptoms observed in both cases as marks of the presence of one and the same disease ? But if so, she is reasoning, not from her Lucy as an individual but, from the universal connection between a certain disease and the symptoms Lucy exhibited in her sickness, and thence she infers that the remedies which proved efficacious in that case will prove equally beneficial. And she will be ready if need arises to make this inference, not only in this new case of the neighbour s child but, in all similar cases which may be brought under her notice Though, then, she may never have formulated her belief in a generalised statement, yet she thinks it implicitly as a universal, and shows her thought by her readiness to act

Thus even in cases where the inference at first sight seems to be founded on one or more particular experiences, it is really based on the recognition of the universal element in which they agree, and this may be expressed in a general proposition which forms the major premise of a syllogism.

2. Validity of Syllogistic Reasoning.—Not only has the syllogistic process been asserted to be valueless, but its very validity has been frequently denied, on the ground that it involves the fallacy of *petitio principii* Strictly speaking, this should mean that the conclusion of every syllogism is itself assumed as one of the premises, but more loosely, it is held to imply that the premises presuppose the truth of the conclusion, and cannot, therefore, be used to establish it This objection was known to the Greek logicians and has been revived by Mill and others in modern times Their view rests upon a peculiar conception of the nature of the major premise namely that the major premise must result from a complete testing of every instance which can come under it, and that, therefore, to deduce an individual fact from a general principle is to argue in a circle

---

[1] *Ibid*, § 3

If a universal proposition were a mere 'universal of fact,' or summary of examined particulars,—in other words, if it were the result of *counting*,—the cogency of this objection to the syllogism could not be denied But in our examination of the universal proposition we saw that this was not so, and that the ground for such a judgment is not a complete counting but an analysis of content which establishes a necessary connection of attributes The truth of such a proposition is recognised, and even held to be necessary, before the totality of instances which come under it have been examined, or are, indeed, known

For instance, the laws of Kepler are syllogistically applied to all newly discovered planets and satellites without a doubt of the accuracy of the conclusion Similarly, the universal validity of the law of gravitation was held to be so certain, that when the observed orbit of the planet Uranus appeared to violate it, the existence of a disturbing cause was inferred—an inference which led to the discovery of the planet Neptune.

Again, a syllogistic inference requires the combination of both premises, but the objection we are considering involves the tacit assumption that the minor is unnecessary If, when you have admitted the major premise, you have asserted the conclusion, the minor premise is superfluous But the necessity of the minor premise is granted, and this necessity is a proof that such an inference is not a *petitio principii*

Mill's opinion concerning the charge of *petitio principii* brought against the syllogism is worthy of special consideration This opinion has been differently interpreted by different logicians, owing to the lack of precision in the chapter which Mill devotes to the subject Dr W E Johnson's interpretation exempts Mill from agreement with those who make the charge, and, at the same time, throws light upon the real nature of syllogistic reasoning, hence it is adopted here.

According to Dr W E Johnson the validity of all reasoning depends upon two sets of conditions, namely, (*a*) those concerned with what is thought about, and these are factors independent of us, (*b*) those concerned with what we may happen to know, which is a factor varying from time to time as our knowledge increases The former are called *constitutive* conditions, the latter *epistemic* conditions The charge of *petitio principii* is concerned with epistemic conditions, for it refers to our knowledge, since it implies that what we profess to prove is already known by us Hence, if the syllogism is to be freed from this charge the premises must not rest upon our knowledge of the conclusion, they must have been established independently of that knowledge

Mill actually showed that this could be the case, for in examining the typical syllogism, *All men are mortal, Socrates is a man, therefore Socrates is mortal*, he replaced the minor by *The Duke of Wellington is a man* The first Duke of Wellington was then living, hence no knowledge of his mortality could have been used in establishing the major *All men are mortal*

We see, therefore, that if the major can be established without including the conclusion syllogistic reasoning is not circular Now the major is a generalisation, and as such it is established by induction Thus if induction is valid Mill maintains that the syllogism is not circular, that is, it is epistemically valid But the validity of induction which is here referred to is *constitutive*, that is to say, the objective grounds upon which its validity depends Hence, as Dr Johnson says, Mill's position is that the epistemic validity of the syllogism depends upon the constitutive validity of induction.

If the syllogism were really open to the charge of *petitio* *principii*, it would, of course, follow that no advance could be made in knowledge by its means But the objection springs, as Mill makes clear, from a too objective view of inference, from neglecting to remember the difference between what *is* in the facts of the external world, that is, the constitutive conditions, and what *we know to be* in them, that is, the epistemic conditions Inference cannot, of course, give us more than already exists in the world, but it may help us to see and understand more It is, indeed, our imperfect knowledge which makes inference of new truths possible. Were our knowledge complete, all truths would lie open before us, and such inference would be both unnecessary and impossible For the truth of the conclusion is, in fact, concomitant with that of the premises from which we deduce it, it does not succeed them, though our perception of it may follow our perception of them

For, though the objectors to the syllogism deny the fact, it is certainly possible to accept the premises without deducing the conclusion The shortness of the syllogistic process, and the triteness of the examples of it commonly given, disguise this possibility, and give plausibility to the assertion that no advance in knowledge is really made by syllogism

But, because, as statements of fact, the premises imply the conclusion, it by no means follows that " in studying how to draw the conclusion, we [are] studying to know what we knew before All the propositions of pure geometry, which multiply so fast that it is only a small and isolated class even among mathematicians who know all that has been done in that science, are certainly contained in, that is necessarily deducible from, a very few simple notions But *to be known from* these premises is very different from being *known with* them.

" Another form of the assertion is that consequences are *virtually* contained in the premises, or (I suppose) *as good as* contained in the premises Persons not spoiled by sophistry will smile when they are told that knowing two straight lines cannot enclose a space, the whole is greater than its part, etc —they as good as know that the three intersections of opposite sides of a hexagon inscribed in a circle must be in the same straight line. Many of my readers will learn this now for the first time, it will comfort them much to be assured, on many high authorities, that they virtually knew it ever since their childhood They can now ponder upon the distinction, as to the state of their own minds, between virtual knowledge and absolute ignorance "[1]

But this consideration is not to the point, since it neglects the distinction between epistemic and constitutive conditions of inference If inference is valid the premises must constitutively imply the conclusion, but we must not know the conclusion The implication exists whether we know the conclusion or not, so that there is always the possibility of inference, but if the inference is genuine we must not know the conclusion until we have deduced it from the premises The conclusions of geometry do not cease to be implications of the mathematical axioms and definitions when the process of reasoning by which they are reached is understood and remembered, but they are inferences only when we start without knowledge of them and come to that knowledge by deducing them

Syllogistic inference is, then, genuine inference, if, as Mill indicated, the major premise is established independently of knowledge of the conclusion, and if it, together with the minor, implies the conclusion

We may then sum up our answer to the change of *petitio principii* brought against the syllogism under four heads—syllogistic inference, as all inference, depends on both constitutive and epistemic conditions, the constitutive condition of valid syllogistic inference is that the major together with the minor should imply the conclusion, the epistemic condition of valid syllogistic inference is that we should know the premises without knowing the conclusion, and this is possible because of the nature of the major premise, which is not a mere summation of instances containing among them the conclusion, but is a generalisation which has been established by the constitutively valid process of induction, lastly, the change of *petitio principii* is relevant to epistemic conditions only, and these, as we have shown, can be satisfied.

---

[1] De Morgan, *Formal Logic*, pp 44-5

3. Limitations of Syllogistic Reasoning.—Having shown the validity and value of the syllogism, we have now to enquire whether it is the *only* type of valid mediate inference. This has been strongly asserted by many logicians.

In opposition to these claims it has been pointed out that the syllogism deals only with propositions which express the relation of subject and attribute, and that inferences from other relations, though they may be perfectly valid, not only are not made syllogistically, but cannot be satisfactorily expressed in that form. Such, for example, is the *argumentum à fortiori*—*A is greater than B, B is greater than C, therefore, A is greater than C.* Various attempts have been made to express such arguments syllogistically. For example:

> "*Whatever is greater than a greater than C is greater than C,*
> *A is greater than a greater than C,*
> *Therefore, A is greater than C.*"

But the whole argument is really assumed in the major premise, and the inference is, therefore, invalidated by a *petitio principii*; moreover, *B* does not appear in the premises, which cannot, therefore, express the whole argument. The essential reason why such arguments are "non-syllogistic" is that they do not involve a middle term in the sense in which the middle term is defined in the Rules of the Syllogism. Hence they were formerly called 'irregular" arguments,—a description which is false and absurd.

If, then, account is to be taken of all valid inferences, we must define relations which, like *greater than* in this *à fortiori* argument, justify non-syllogistic reasoning. Traditional logicians overlooked the importance of relations, hence it is not until comparatively recent times that the properties of different kinds of relations have been examined. We are now in a position to see the logical importance of the classification of relations of which an outline was given above (Ch. III., § 8, p. 35).

The kinds of relation which are of fundamental logical importance as defined above, are (1) *transitive* and *intransitive*, (2) *symmetrical* and *asymmetrical*

A symmetrical relation, being one which "works both ways," warrants an inference which resembles the traditional *immediate* inference by "simple" conversion· "If some S is P, then some P is S", "If A is equal to B (in some definite respect), then B is equal to A (in that same respect)"; "If A is the brother, or sister, of B, then B is the brother, or sister, of A", "If P is different from Q (in some definite respect) then Q is different from P (in that same respect)"; etc Such examples are *relational* inferences On the other hand, asymmetrical relations warrant no such immediate inference "A is the father of B," etc

Transitive relations warrant non-syllogistic *mediate* relational inferences (*i e* those with a middle term which does not come under the syllogistic rules) The premises may be expressed hypothetically or categorically, but the conclusion is categorical "A is greater than B (in some definite respect), and B is greater than C (in that same respect), therefore A is greater than C (in that same respect)" Here the relations in both premises are *asymmetrical* and *transitive*, but the validity of the inference depends on its "transitivity" Valid relational inferences can be based on such relations as "equal to," "contemporary with," etc These are *symmetrical*, but, again, the validity of the inference depends on its "transitivity"

On the other hand, non-transitive and intransitive relations do not justify an inference "A is different from B, B is different from C, therefore A is different from C" (invalid, although the relations in both premises are *symmetrical*)

We must add that another important classification of relations may be based on the number of terms to which a given term may stand in a given relation For example· (i) If A is the *father* of B, there may be others than B to which A stands in the same relation (ii) If A is the *twin* of B, there is no other to which A stands in the same relation. (iii) If A is the *servant* of B, there may be others than A which stand in the same relation to B (iv) If A *loves* B, there may be others than *A* which stand in that relation to *B*, and others than *B* to which *A* stands in that relation.

We have therefore the following classification --

(i) A *one-many* relation is a relation which one term may hold to many other terms When *A* holds such a relation to *B*, we can substitute one or more other terms for *B* without altering the truth of the assertion " *A* is the centre of the circle *PQR* ", and *A* may also be the centre of an infinite number of circles

(ii) A *one-one* relation is a relation such that if *A* holds it to *B* then *A* cannot hold it to any other term For example, *counting* is a process of establishing a " one-one " relation between a set of objects and one of the series of numerals

(iii) A *many-one* relation is a relation such that if *A* holds it to *B* there may be other terms than *A* which also hold it to *B* The fact that the major premise of a " mixed " hypothetical syllogism may, and usually does, state a " many-one " relation is the ground of the rule forbidding inference from the " denial of the antecedent " and from the "affirmation of the consequent "

(iv) A *many-many* relation is a relation such that if *A* holds it to *B*, there may be other terms than *A* which also hold it to *B*, and other terms than *B* to which *A* may hold it " Longitude ten degrees West " is a " many-many " relation, since there are many objects on this meridian, and different meridians from which the measurement may be made (Greenwich, Paris, etc)[1]

It is clear that the existence of types of deductive reasoning other than syllogistic does not mean that the syllogism is to be rejected, but only that it is to be restricted to its proper sphere The validity of a relational argument depends on a common term, but that common term is not a Middle Term in the sense defined in the Rules of the Syllogism. Relational arguments are *deductive* because each type of such arguments depends on a general principle implied in its logical structure, just as the first figure of the syllogism depends on the *dictum de omni et de nullo* [1]

---

[1] For further information and guidance on the subject of the foregoing section, see Stebbing, *A Modern Introduction to Logic*, second edition, Ch vii , § 5, and Ch x , § 2

---

[1] See Bradley, *Principles of Logic*, second edition Vol II, pp 264-266

CHAPTER XXI.

GENERAL METHOD OF KNOWLEDGE.

1. Nature of Logical Method.—The aim of thought is to reach exact knowledge Such knowledge is a branch of science, no matter with what material it is concerned, and the thought which deals with it is scientific thought

The popular restriction of the words "science" and "scientific" to knowledge of the material universe has no logical meaning It is true that in some such departments of knowledge greater precision and certainty have been reached than in those which deal with human affairs, either in the present or in the past That is because the material is more amenable to manipulation and more uniform in its nature than are the motives and, consequently, the actions of men But whether we deal with external nature or with the deeds of men in history, politics, economics, ethics, or any other aspect of human activity, the aim is always to reach *systematic* knowledge, in other words, the aim is the establishment of science, and the means adopted are scientific in intention and in conception, even though they cannot be employed with as much care, certainty, and exactness as in physics or in chemistry

In whatever department of knowledge the scientific investigator is working, much sad experience proves that he is liable to error. His conclusions may be true or may be false, or they may be a mixture of truth and falsity What standard is there by which to test whether the results reached are trustworthy? As the very ultimate postulate of thought is that the truth cannot contradict itself, it is evident that consistency both with what is already known and with what may in the future be established is the only conceivable test. If as knowledge in that sphere advances such agreement continues to hold, the conclusions reached may be regarded as practically established If it fails to hold, those conclusions must be either rejected or modified

In every form of human activity success depends partly on the insight of genius and partly on skill acquired by long and patient practice But skill means that the activity, be it bodily or be it mental, has gradually discovered the best way—or method—of setting to work That there is a skill in discovery and in thinking and that that skill is the outcome of practice becoming more and more effective, rejecting the needless and discerning with increasing certainty the pertinent, is evidenced by the notorious fact that it takes a long apprenticeship to make a successful worker in any department of knowledge The question for logic is whether this skill has features common to all its applications to this or that sphere of thought

Here logic has evidently to wait on the sciences In the actual work of the study and the laboratory some methods have proved successful and have consequently been refined and extended others have issued in failure and have needed modification if not rejection As science advances it improves its methods, and, it may be, modifies the conceptions which guide them Such adaptation, in so far as it touches the common features of which we have spoken, must be recognised and accepted by logic In other words, the establishment of the logic of method is itself a scientific work which uses as its material the special methods of the various sciences which deal directly with the facts of the world But with the special features of these methods logic has no direct concern. Most certainly it makes no claim to dictate them, and most certainly also it did not— and could not originate them

2 **System** —The conception of a " system " is one which we have frequently employed A system is a whole in which every part has a definite relation of *dependence* upon every other, and all these relations of dependence show an orderly plan. In other words, a " system " is an arranged or planned

order of mutual *dependence* When we describe the "order" as "arranged" or "planned," we are not saying anything of its source or origin, but only of its character The parts depend upon one another and upon the whole, and the whole depends upon the parts. There is an essential thread of relation binding each to each and all together Imagine a heap of bricks. It forms a whole in which the bricks are the separate parts, but the position of each in reference to the others is a matter of indifference A heap is not a system But imagine the bricks arranged as a wall or an arch here there is a planned order of mutual dependence among the parts. A machine is a system of a more complex order, displace a lever, unscrew a bolt, re-distribute the parts, and the machine as a machine ceases to exist The body of a living creature is a system of a still more complex order.

If we suppose, then, some knowledge of a system, the possibility of inference is at once apparent For given the truth about any part we can pass to the truth of some other part through the relations of dependence in which it stands to the whole it helps to constitute

Thus consider the case of a workman who in the course of excavation turns up a human jaw-bone He may not recognise it as such, or if he does, he regards it curiously, and casts it away He has no useful system into which the fact will fit, and so receive a fuller meaning But the geologist with the same preliminary data can commence a process of thought by which he constructs mentally the conditions of life that must have prevailed during the time when the human being of whom this sole relic remains was still alive He determines, perhaps, that it must have been preserved from pre-historic times The anatomist, too, from the size and shape of the bone can tell a great deal about the physical frame with which alone it would have been consistent He may, perhaps, show that only muscles of much greater strength than is common to-day could have moved it

In some such way a number of inferences impossible to the workman might be drawn by the man of science because he possesses a knowledge of the systems appropriate to the fact to be interpreted But he, too, would have failed to make an inference if he had not had a system of interrelated truths enabling him to pass from what was given and recognised as a part of the system, to its meaning in the light of the whole.

The extent of possible inference will coincide with our knowledge of the system within which our thought is working for the time being The citizen knows enough of the tramway system of his city to be able to decide what car he must catch, and where, in order to get to any place within a specified time But beyond that, and indeed often within those limits, his thought is apt to be vague Ask him what power is needed to move the cars, how it is generated and distributed, what inclines can be safely attempted and why, and he is soon at the end of his tether Not so with the electrical engineer, whose knowledge of the system goes deeper, and whose capacity, therefore, to answer questions that arise is greater If it is proposed to introduce a new type of car, he can tell in his study what conditions it must fulfil to be safe , or if any extension of the service is contemplated, he can work out from the data which a preliminary survey supplies, what alteration of his source of supply will meet the new demand Both citizen and engineer infer , but the wider scope of the one is the result of a wider acquaintance with the relations subsisting between the various parts of the system

It is evident, then, that within the one ideal system of perfect knowledge there are many actual smaller systems which are known with more or less completeness Of these the most important are those which serve a scientific purpose. A minor system which satisfies a practical need, such as that represented in a railway time-table, may be known through and through, but that is never the case where the governing aim is a knowledge of reality The power to infer breaks down at some point or other , the engineer, for example, cannot answer every question Where that is so a problem arises for solution. Now, however, the solution is reached, whether by a process of analysis or synthesis, or by both, it presents itself as a claim to form part of a system The claim is established when the system as it stands, or if need be as reorganised, incorporates it in such a way as to make a chain of inference more complete, it is disallowed when it is found to be repugnant to existing systems and to suggest no modification of them in which it would find a consistent and necessary place

All advance in knowledge is made by the perfecting of systems through inference, whether in the way of completing their internal organisation, or in establishing connections between them which bring us nearer to the ideal system of perfect knowledge.

3 **Analysis and Synthesis** —Knowledge progresses in systematic character by the processes of analysis and synthesis These terms are abstract names of processes which must be distinguished but which never occur in entire independence of each other in the progress of knowledge

In every science the investigator has certain data before him which must be analysed and brought into relations with other facts Thus the physical sciences present us with particular objects and phenomena which demand from the enquiring mind an explanation They suggest problems for solution, but the principles on which the solution depends are not apparent on the surface. Indeed " between these principles and the facts under consideration the distance is often immense To pretend to traverse it at a stride, as Descartes says on the subject of method in general, is to wish to rise to the summit of a tower while neglecting the ladder intended for the purpose "[1] That ladder is analysis We seek by careful observation, and where possible experiment, to detach what is permanent and essential from what is variable and accidental The connections so discovered are formulated as a law or principle, and further investigation is directed to establishing the dependence of this law on others expressing relations of wider and yet wider generality

But the process is one of great practical difficulty, and rarely is it immediately evident what principle expresses the relations which an examination of the facts suggests Various possible principles may seem to offer a solution, and frequently the only way to decide between them is to assume one of them to be true, to draw out the consequences which follow from it, and to compare the results with the facts But to argue from principles to consequences is a process of synthesis, and thus one of the most important uses of synthesis is to eke out the deficiencies of analysis The two together have made many discoveries possible which neither could have achieved alone

---

[1] Rabier, *Logique*, p 298

It is necessary to distinguish carefully between analysis and synthesis as methods by which knowledge is acquired, and physical processes which are sometimes called by the same names Doubtless the former may be aided by the latter The task of unravelling the sensible complex of nature includes the separation of the simple elements which compose it; and the success of such separation is evidenced by the possibility of reconstructing the original complex by a combination of the elements It would be better to name such physical operations—of which chemistry offers the most obvious examples—Decomposition and Composition, and to restrict Analysis and Synthesis to the processes of thought. When decomposition and composition are possible they simply express in matter what has already been planned in thought. And in many cases thought deals with elements which cannot be physically separated, and combines them in relations which are never perfectly realised in fact, as, for instance, those stated by the primary laws of physical motion

Again, a physical whole may be actually divided into parts related in space to each other, as, for instance, England into counties Such physical partition has no relation to the analysis of thought The division is arbitrary, and a knowledge of the parts as related does not increase our understanding of the whole To enumerate the counties of England is not an act of thought, but merely a series of acts of perception It is the analytic and synthetic processes of thought with which logic is concerned, and if any physical processes are initiated, they are initiated as auxiliary to the processes of thought.

Analysis and synthesis increase understanding, that is they are methods of explanation This proves that the composition and decomposition of substances in chemistry are not instances of them. These do not give the *reasons* for the combinations and separations of elements which are effected Why should the mixture in a certain proportion of two gases with such diverse properties as oxygen and hydrogen produce, when an electric spark is passed through them, a substance so different from each of them as water? A true synthesis would enable us to pass from the properties of the elements to those of the compound as their necessary resultant "We do not suppose a mysterious force entering on the scene and taking possession of the oxide of hydrogen as soon as it is formed. We live, on the contrary, with the hope and confidence that some day, thanks to the progress of molecular physics, we shall be able to pass from the constituents of water to the properties of water itself as easily as we to-day deduce the workings of a watch from the form of the parts and the manner in which they are arranged"[1]

This brings out the point It is not the merely spatial arrangement of the parts of a watch, but the understanding of that arrangement which enables one to deduce the working. In other words, it is the analytic thought which makes possible the synthetic thought which sees the watch as a system, and not as a mere collection of fragments of metal This shows how analytic and synthetic thinking work together

We may distinguish further between full scientific analysis and a preliminary division of the matter under consideration into manageable portions Yet this division will mislead us unless it is based on something more than convenience. To be fruitful it must express a true theory of the relations of the parts Take as an example the broad and apparent distinction between body and mind, and consider how much both the biological and the mental sciences have suffered from their too rapid separation

Analysis, then, is the method by which discovery most naturally starts when it is concerned with concrete reality As the scientist proceeds with his investigations he synthesises his results with others in his own subject, and, where possible, with those of other subjects.

---

[1] Huxley, *cit* Rabier, *Logique*, p 313, *footnote* Cf the whole chapter, pp 293-316

Abstractly, then, analysis and synthesis stand contrasted, but in the actual process of knowledge they are not held apart. The progress of knowledge is gradual, and at every step a synthesis of the results attained is the sure basis of further advance *In no science is the one method used to the exclusion of the other, though in some sciences synthesis plays the more important part, while in others analysis does so*

The relative part played by these two processes is determined by four factors, to one of which we have already referred, namely, to the stage reached by a science These factors may be considered in turn

(*a*) In the initial stages of a science analysis plays a more important part than synthesis, as the science advances synthesis plays an increasingly important part But, throughout, both processes are present, whenever a great and wide-reaching general principle is suggested the work in that science becomes at once synthetic and analytic

The truth of the principle being hypothetically assumed, its results are worked out deductively, and so is reached a synthetic exposition of the system as it would be were the assumption true But at the same time, and at every step, analytic enquiry into pertinent facts is pursued, guided, of course, by the hypothesis, yet not blinded by partiality for it so as to misread the facts The aim of the analysis is not to establish the hypothesis, but first to test it Its result may be modification or even rejection In any case the synthesis, after it has taken up into itself the results of the analytic work, must be a very different thing—fuller, more clearly conceived, more exactly constructed—than was the preliminary synthesis Moreover, it has passed from being merely a construction of possibilities to being a representation of reality Such combined analytic and synthetic work goes on for years—even for centuries—and at every stage those two crutches of human thought in its slow march towards the truth are indispensable.

(*b*) The subject-matter of the different sciences largely determines whether the method of a given science be mainly synthetic or analytic. Where the subject-matter is highly abstract, the relations formal, and our knowledge comprehensive and thorough, synthesis plays a much more important part than analysis These conditions exist in mathematics and the mathematical sciences Starting from certain axioms, definitions, and postulates, with regard to number and space, a closely connected system of truth is developed which in its most complex particulars is ultimately derived from those fundamental assumptions

The distinction between pure and applied mathematics is relevant here, for while the method of the former could, theoretically, be purely synthetic, that of the latter is bound to be partially analytic, since the latter is concerned with concrete phenomena But even the former may involve analysis. When, for example, a theorem is proposed to a geometrician, he may assume the theorem to be true and work backwards to the conditions which must be fulfilled if the truth of the theorem is to be established If in the course of this regress he arrives at a condition which is realised in the particular case under consideration, he regards the theorem as demonstrated If it be a problem instead of a theorem, he seeks for conditions which can be realised and then effects the construction desired

As the subject-matter of a science is less capable of quantitative expression that is to say, as it becomes less abstract, so must analysis rather than synthesis play the greater part in its method Thus in the sciences dealing with concrete phenomena, such as chemistry, biology, and psychology, analysis plays a more important part than synthesis The psychologist has made considerable progress in analysing the functions of consciousness, in describing, for instance, the nature of attention, feeling, and so forth, but the synthesis which shows these functions as the necessary correlatives of the nature of consciousness is yet to seek So also the biologist has much to tell of the functions of life as revealed to careful analytical enquiry, but cannot explain how they are synthesised in the different forms of life in the organic world And the reason is that the analysis is not yet complete : the greater the imperfection of knowledge, the more partial will be the syntheses which are feasible

(c) Scientific thought has two main objects— to *reach* truth and to *expound* it. We shall find that *exposition* is mainly synthetic. In the case of exposition the whole system pertinent to the matter in hand is known, and the task is to set it forth as clearly and accurately as possible. Thought arranges the parts in their ascertained relations to each other in a known and understood system. The whole arrangement can be made orderly and correctly proportioned, just because the whole is known through and through. This, for example, is what is done in a good 'summing-up' by the judge of a case in the law-courts Such a method is synthetic because it puts together the elements of a whole in an orderly manner determined by the nature of that whole We have seen that in the case of discovery as contrasted with exposition, analysis plays the more important part

(*d*) There is yet one other fact which determines the parts played in scientific investigations by analysis and synthesis, this is what we may call the "inspiration" of the scientist Men differ in the sagacity they display in seizing on the relevance of facts and in discerning the right kind of relation. The search for the universal which explains is easier to the genius of one man than to that of another "Darwin was noted for his keenness in detecting connections which escape the ordinary eye, as well as for his skill in giving explanations of them On one occasion, he observed that in that part of the country where he lived, clover was abundant in the fields which were situated near villages, while the outlying fields were almost destitute of it What now, he asked himself, is the connecting link between these facts? Some investigation of the matter convinced him that the three agencies which produced this result were humble-bees, mice, and cats The bees fertilise the clover flowers, and thus make the plant abundant, the field mice destroy the bees' nests, but the cats go out from the villages into the fields near by, and destroy the mice"[1]

But the classic instance is, perhaps, that of James Clerk Maxwell, whose genius enabled him to predict the synthesis between the science of optics and that of electro-dynamics Such genius achieves what might have required many years of patient analytic work It must not, however, be supposed that the scientific genius has dispensed with analysis, for we know that analysis is necesary to such men also, thus, a Newton has to make his observations and analyses, but he is gifted with the insight that pounces upon those crucial relations which alone will enable him to reveal the implicated synthesis

---

[1] Creighton, *An Introductory Logic*, pp 381-2

The existence of the personal factor precludes the laying down of detailed precepts for the conduct of scientific investigations.

4 Inference and Implication—Inference consists in the combination of premises or data, known or accepted as known, thus revealing a conclusion *which is "new" in the sense that it could not be obtained from any of the premises or data taken separately but only from the combination of them* This is evidently illustrated in the comparatively simple case of a valid syllogism, but it holds throughout every field of systematic knowledge Consequently inference is a constant and essential characteristic of the operations of thought by which systematic knowledge is developed

The challenge of the truth of a proposition may arise from the practical needs of life or from the ideal of demonstration which science sets before itself In any case it can only be met by developing the proposition either in the direction of the reasons which support it or in that of the consequences which flow from it At every step both reasons and consequences may be true or false, and the evidence for them must be examined until data are reached which are undisputed. The chain of reasoning will be complete when the proposition is seen to follow necessarily through all the intermediate steps from those facts or principles which are beyond question The proposition is then said to be proved, and the process of inference is complete

As we have seen[1] in considering Mill s change of *petitio principii* brought against the syllogism, the validity of inference has a two-fold basis, it is both epistemic and constructive. This does not imply that we cannot make inferences about what is known to us Obviously we may seek reasons for a fact which is familiar, though we may never have been conscious of the grounds which constrain us to accept it as it is For example, we may seek the meteorological conditions on which the coldness of the east wind depends But when we reach the conclusion, '*therefore*, the east wind is cold,' though we know the fact now in a new way, and see its relation to facts hitherto not known or disregarded in this connection, it is not merely the novelty of the relation but this together with its cogency which constitutes the inference Indeed, the whole series of premises might be as well known as the conclusion to start with, and the logical character of the process would remain the same For it consists essentially in the exhibition of the necessary dependence of the facts on one another

---

[1] See p 218

It is not correct, therefore, and it is to confuse logic with psychology, to regard "novelty" as the one criterion of valid inference. We have rather to insist upon the necessary reference to both the epistemic and constitutive conditions Inference is therefore distinct from *implication* which is a relation between premises and conclusion holding independently of the knowledge of individuals, while inference necessarily involves reference to the knowledge of particular individuals

The problem then arises, how there can be, from known truths as premises, the assertion of another truth distinct from them, and yet owing its assertion to them If we affirm that "Flowers are transient" and that "Sables are expensive," and try to link the two facts together our thought is baffled. As we say, we cannot see the connection between them But suppose that instead of the first fact we have the statement that "All expensive things have a limited sale" our thought at once goes forward to the assertion that "Sables have a limited sale," because of the common quality of expensiveness Now this quality is a universal that is, it is common to both propositions. And, unless there is to be the abrupt arrest of thought experienced, for instance, in the attempt to draw an inference from the transiency of flowers and the expensiveness of sables, we must find some universal through which the facts are connected

Only through the existence of such universals is inference possible at all If one fact had nothing in common with another we could never seek a reason for it outside itself. Each would be presented to the mind in complete isolation, and organised knowledge would not exist. Hence science resolves itself into a search for universals, and in proportion as these are discovered, the inter-relation of fact with fact becomes more evident, and a firm basis for inference is secured

5 Relations between Deduction and Induction —Reasoning, we have seen, consists in arranging our *data* in some kind of system In deductive reasoning we start knowing what the nature of the system is, and we find a place for some fact as a detail within the system In inductive reasoning, on the other hand, we seek to organise into a systematic whole facts which, as they are given to us, appear to be isolated, fragmentary, and discrepant

The distinction between synthesis and analysis corresponds broadly to that between deductive and inductive inference. So as analysis and synthesis mutually co-operate, and to some extent each implies the other, we must take care not to oppose deduction and induction to each other as though they were independent modes of thought. They differ in their starting-points, and in their modes of advance

All thought takes place within some system which it seeks to explain, whether it be the system of reality as a whole or some more restricted province of thought, as one of the particular sciences The process of thought will aim at defining more clearly those relations holding between the parts of the system in virtue of which it is an organic unity At any given moment the organisation of the system will be more or less complete. So far as it is complete we have a number of propositions expressing relations holding universally within the system, and so far as it is incomplete we have a number of particulars awaiting explanation through the universals which they express To exhibit these particulars as inter-related parts of the whole we may proceed to develop the imperfect organisation in either of two ways

Suppose the universal to serve as the starting-point of explanation In that case it is applied to the particulars which come under it, and thus we arrive at a fuller knowledge of the system For example, our universal may be the law of gravitation, and we may apply it to the case of a bullet shot from a gun in a given direction with a given velocity, and thus determine the path which the projectile must necessarily take. Such a process is deductive and synthetic and on its formal side is examined in the theory of the syllogism

On the other hand we may start with the unexplained particulars and try to read them off as members of the system. This can only be accomplished by finding the universal relations which bind them together Thus the conjunction of the south-west monsoon with heavy rain is shown after a careful examination of the particulars involved to depend mainly on the general laws which govern the action of heat on the sea and atmosphere Such a procedure is called inductive, and the examination of the facts involved is that which we have already described as analysis. It is an insight into the nature of the whole or system based upon a careful examination of the parts

But Induction is commonly used to cover the whole of scientific method by which we seek to go from particular facts to general law, and it is, therefore, a wider term than analysis. For, as we shall see more fully later, the inductive method is based on deductive principles throughout All methods of experimental enquiry involve deduction, and whenever in the course of the enquiry observation suggests a hypothesis to explain the facts, the results of the hypothesis are unfolded in deductive form. In short, we may repeat all that has been said on synthesis as supplementing analysis as applying to the relation between induction and deduction

Nevertheless, there is a distinction of aspect between induction and deduction In induction reality presents itself in concrete and particular isolated instances, and the task of inference is to discern the universal which is more or less hidden in those instances To this universal a clue is sought, while in deduction, on the other hand, the universal is given

In the one case we are seeking some bond of connection ; in the other, we are given the connection and seek to know what is bound together by it Thus in deduction reality first presents itself in its universal aspect, and inference traces that universal through the differing and complex instances in which it manifests itself, while in induction the direction of the whole process is reversed

6 Systematic Investigation —Whether systematic investigation, as an orderly or " methodical " process of thinking, be analytic or synthetic it is always controlled throughout by purpose The general purpose of all science is to reach truth. But this is, of course, too vague to be a practical guide in actual thought

There are first the wide aims which separate one ' science ' from another, and which lay down broadly the limits within which thought in any one process confines itself This division into departments of investigation is a sign of progress, and each department of systematic investigation—for example, mathematics, chemistry history—develops its own distinctive *methods.* It is only in this way that considerations which are not relevant to the particular aspect of reality under examination can be safely ignored Further, in each separate investigation in a single science there is some distinct purpose which guides and controls it Unless this is clearly apprehended thought is likely to stray upon the way—to include what is not pertinent, to neglect that which is, to fail to see the relative importance of the elements considered

Thus the possibility both of orderly arrangement and of correct estimation of the relative importance of the elements involved depends upon a clear conception of the end the enquiry is meant to attain. When the aim of the investigation is to reach new knowledge and not simply to convey knowledge new to another though familiar to the expounder, the nature and general character of the end to be obtained must be clearly apprehended at the outset, and kept in view throughout the process Now the " end to be obtained " here means the *class of problems to be solved or the kind of questions to be answered.* Every step must be a progressive filling out and determination of this end till at length the problem is solved No learner or enquirer can make true and regular progress by groping in the dark Attention must be concentrated and kept to the point, ready to see the relevance or irrelevance of each new consideration, and to dwell on it or reject it accordingly. And relevance to the end can only be estimated when the nature of the end, the questions or problems at issue, is with more or less exactness known Thus the first rule of method is *to make the purpose clear*

The questions and problems which give the purpose always grow out of what is already known Every advance in knowledge throws a search-light on ignorance still ahead Unless we are clear as to what we *do* know, as well as to what we want to discover or to prove, we again cannot proceed in confidence or in the most advantageous way Thus a second rule of method is *to make sure of the starting-point*

If we begin, as in the case of mathematics, with principles and proceed to develop their consequences it will be incumbent on us to accept only those principles which have been already demonstrated, or which are too fundamental to need demonstration, or, indeed, to admit of it But if our investigation lies within the sphere of the sciences which are concerned with the interpretation of material facts, the first thing to do will be to secure that the facts have been rightly and completely apprehended Unless this is done there will be no guarantee that the superstructure of knowledge built on them as foundation will have any stability

Now the method used in ascertaining the facts is primarily that of observation Nothing is more common, as we shall see, than to find observation at fault It is therefore important to determine its exact nature and to indicate how it must be conducted in order to avoid error The importance of observation is evident when we remember that it is the means of acquiring that sense experience on which all our knowledge is based.

But the direct range of observation is small, and even where conditions can be repeated at will, as in experiment, the facts are so multitudinous that no one man can verify them all. Moreover, in many cases, as, for example, in history, direct contact with the facts is impossible Therefore, no matter what the department of knowledge may be, the scientific investigator is dependent to a very considerable extent on the testimony of others This testimony will reach him in many different ways, and will be of diverse kinds. Not only will its transmission often enhance the possibility of error, but its value as a record of actual observation will vary from absolute untrustworthiness to the highest credence. Logical method must, therefore, indicate on what grounds testimony is worthy of acceptance or rejection

When the facts have been determined the more intricate task remains of interpretation and explanation For only in this way can the facts be shown to constitute in their universal relations an orderly system for thought The constitution of such a system is effected by a process of reasoning which passes beyond the immediate data of sense, and traces out the laws which the phenomena exemplify The process is carried further by showing the connection of the laws amongst themselves, their application in new spheres, and where possible their dependence on laws more universal still A start is made from certain facts, and from the propositions referring to these facts the mental construction of an organised body of knowledge proceeds by the derivation of other propositions In this process it is essential to advance cautiously and step by step, making sure of each before passing on to the next As Locke put it—

"General observations drawn from particulars are the jewels of knowledge, comprehending great store in a little room, but they are therefore to be made with the greater care and caution, lest, if we take counterfeit for true, our loss and shame be the greater when our stock comes to a severe scrutiny One or two particulars may suggest hints of enquiry, and they do well who take those hints, but if they turn them into conclusions, and make them presently general rules, they are forward indeed, but it is only to impose on themselves, by propositions assumed without sufficient warrant."[1]

---

[1] Locke, *Conduct of the Understanding*, § 25

The student will observe that in the immediately preceding sections our discussion has led us to consider, in a preliminary way, what is meant by "explanation" in science Further consideration of this most important question will be required in the following pages and, in particular, in our concluding chapter. At this point it is sufficient for the student to remember that to "explain" a fact is to find a place for it within a system, the general nature of which is known or is assumed, while this system itself may require "explanation" by *reference to a more comprehensive system.*

We may add that in the preceding chapter our statements have usually been made in general terms without many detailed examples Examples are most instructive when derived from the student's own knowledge and previous reading The science of Chemistry provides many examples which are not hard to grasp even by the beginner. In Chemistry we may say that the system of reference consists of the various groups of Elements, as a whole, and the laws of their combination by weight or volume

CHAPTER XXII.

SPECIAL METHODS

1. Applications of General Method.—Thought, in its attempt to attain systematic and exact knowledge, always proceeds by analysis of some part of what is given in experience and synthesis of the results of that analysis These are always combined, but, as we have seen, the relative shares of each and the mode of their interaction are partly determined by the nature of the material with which thought deals We may therefore compare three great departments of thought—the mathematical, the physical, and the historical. Not that these are isolated on the contrary, they not only overlap but intertwine.

2. Mathematics.—This science consists of two main branches, the science of number, and the science of geometry Both branches appear to have had an empirical origin. In the case of number we know very little about its origin, while, although we do not know the details of the origin of geometry, we do know that the Egyptians wanted some means of determining their boundaries after the inundations of the Nile, and that in the empirical problem thus presenting itself to them the science of geometry originated The practical means they devised for solving their problem are not known to us, but whatever the exact nature of the empirical origin of the science, mathematics is now the most abstract of the sciences

As the science originated in empirical problems so its concepts originated in what can be sensibly perceived, for instance, shapes, sizes, and distances But the concepts of mathematics are no longer concrete, and are far removed from anything that can be sensibly perceived All of them are highly abstract and have been discerned by the analytic power of the mind that it may deal with precision with those spatial and quantitative characters given in experience

Mathematics is abstract in two senses, the one we have already referred to, namely, the remoteness of its concepts from anything given in experience, in the other sense mathematics is abstract because it is essentially hypothetical, that is to say the systems constructed by mathematicians may have no real counterpart, for instance, only one of the several alternative geometries which are constructed from different sets of axioms can have a counterpart in definite regions of physical space It is therefore clear that the process of passing from the original empirical character of mathematics to its present abstract character has been in two directions, (i) the analysis of its concepts, (ii) the synthetic building of constructions upon selected sets of the analysed concepts

(i) *The Analysis of Concepts* – This work, which is exceedingly difficult, is an attempt to substitute precision for vagueness, and logically primitive concepts for psychologically primitive concepts Psychologically we are first aware of vague spatial and quantitative ideas such as roundness, and largeness, mathematicians substitute for these vague *psychologically* primitive concepts, exact *logically* primitive concepts A concept which is logically primitive is often difficult to comprehend, but they are such that from them, together with a set of primitive propositions, systematic deductions can be made

This work of logical analysis of mathematical ideas was initiated by Frege and Peano and Cantor in the latter part of the last century, and has been subsequently followed up by Professor Whitehead and Mr Russell Frege and Peano examined the concepts involved in quantitative characters, Cantor those in the idea of infinity and continuity, Professor Whitehead and Mr Russell have each pushed the analyses reached by Frege and Peano further back

(ii) *Synthetic Use of Concepts.*—There is, then, always analytic work to be done in mathematics, but it is within the power of those few minds which have mastered all that has been achieved already. The ordinary worker is concerned rather with applying knowledge already established. Either in pure mathematics theoretical consequences are inferred by a continuous train of reasoning, or in applied mathematics relations of quantity are referred to the explanation of physical phenomena or to the construction of physical instruments

In both cases the procedure is essentially synthetic, the derivation of conclusions from premises In the former, deductive systems are constructed, which may or may not, and probably do not, have any physical counterpart Such are the different geometries constructed from different sets of primitive ideas and propositions, in the latter, calculations are made for some explicit practical purpose—to foretell the time of an eclipse, to construct some delicate instrument.

The question as to how that which is essentially so abstract can be used for either purpose is important and difficult. Since it is a philosophical question, it is not a question which the mathematician qua mathematician has to answer. Both Professor Whitehead and Mr Russell have initiated discussions of the problems underlying the question, and both of them are philosophers as well as mathematicians.

(iii) *Symbols* —For several reasons ordinary language would be an exceedingly unsuitable medium of expression for mathematical ideas and propositions In the first place, it can only unambiguously represent a limited number of relational propositions, while mathematics is concerned with a great variety of relational propositions In the second place, it is cumbrous, so that while it would require considerable mental effort to express and comprehend mathematical propositions in ordinary language, symbolically expressed the same propositions are immediately apprehended This is clearly illustrated by Professor Whitehead, who contrasts the symbolic expression "$x + y = y + x$" with the linguistic expression having the same meaning—"If a second number be added to any given number the result is the same as if the first given number had been added to the second number"

Moreover, mathematical calculations could never have been made if mathematicians had had to think at each step of the sense of their symbols The symbolically expressed proposition functions as a *substitute* for the ideas it represents, for the highly abstract character of these ideas renders it exceedingly difficult to think about them, while if they are represented by symbols, which themselves have structural properties identical with those of the ideas, the rules of the symbolism do the thinking Only at certain critical stages do the ablest mathematicians stop to interpret their symbols The symbolism functions as a calculus where perceptible entities can be manipulated according to rules which mirror the structural properties of the propositions expressed by the symbols

There is clearly a danger in such substitutive manipulation, if the meaning of the symbols is entirely neglected the calculations become simply a game having no real interpretation. The question of interpretation is difficult, and cannot be discussed here

(iv) *System* —Method in mathematics shows the elements of analysis and synthesis in, as it were, a skeleton form. All extraneous matter is stripped from relations of quantity, all that would interfere with their perfect operation in the world of things is ignored The result aimed at is a system of relations self-contained, and, within those limits ideally perfect This system is not yet complete Not only is the synthesis of results already achieved not perfect, but there is no reason to suppose that no further mathematical truths remain to be discovered But the process is further advanced than in any other department of knowledge " Mathematical sciences as they develop dovetail into each other, and share the same ideas in common It is not too much to say that the various branches of mathematics undergo a perpetual process of generalisation, and that as they become generalised, they coalesce "[1]

3. Physical Sciences.—Next in order of abstractness to mathematics comes the group of sciences which deal with inorganic nature, the complexity of phenomena is so great here that it can be attacked only in detail So arise the mechanical and chemical sciences. Further, each of these is a general branch of knowledge including divisions and sub-divisions, each dealing with its own sets of facts and problems And as insight into detail increases, the sub-division of investigation becomes ever more minute Analysis is prominent at every stage

---

[1] Whitehead, *An Introduction to Mathematics*, p 116

Yet this division of labour is only a matter of convenience, or at most of necessity, imposed by human limitations of time and capacity Not only does it not affect the unity of the material world, but no true scientific investigator ignores that unity Each science lends its aid to the others Physics and chemistry, for example, are mutually helpful, and each owes many of its greatest achievements to the aid of mathematics Synthesis is operative throughout

The aim of the physical sciences is to understand the inorganic world by bringing its phenomena under far-reaching generalisations It must, therefore, begin with facts of experience, and it must be justified by the power of its generalisations to explain those facts in all their complexity as due to specific combinations of general forces. Its method is, therefore, that process of *induction* which is examined in detail in Chapters XXIV.-XXXIII., and which need not, therefore, be further discussed here Suffice it to say that—whereas in mathematics validity of conclusion depends wholly on accuracy of reasoning from self-evident statements of clearly apprehended relations, so that the task is predominantly one of inference—in physics and chemistry the difficulty of the task is essentially in ascertaining the general relations involved in actual occurrences which are always extremely complex Hence, every such relation is apprehended tentatively It is, in short, at first a guess—or hypothesis—the justification of which must be sought in ever-deepening analysis of the concrete facts with which alone experience furnishes us

Hypothetical synthesis, therefore, interacts with analysis ever pushed more deeply into experience In that analysis physical objects and processes have to be manipulated But, as was pointed out in the general discussion of method, this manipulation is not logical analysis and synthesis Those are modes in which thought works in view of the disentanglement of physical facts which is facilitated by mechanical means.

The further the work advances the more the interconnection of the abstract relations discovered by thought becomes apparent, reference may again be made to the co-ordination brought into physics by James Clerk Maxwell[1] The ideal of physics is to have a similar co-ordination in all its branches. At present this ideal has not been achieved, for dynamics, which once was thought to supply the basis of co-ordination, now has its own difficulties, arising in connection with the discrepancy between classical and quantum dynamics, to settle, while the rivalry between the corpuscular and the wave theories of light persists

4. Natural Sciences.— The view that a mechanical explanation of the organic world is ultimately possible, is held to be unjustifiable by the leading biologists, who maintain that in the organic world a new factor is dominant The doctrine of evolution has profoundly modified the point of view from which the phenomena of living beings must be regarded These are now seen to be products not of mechanical forces impinging on inert matter, but of the reaction of a non-mechanical force on the inorganic environment Analysis of the existent is inadequate by itself to lay bare the course of events Hypothetical assumptions of laws of vital force must be made and tested And in the testing constant appeal must be made to all the evidences of the past which bear on the subject as well as to observation of changes in the forms of life which may be observed or brought about in the present The method is still inductive, but the scope of the inductive inquiry is much widened

At present no certainty has been attained Darwin's theory of natural selection is not generally accepted as more than a preliminary and imperfect hypothesis, and the great question of the inheritance of acquired characteristics is still unsettled The historical systematisation of the facts of organic life is, therefore, still in the making While most biologists agree that no mechanical theory is adequate to explain the phenomena of life, there is an increasing tendency to believe that life has emerged from non-vital phenomena

---

[1] See p 232.

5. Historical Science (1) *Gathering of Facts* —In its reference to evolution in time natural science is intermediate between physical science and history, which, in the usual sense of the term, is the study of the thoughts and actions of men Here a further element is introduced, in that man's acts are determined by purposes consciously conceived Not merely life, but a life guided and determined by thought is to be explained As the matter of the physical sciences is more concrete than that of mathematics, and the matter of the natural sciences more concrete than that of the physical sciences, so the matter of history is more concrete than that of the natural sciences We have here reached the highest end of the scale

It is evident, then, that mechanism is even more inadequate as an explanation of the evolution of civilisation than as explanatory of the forms of vegetable and animal life Yet, during the dominance of the mechanical theory in the last century, such attempts were confidently made, as in Buckle's *History of Civilisation*

History not only deals with the most complex material but it is largely unable to help itself by experiment, and can get but little help from direct observation It is true that the consequences which follow some definite social change—as, *e g* a law of prohibition of all forms of alcoholic liquor—may be observed and statistics gathered But there is no certainty that the results are what at first sight they appear to be, for never does the assumed cause operate alone and unmodified by other forces of human will Moreover, the range of such observation is obviously very limited it gives no direct help in gaining knowledge of the past, and it is with the past that history is mainly concerned.

The facts of history include every form of record of human agency Written documents, material remains, oral traditions, systems of law, religions, philosophies, languages—all must be taken into account And the number of such records is indefinitely great, though, of necessity, they embrace but an infinitesimal part of the facts of the past. Specialisation is consequently as imperative in historical research as in other forms of investigation So here, as elsewhere, the method is guided by definite purpose which defines the scope of its application The purpose may be to study a period limited in time and in geographical range, or it may be to take a more general survey of a wider range, or it may be to study some one aspect of human activity—such as the political, economic, social, or religious Whatever the purpose, it determines the range and kind of facts which will be sought

An indispensable first step in historical investigation is the discovery, collection, and classification of sources This work, though far from complete, has been carried out on a large scale Archives, libraries, museums, general and special bibliographies, by the material they furnish and by an orderly arrangement of it, where such exists, may all be regarded as contributions to method in history

It is assumed that the historian has the knowledge necessary to understand his sources, that, for example, he knows the language in which a document is written, can decipher a manuscript or an inscription, is familiar with the varying forms of official documents, in short, that he has studied the 'auxiliary sciences' needed to equip him for the special researches which he may undertake Thus equipped he is prepared to begin the process of making sure of the facts by criticism of the sources themselves

External criticism seeks to determine the date of a document, the author, and place of origin Each of these particulars may be quickly and surely determined, or may demand careful, perhaps prolonged inquiry. The text will be examined for any indications of time, place, or persons from which inferences to the date, authorship, or place of origin may be drawn, the style may give a clue to the period in which it was written; references in other works, if they exist, must be scrutinised and assessed. The result of this process of reasoning may vary through all degrees of probability to certainty.

Whatever use is made of the document for the establishment of facts will be conditioned by the degree of certitude attained Before reliance can be placed on a document which has been shown to be of a certain authorship and date, it must be ascertained that it is not a copy, in whole or part, of an earlier document, and the accuracy of the text must be established Printed documents are not immune from error, and prior to the days of printing, when manuscripts were multiplied by hand, corruptions of the text crept in in numerous ways Mistakes in copying, additions, falsifications, omissions, are common , they cannot be detected by a comparison with the original manuscript, since, as a rule, this has disappeared Copies that remain are of varying date, value, and completeness The earliest manuscript of Plato, for example, belongs to the ninth century . of Thucydides to the tenth century To obtain as accurate a text as possible, manuscripts are compared with one another, and with quotations or paraphrases of passages that may be found in earlier writers, and, whenever the text is still obscure, emendations may be conjecturally made.

When external criticism has done its work it is followed by internal criticism, the object of which is to find exactly the meaning of the author, to sift out the facts he records, and to determine the value of his testimony to them This raises questions as to the trustworthiness of testimony which are discussed in Chapter XXVII

The facts recorded in documents refer to persons, events, ideas, and objects, that cannot be known directly. They must be reconstructed in imagination. This process makes the chances of error greater than in direct observation Often the facts themselves are not complete, and it is necessary to fill in the gaps by inference from the data already established But the mental construction of the past is conditioned throughout by reality, and the objective reference is as essential as in the physical and natural sciences the difference lies in the method by which the facts are ascertained and verified

Many historical works are devoted mainly to the establishment of facts, and in them interpretation takes a subordinate place. Since the facts are disparate in character, they must be classified. This is a preliminary step in methodical thought about them The most obvious bases for classification are time and place, with reference to individuals or groups The determination of periods of time, the limitations of place, and the decision on what constitutes a group will depend partly on the facts, and partly on the object in view Even so, the classification will contain heterogeneous material, and this can be arranged under headings derived from the nature of the facts themselves—such headings, for example, as war, finance, language, science, religion, industry, commerce, education The facts so grouped may be thoughts and actions shared and repeated by a number of individuals, or peculiar to one individual

Less liable to misinterpretation than documents are such records of man's activities as buildings, codes of laws, the languages in which he has expressed his needs, desires, and thoughts, which have grown with his growth, and at every stage embody the views of life and of the universe which he has held

In all this dealing with records in order to ascertain facts the whole process of induction is essential There is no greater error than to confuse record with fact, and to assume that whatever has been recorded is true Records must be examined critically, and guesses—or hypotheses—formed as to what the facts which they reveal—or disguise—really were, and these hypotheses tested by relating them to other facts similarly suggested or more surely witnessed by language, laws, buildings, artistic products

(ii) *Explanation*—Historical explanation seeks to pass from the facts to the conditions which have determined them. Ultimately these conditions are to be found in the motives and actions of men in relation to their physical environment and to one another The ideal would be to exhibit the facts in a causal series which would show the successive changes that have taken place as conditioned by what preceded them, and conditioning what followed. Such a construction can never be more than an imperfect approximation. All the facts are not known, and many that must be used are the result of a more or less uncertain conjecture made with a view to understand the changes that a comparison of different periods of time shows have somehow taken place The historian may not only be embarrassed by a paucity of facts; he may be overwhelmed by their superabundance It is then necessary for him to make a selection Inevitably he will choose what in his judgment has had a determining influence on later events and ideas, the personal factor in historical construction is a greater disturbing element than the personal equation in the investigations of physical and natural science.

In his reasoning the historian is guided by his knowledge of human nature, which is assumed to have remained the same in its essential features throughout the historic period. By means of this knowledge, however acquired, he endeavours to relate fact to fact, in order to show the causal connection between them The facts have been established by analysis: the reasoning from them is deductive or synthetic An appropriate general principle is sought under which the historical judgment of fact can be subsumed, and from these premises the conclusion is drawn It is true that in exposition the transition often seems to be directly from fact to fact, but on examination it will be found that a general principle or 'law' must be assumed if the connection is to be established

Sequence in time does not in itself prove causal relation Here great caution is necessary As Dr J Holland Rose remarks on the course of events in the French Revolution "We, who know how one event led on to another, find it difficult to escape from the attractive but fallacious conclusion that the sequence was inevitable The mind loves to forge connecting links, and then to conclude that the chain could not have been made otherwise—a quite gratuitous assumption"[1]

The certainty of the conclusion cannot go beyond the certainty of the premises There may be an element of doubt about the facts themselves, and the general principles of human nature rest on a precarious foundation ranging from a high degree of probability to pure conjecture If historical generalisations form part of the reasoning, they are infected with a like uncertainty Nevertheless, there are many facts that admit of no doubt and principles which it would be pedantic to reject, and a conclusion weak in itself may be strengthened by convergent lines of reasoning

---

[1] *William Pitt and National Revival*, p 541

Ideally, historical truth requires the determination of the whole of the conditions operative in bringing about a given change, but the field of history is too vast for this requirement to be fulfilled, so far as it can be under the limitations already outlined, without the co-operation of many workers The historian is obliged to confine his original investigations to a definite period, or to some definite phase of the life of the past Where a synthesis is attempted over a broad sweep of time, he is necessarily dependent for his material on the facts, and, to some extent, on the conclusions of his predecessors

Reasoning in history is, in the first instance, inductive—from effect to cause, and to reach the true cause, the whole of the influences at work must be taken into account The specialist, who confines himself to tracing out one line of development, for example, political, economic, social, or ecclesiastical history, abstracts from the fullness of events that phase in which he is interested But in the concrete life of the past each phase is connected more or less closely with every other, and unless this connection is recognised, the causes assigned for any given development may be inadequate To ensure accuracy, either the specialist himself, or another using the results of the work of specialists, must bring out this reciprocal influence between the separate phases of experience

History does not repeat itself that conditions never recur exactly is what is meant in speaking of the uniqueness of historical facts and causes Conclusions valid in one set of circumstances cannot be applied in other circumstances, which, though they may be analogous, will never be exactly the same, still less can conclusions drawn from the past be used to predict the course of events or ideas in the future In this respect history differs from the physical sciences

Yet the historian, no less than the natural scientist, generalises. His statements of fact are often generalisations, as in the passage " The long-continued war raised the taxes, checked the growth of manufactures, and drained the country of its best peasant blood, only to return to it a body of brigand soldiers ruined in morals and incapable of honest industry."[1] Beliefs, customs, institutions, language, and other phenomena common to members of a community or group, may persist relatively unchanged, and the historian may seek to determine their general features during the period of their existence. Such generalisations are valid only within the field from which they are drawn

Although the complex of conditions which account for the concrete case which it is sought to explain is never exactly reproduced, and the historian may consider his task finished when he has determined what the conditions are, it is possible to raise other questions which can only be answered when this preliminary work has been done

Thus to recur to the quotation given above, we may enquire whether there are any general effects which war tends to produce This will lead to a comparison of wars in different ages and in different countries, and to an endeavour to formulate points in which they agree As a matter of fact we know that there are general propositions about war believed to be true and to be supported by the experience of the past, although in themselves they do not suffice to explain the course or results of any particular war

By means of the comparative method the historian seeks to discern the general conditions of historical development, to detect its general tendencies, and to reveal whatever purposes may be immanent in the facts[2] Generalisations reached in this way belong to the 'philosophy' rather than to the 'science' of history, unless they arise from facts, and are continually verified by them, they pass outside the domain of history altogether

---

[1] Wakeman, *The Ascendancy of France*, p 168

[2] Cf Wundt, *Logik*, 3 Aufl, Bd 3, p 394

CHAPTER XXIII.

FALLACIES INCIDENT TO METHOD.

1. Petitio Principii.—By a *principium* Aristotle means a truth which can be known of itself *Petitio principii* is, therefore, committed when a proposition which requires proof is assumed without proof In other words, in this sense, the *petitio principii* is the undue assumption of axioms Now an axiom is a self-evident truth, such as are the fundamental assumptions of mathematics and of logic But it is very easy and very common to confuse both the desired and the familiar with the obviously true So that what requires proof is assumed as not at all open to question, and from it all sorts of consequences are deduced and regarded as proved

This form of the fallacy is committed when we take for granted a general proposition or principle which involves the required conclusion, and which is just as much in need of proof as the conclusion itself, or, indeed, when any general principle is falsely taken as self-evident There is an interesting example in the first chapter of Herbert Spencer's well-known book on *Education* After stating that "acquirement of every kind has two values—value as *knowledge* and value as *discipline*," he discusses the value of different subjects from the point of view of knowledge He then turns to the disciplinary value of various studies, and proceeds as follows "Having found what is best for the one end, *we have by implication found what is best for the other* We may be quite sure that the acquirement of those classes of facts which are most useful for regulating conduct, involves a mental exercise best fitted for strengthening the faculties. It would be utterly contrary to the beautiful economy of Nature, if one kind of culture were needed for gaining information and another kind were needed as a mental gymnastic" Here the writer "proves" his conclusion (italicised in the quotation) by simply taking for granted a general principle which he is pleased to call "the beautiful economy of Nature" When we argue from general principles, these must either be admitted as self-evident, or they must be capable of proof independently of the conclusion which we wish to derive from them.

A kindred form of the fallacy is committed when a universal which involves the particular proposition to be proved is assumed. Here there is no formal syllogistic fallacy The argument takes the form of a valid syllogism in *Barbara* But it is an offence against the principles of Method, as the proposition assumed is one which needs proof quite as much as that which is inferred from it This is the most accurate sense in which the term *petitio principii* is applied. A *principium*, as was said above, was a self-evident truth, and the true *petitio principii* was the assumption of some proposition of inferior rank as such a principle Some such truths must be accepted as not requiring proof, or all proof would be impossible, as there would be no starting point for the process The fallacy in this form is, then, not committed whenever a proposition is assumed without proof, but when the proposition thus assumed is one which needs just the same kind of proof, bearing on just the same point, as the proposition which is to be deduced from it "Sound probation," says Dr. Davis, "must depart from such principles as are either immediately given as ultimate, or mediately admit of proof from other sources than the proposition itself in question,"[1]

An example, famous among the Greek thinkers in the generation before Plato, is found in the dilemma professing to prove the "impossibility" of motion, by which was meant that the possibility of motion could not be made intelligible to the eye of reason "If a body moves, it must move either where it is or where it is not, but a body cannot move where it is, neither can it move where it is not, therefore it cannot move at all." The major *assumed* the conclusion. The fact is that bodies move neither where they are nor where they are not, but *from* where they are *to* where they were not The major is logically equivalent to the proposition, "If a body moves, it must move under conditions which make motion impossible"

---

[1] Davis, *Theory of Thought*, p 228

In our own days the fallacy of assuming axioms is most frequently found in arguments relating to human affairs That all change is for the better is regarded by many earnest social and political reformers as axiomatic, and the nature of the assumption is hidden by the question-begging term 'progress' This—which properly means nothing more than advance in *some* direction—is assumed to be advance in a *desirable* direction The common fallacy of party politics of assuming the party proposals to be necessarily wise and good, and those of the opposed party to be inevitably foolish and evil, common though it is, are almost too foolish to merit notice in a serious work on Logic

By logicians generally the term *petitio principii* is used more widely to denote the assumption in some form of the very proposition to be proved, as a premise from which to deduce it This may be done, Aristotle tells us, in five different ways by assuming, when the conclusion is particular, a universal which involves it (this we have illustrated above); by assuming the very proposition to be proved; by assuming, when the conclusion is universal, a particular involved in it, by assuming piece by piece the proposition to be proved; by assuming a proposition which necessarily implicates the proposition to be proved The assumption, it will be seen, is in every case of the same character The two first modes of committing the fallacy are, however, of the greatest importance and of the most frequent occurrence

The direct assumption of the proposition to be proved would seem to be hardly possible when it is expressed on both occasions in the same terms Still, people can be found who commit it Commenting on an attempt to square the circle published by a Mr James Smith in a work entitled *Nut to Crack*, De Morgan says—

"Mr. Smith's method of proving that every circle is $3\frac{1}{8}$ diameters is to assume that it is so—'if you dislike the term *datum*, then, by hypothesis, let 8 circumferences of a circle be exactly equal to 25 diameters'—and then to show that every other supposition is thereby made absurd. The right to this assumption is enforced in the 'Nut' by the following analogy 'I think you (!) will not dare (!) to dispute my right to this hypothesis, when I can prove by means of it that every other value of π will lead to the grossest absurdities; unless, indeed, you are prepared to dispute the right of Euclid to adopt a false line hypothetically for the purpose of a *reductio ad absurdum* demonstration in pure geometry' Euclid assumes what he wants to *disprove*, and shows that his *assumption* leads to absurdity, and so *upsets itself*. Mr. Smith assumes what he wants to prove, and shows that *his* assumption makes *other propositions* lead to absurdity. This is enough for all who can reason"[1]

Such direct assumption is, however, by no means unusual when synonyms are used Put symbolically, it being agreed that S is identical with A, and P with B, the fallacy is committed when the proposition A is B is assumed as a premise from which to prove S is P This is, in the strictest sense, "begging the question" According to the directness of the invalid process two sub-forms may be distinguished—the *hysteron proteron* and the *circulus in demonstrando*

In the *hysteron proteron* the conclusion and the premise are really the same Here the fallacy is committed in a single step of inference, as 'The volume of a body diminishes when it is cooled, because the molecules then become closer.' 'Opium induces sleep because it has a soporofic quality.' It is obvious that the richer a language is in synonyms the more likely is a *hysteron proteron* to appear in arguments expressed in that language. Often a proposition expressed in abstract terms is given in proof of the same proposition expressed in concrete terms, as when we are told that the loadstone attracts iron because of its magnetic power, or that oxygen combines with hydrogen because it has an affinity for it. A good instance of this form of fallacy was unconsciously supplied by the Member of Parliament who argued that 'the bill before the House is well calculated to elevate the character of education in the country, for the general standard of instruction in all the schools will be raised by it.'

---

[1] *Budget of Paradoxes*, p 327.

The fallacy may even be committed in single words, by the use of what Bentham terms "question-begging appellatives," that is, those which beg the question under the pretence of stating it. "These," says Dr Davis, "are potent when laudatory, but even more so when vituperative; as Radicals, Rebels, and most political catch-words The word 'innovation' having acquired a bad sense, the admission, which is unavoidable, that a new measure is an innovation is always construed to its disadvantage"[1] So, as has been noted, 'progress' is applied to change as a form of approval

It must not be supposed that it is difficult to fall into this fallacy unintentionally, or that only persons of untrained minds can be guilty of it Galileo accuses Aristotle himself of having committed it in the following argument 'The nature of heavy things is to tend towards the centre of the universe, and of light things to fly from it, experience proves that heavy things tend towards the centre of the earth and that light things fly from it, therefore, the centre of the earth is the centre of the universe.' But Aristotle could only say that heavy things tend towards the centre of the universe by assuming that centre to be identical with the centre of the earth, which is the very proposition he undertakes to prove.[2]

Put symbolically, the *hysteron proteron* takes either the form *S is P*, *S is P*, ∴ *S is P*, or *S is P*, *S is S*, ∴ *S is P*. An examination of the latter shows whenever a definition is used as a premise in an argument meant to be demonstrative, the question is begged, and this Aristotle distinctly points out. For if we argue—'Every rectilinear three-sided figure has its angles equal to two right angles, Every triangle is a rectilinear three-sided figure, Therefore, every triangle has its angles equal to two right angles,' there is no proof The major premise assumes the very point to be proved, for the minor premise does nothing but tell us how such a figure is named Of course, such a use of a definition is permissible in popular explanations, though the form may be the same as the above , for when no demonstration is offered, no begging of the question is possible

---

[1] *Theory of Thought*, p. 284.

[2] Cf. *Port Royal Logic*, p. 249.

The *circulus in demonstrando* or *reasoning in a circle* is when the assumption of the conclusion as a premise is separated by a greater or less interval from its statement as a conclusion. It may be symbolically expressed thus M *is* P, S *is* M, ∴ S *is* P , S *is* P, M *is* S, ∴ M *is* P. Of this Whately gives a good example "Some mechanicians attempt to prove (what they ought to lay down as a probable but doubtful hypothesis), that every particle of matter gravitates equally , 'Why ?' 'Because those bodies which contain more particles ever gravitate more strongly, *i e* are heavier ' 'But (it may be urged) those which are heaviest are not always more bulky' ; 'No, but still they contain more particles, though more closely condensed', 'How do you know that ?' 'Because they are heavier', 'How does that prove it ?' 'Because all particles of matter gravitating equally, that mass which is specifically the heavier must needs have the more of them in the same space'"[1]

The other modes of *petitio principii* are not of much importance. The third mode—of assuming the particular to prove the universal which involves it—is of the nature of a generalisation from simple enumeration. "Aristotle himself seems to be guilty of this when he maintains that slavery is in accord with natural law, on the ground that the neighbouring barbarians, being inferior in intellect, are the born bondsmen of the Greeks"[2]

The fourth mode is only a variety of the first Thus, to take Aristotle's example, when, in trying to show that the healing art is knowledge of what is wholesome and unwholesome, it is successively assumed to be the knowledge of each.

The fifth mode is when a proposition which is in reciprocal relation to another proposition is assumed as a means of proving the latter Aristotle's example is the assumption that the side of a square is incommensurable with the diagonal when the proposition to be proved is that the diagonal is incommensurable with the side Other examples are 'London is north of Brighton, therefore Brighton is south of London'; 'Philip was the father of Alexander, therefore Alexander was the son of Philip', 'Everywhere the light of life and truth was lacking, for darkness covered the earth, and gross darkness the people.' In all these cases we have obviously no passage of thought, it is the same judgment which is expressed in different words, nor does the new expression unfold any meaning which was previously implicit.

---

[1] Whately, *Logic*, p 225

[2] Davis, *op cit*, p 289

2. Ignoratio Elenchi.—By an *elenchus*—*i e* a refutation—Aristotle meant a syllogism with a conclusion contradictory of the thesis to be refuted. The *ignoratio elenchi* was then applicable only to disputation, and consisted in arguing beside the mark, in answering to the wrong point, in establishing a proposition which did not overthrow the original thesis But the scope of the fallacy may be well extended—as it usually is by modern logicians—to include all cases in which instead of the required conclusion, a proposition which may be mistaken for it is established This might appropriately be called *ignoratio* or *mutatio conclusionis* In every case the error consists in proving the wrong point It is thus a violation of the most general rule of method—to be clear as to the purpose.

As an example of *ignoratio elenchi* we may take the common argument against a classical education that "throughout his after career, a boy, in nine cases out of ten, applies his Latin and Greek to no practical purposes"[1] This is to ignore the fact that the advocates of a classical education do not claim that Latin and Greek are of direct use in practical life What they do urge is that the study of the classics furnishes an unrivalled mental training, and it is to the disproof of this proposition that a true *elenchus* must be addressed

No fallacy is more common or more easily committed than *ignoratio* Anyone who has had experience of disputations and debates knows how constantly recurrent is the tendency to wander from the real point at issue, especially when the subject under discussion is a wide one, and how necessary it is for a speaker occasionally to begin his remarks by reminding the disputants what the question under discussion really is.

---

[1] Spencer, *Education*, Ch I.

This tendency must be guarded against especially when any practically important results flow from the conclusion reached. Thus, as De Morgan tells us: "The *pleadings* in our courts of law, previous to trial, are intended to produce, out of the varieties of statement made by parties, the real points at issue, so that the defence may not be *ignoratio elenchi*, nor the case the counter fallacy . *ignoratio conclusionis.* If a man were to sue another for debt, for goods sold and delivered, and if the defendant were to reply that he had paid for the goods furnished, and plaintiff were to rejoin that he could find no record of that payment in his books, the fallacy would be palpably committed The rejoinder, supposed true, shows that either defendant has not paid, or plaintiff keeps negligent accounts , and is a dilemma, one horn of which only contradicts the defence. It is plaintiff's business to prove the sale from what is in his books, not the absence of payment from what *is not*, and it is then defendant's business to prove the payment by his vouchers"[1]

This leads on to that form of the fallacy which consists in throwing the burden of proof on the wrong side Proof of an assertion should generally be given by the person who makes that assertion, and to endeavour to transfer to an opponent the task of proving the negative of that assertion is an *ignoratio elenchi* It is often said that it is difficult, if not impossible, to prove a negative And this is true so long as the negative is a bare denial But the establishment of every positive proposition proves a number of negatives. If then, the number of possible alternatives are few, the proof of any one of them negates all the others.

This principle is adopted in law "For instance, a homicide, as such, is considered by the law as a murderer unless, failing justification, he can prove he had no malice . The case stands thus the alternatives are few, so that proving the negative of one, which the accused is called on to do, can be done by proving the affirmative one out of a small number. There is but malice, heat of blood, misadventure, insanity, etc., to which the action can be referred. Of these few things it is easier for the accused to establish some one out of several, above all when motive is in question (of which only himself can be in possession of the most perfect knowledge), than it is for the prosecutor to establish a particular one. Another principle on which he is called on to establish a negative (or rather another positive) is that the burden of proof fairly lies on the one to whom it will be by much the easiest "[1]

---

[1] *Op cit*, p 260

One form of the fallacy is to confuse objections against the thesis proposed with its disproof. Especially is this likely to be committed when the question at issue is some proposed change, say in the law Against most reforms some objections can be urged, but to treat these as necessarily fatal is an *ignoratio elenchi*, the point to be established is that those objections outweigh the reasons for the proposed change, and simply to point out their existence is entirely beside the mark

One common specimen of the above form of the fallacy is to object to a certain conclusion as tending to establish a position deemed undesirable. Here we have what De Morgan calls " the great fallacy of all, the determination to have a particular conclusion, and to find arguments for it,"[2] coming into play. The conclusion being fore-ordained, all arguments which make against it are refused a hearing

Another form of the fallacy is to prove, or disprove, part of what is required, and to dwell on that to the exclusion of the remainder Thus, if one disputant supports a conclusion by weak arguments, his opponent may confine himself to showing the weakness of his arguments, and leave his readers or hearers to infer that, consequently, the conclusion drawn from those arguments is false The handle thus given to the enemy should be a warning against the practice of urging bad arguments in support of a good cause

A more extreme case of the same mode of committing the

[1] De Morgan, *ibid*, p 261. [2] *Ibid*, p 264

fallacy is the taking exception to a mere illustration or part of an illustration, which has no essential connection with the point in dispute. The very use of illustration at all is liable to be an *ignoratio elenchi* For an illustration is intended to make some point of difficulty clearer and easier of comprehension to the hearer or reader. But the user of the illustration may mistake the point which will need elucidation, and may illustrate the wrong point And there may equally be an *ignoratio* on the part of the pupil

As De Morgan says " The greatest difficulty in the way of learners is not knowing exactly in what their difficulty consists, and they are apt to think that when *something* is made clear, it must be *the* something "[1] And he rightly goes on to point out the danger incident to the use of concrete examples in the study of the rules of formal inference " If the student receives help from an example stated both in matter and form, the odds are that the help is derived from the plainness of the matter, and from his conviction of the matter of the conclusion. . The right perception may, no doubt, be acquired by reflection on instances, but the minds which are best satisfied by material instances are also those which give themselves no further trouble "[2] The use of illustrations is also liable to the fallacy in another way—the person to whom an illustration is addressed may not see the analogy of the matter.

One common and most objectionable form of *ignoratio elenchi* is summed up in the advice to counsel 'No case, abuse the plaintiff's attorney.' Discussions, especially on subjects of real practical importance, such as politics and religion, are not usually conducted entirely in cold blood. Prejudice and even bad faith lead members of one party to attribute all kinds of base motives to their opponents, and to discount all the statements they make " The testimony is, in the receiver's mind, of a low order, the proposer is a radical, and the receiver is of opinion that a radical would pick a pocket or else, perhaps, the proposer is a tory, and the receiver is of the belief that a tory must have picked a pocket."[1] But it must be remembered that abuse is not argument, and that to prove any amount of ill conduct against the proposers of a certain measure or the maintainers of a certain proposition will not prove the measure unwise or the proposition untrue.

---

[1] *Ibid*, p 266.

[2] *Ibid*, pp 266-7.

Closely allied to this form of the fallacy is the *argumentum ad hominem*, or the *tu quoque*—you're another—style of argument. All recrimination, all charges of inconsistency, are of this character, unless indeed the very point in dispute is personal character or consistency. But when a statesman brings forward a certain measure it is no objection to that measure to point out that he has hitherto opposed it. Very often, indeed, when a disputant tries to turn his opponent's former arguments against himself, it is not, as De Morgan says, "absolutely the same argument which is turned against the proposer but one which is asserted to be like it, or parallel to it. But *parallel cases* are dangerous things, liable to be parallel in immaterial points, and diverge in material ones."[2]

A sub-form of this species of the fallacy is the *argumentum ad baculum*. As Mr Stock remarks "To knock a man down when he differs from you in opinion may prove your strength, but hardly your logic"[3]

Another form of *ignoratio* is the *argumentum ad populum*, or appeal to popular passion or prejudice The following 'argument' against a literary education appears to us to be a striking instance "When a mother is mourning over a first-born that has sunk under the sequelae of scarlet-fever—when perhaps a candid medical man has confirmed her suspicion that her child would have recovered had not its system been enfeebled by over-study—when she is prostrate under the pangs of combined grief and remorse, it is but small consolation that she can read Dante in the original"[4]

Closely allied to this is the *argumentum ad ignorantium*, which consists in trusting that the ignorance of the hearer will lead to the acceptance as proved of statements which are by no means proved And this is frequently allied with the *argumentum ad verecundiam* or appeal to a respected authority 'You should accept this conclusion, or advocate this measure, because so-and-so supports it' is an *ignoratio elenchi* not infrequently heard in political life. This also involves a fallacy of illicit generalisation[1] Undue respect for authority leading to a neglect to examine the evidence for and against a given proposition is not a state of mind favourable to the detection of fallacy.

---

[1] De Morgan, *ibid*, p 263

[2] *Ibid*, p 265

[3] *Deductive Logic*, p 313

[4] Spencer, *Education*, Ch 1

3. Non Sequitur or Non Propter Hoc.—This fallacy is committed whenever the conclusion is not a necessary consequence of the premises. Both the premises and the conclusion may be granted, and yet the derivation of the one from the other denied Or the premises may be accepted, and the conclusion ostensibly drawn from them rejected. If one wishes to refute a proposition by showing that it leads to absurd results, and one includes it as a premise among others, then though the conclusion drawn from their combination may be absurd or impossible it does not follow that the absurdity or impossibility is due to that one particular premise

Thus if it be argued that the increase of schools has been evil, and for proof it be pointed out that official returns show a continuous increase of crime we have an obvious *non-sequitur* For it may be retorted that there are many antecedent conditions besides the increase of schooling, and that increase of crime may with more probability be traced to them . or that the increase is only apparent and is really proof of better administration of the law rather than of its more frequent violation

In the first case distinguished there is not a true syllogism but really four terms, for were the syllogism a good one the conclusion must be granted if the premises be accepted This is the position of Aristotle In the *Analytica Priora* he says : "The most obvious case of the irrelevance of the thesis to the conclusion is when the thesis is not connected by any middle term with the conclusion"[2] It thus appears that this fallacy involves, at any rate in some instances, the formal syllogistic fallacy of four terms. But when it is considered generally, its essential connection with proof by *reductio ad absurdum* classes it more appropriately as a fallacy incident to method

---

[1] See p 459

[2] ii 19.

In the second case the presence of the fallacy may be detected by trying whether the premise in question can be omitted without interrupting the sequence of the argument. But it must be remembered that the superfluous premise may have been tacitly assumed, as in the example Aristotle gives : "We assume that the opposite of destruction is generation, therefore, the opposite of a particular destruction is a particular generation, but death is a particular destruction and its opposite is life ; therefore life is generation, and to live is to be generated This is absurd Therefore life and soul are not identical" Here the premise assumed is that 'Life and soul are identical.' The premise tacitly assumed must be made explicit before it can be seen whether the absurdity of the conclusion is really due to it and to it alone

A common example of a *non-sequitur* is when an opponent of some suggested reform objects that "it may be good in theory but is bad in practice" If we grant the conclusion as true yet the badness in practice does not follow from the goodness in theory. It is assumed that theory and practice are incompatible—which is absurd The badness of the practice results from the inadequacy—and therefore, badness—of the theory, from the incompetence of the practitioner, or from interferences from without which prevent the practice being a real example of the theory. Political speeches afford a happy hunting-ground for the seeker after this, and every other kind of fallacy When an oration is self-destructive we may be said to have a very real *non-sequitur,* for as the premises annihilate each other there is nothing left from which a conclusion can be drawn.

The reader may be interested in comparing the following propositions from one and the same speech made in the House of Commons by Mr. Asquith [1]

---

[1] Reported in *The Times*, February 22, 1911

"The House of Lords has long ceased to have any real control over policy and administration. . . .

"Then followed the four years, 1906-9. . . . During those years . . the House of Lords resolutely opposed and successfully defeated the principal controversial measures passed by the largest majorities in the annals of the House of Commons. The climax was reached in the autumn of 1909 when the House of Lords rejected the finances of the year. . .

"If that precedent had been allowed to stand the Lords could always, as they did then, by destroying the finance of the year, compel the Government of the day to resign office or to appeal by dissolution to the electorate"

The remarkable thing is not that such self-contradictory positions should be taken in the course of a speech of some length, but that neither friends nor foes seemed aware of the logical character of the argument addressed to them.

CHAPTER XXIV.

GENERAL NATURE OF INDUCTION

1. Nature and Aim of Induction.—We have considered the two characters, namely, analysis and synthesis, common to methods of investigation in the different sciences, and have examined the relative part played by each in several of these sciences. Induction, or the method of discovering knowledge about matters of fact, uses both analysis and synthesis, and we have to consider in detail how these factors enter into induction and upon what other factors the method depends.

The aim of induction is to arrive at universal propositions, which, as expressions of the essential character of phenomena, are known as laws Thus in political economy we have the law of diminishing returns which states that after a certain point is reached, other things remaining the same, the returns *to successive applications of labour and capital to any portion* of land will continuously diminish , in physics we have Boyle's law that the volume of a gas varies inversely as the pressure to which it is subject at a fixed temperature

Now it is obvious that neither of these laws can be matter of direct experience For we do not know land except in particular portions, nor gas except in its varieties . how then can we make statements about land or gas in general ?

Consider the case of a farmer who has found in the cultivation of a certain field that an increase in the labour and capital expended on it is bringing in a less proportionate return year by year. This series of events is unique and will never recur. It relates to a particular object, in a particular place at a particular time. As a record it is merely a matter of history : a narrative of what occurred in the past. Yet he will not treat it so He will use his experience as a guide to his treatment of the rest of the farm. In other words he will roughly generalise what in itself was unique And the political economist, meeting with such instances, will formulate the generalisation with greater exactness into a law. Moreover, he will use the law confidently to interpret economic riddles of the past and to shape a policy for the future

Now what are the assumptions which underlie this procedure? First of all, while the particular fact is individual and therefore different from every other fact, it nevertheless results from certain conditions without which it would not have been at all On some of these conditions depend the special features of the fact which are being investigated—in the case of the land, for instance, the diminished ratio of the returns to the expenditure Other aspects are for the time being neglected, and if the conditions of those under consideration can be exactly determined, we assume that wherever the like conditions recur another instance of the phenomena will be found The statement of these conditions is purely abstract, for it simply asserts that whenever they occur a determinate result will follow—symbolically, *If* **A** *then* **B.**

The particular is thus regarded as exemplifying the universal which can be read out of it by a process of thought The extension to cases that have not been investigated requires justification The presuppositions upon which such justification depends will be discussed in the next chapter

If we regard the universal as discernible in the particular we must not overlook the difficulty of discernment The universal is not easily discerned , it does not leap to the eye of the observer however careful he may be. His observations must be guided and interpreted by a methodical train of thought, by reasoned conjectures, and by an ever fresh scrutiny of the relevant facts

An easier and more natural way of making a generalisation would seem to be to count the instances in which the relation is present and to argue from its uncontradicted frequency to its universal prevalence The argument would run that since the relation has held good in every instance that has been met with, it will continue to hold good in all further examples of the same kind.

The name "perfect induction" has been applied to those cases where we find, by observation *and counting* (or "enumeration"), that each and every member of a group has the quality *P*, and then conclude that they "All are *P*." This is proof by *complete enumeration* Thus we may show by complete enumeration that "All the months of the year have less than thirty-two days," for the number of months is limited, and so we can ascertain the fact in each particular case before making the general statement But it usually happens that we cannot go over all the particular cases, and when complete enumeration of them all is impossible, the process has been called "imperfect induction" It consists essentially in enumerating all the *known or observed* cases of some object *S*, and, if it is found that each of them is *P*, inferring that every *S*, *known and unknown*, is *P* The process is essentially one of generalisation from an enumeration not known to be complete We must add that the term "simple" enumeration" (*enumeratio simplex*), which appears to have been invented by Francis Bacon, has been used to signify "generalisation from an enumeration not known to be complete."

To the so-called perfect induction the title of inference has been denied by many modern logicians For in it the conclusion merely states in a more convenient form what has been already expressed in the premises Thus in speaking of the books ranged on a certain shelf I may say—

a b c d ..are bound in red,
a b c d . are all the books on the fourth shelf,
.. all the books on the fourth shelf are bound in red.

Instead of tediously reciting the titles of the works and predicating red binding of them severally, I may use the conclusion as a serviceable abridgement The step is not one of inference from the given premises, but a summary of the information they convey. When the enumeration is not known to be complete, it is always liable to be overthrown by the discovery of a contradictory instance.

The utmost we are ever entitled to say as the result of such a method at its best is that certain things always have been and are We can never conclude that they necessarily must be At most there is a probability which in certain cases may amount to practical certainty that the expectation aroused will be realised in any further case that may come under observation. Some other way, then, than that of enumeration must be found for the detection of the universal, and in modern science enumeration is always subordinate to analysis.

Now the data of experience are concrete, and as concrete, exceedingly complex Science assumes that each element in this complexity is the necessary expression of universal law, so that every particular is, as it were, the centre of many universals. To discover any one of them it is necessary to isolate it from the rest in thought, to create, as it has been expressed, a kind of void around it so that it may stand out naked and clear of the details in which it is embedded and which are irrelevant *to it* These details may be different in every instance of the phenomena, and it is only when they are set aside that the essential conditions on which the universal depends becomes apparent Consequently, the process by which we reach the knowledge of the exact form of any law of relation is one of analysis, and one which offers abundant opportunities for error. The relations as we conceive them in thought may not be the relations which actually hold. Then, sooner or later, we come to contradiction in our explanations, and see the necessity for a revision of our mental construction

It is in relation to analysis that the advantage of a plurality of instances is found The form of any universal law is often more clearly and easily seen when comparison of instances which are known, or believed, to exemplify it enables the observer to disregard the unessential elements in each concrete particular. It is here that number of instances has a place in induction They assist us in analysing the conditions of the given, but it is from those conditions, and not from the instances as such, that the inference is made If the conditions can be exactly ascertained in a single instance—as in the case of many chemical experiments—then no plurality of instances is needed, unless, indeed, there is some doubt as to the accuracy of the experiment, when, of course, its repetition may be necessary to remove that doubt.

The only cases in which an inference is made from a number of instances as such is when it is impossible—at any rate for the time—to ascertain the conditions of the phenomenon in question; and then the inference only yields a certain amount of probability [1]

We see then that the aim of induction is knowledge of universal laws: that such laws are abstract, for concrete reality only presents us with them encumbered with extraneous detail; that, consequently, we can reach them only by an analysis of facts, and in this analysis comparison of instances may be helpful but is not essential, that abstraction offers opportunity for error, and that, therefore, the form in which we think universal laws may be subject to modification.

In connection with the subject of the foregoing discussion it is usual to refer to what Aristotle called the "inductive syllogism" We do so here in order to point out that this is not "induction" in the modern sense. Aristotle was aware that generalisation from an enumeration not known to be complete frequently occurs, and he discusses the conditions under which such generalisations may be regarded as more or less probably true. But he did not use the term "induction" (ἐπαγωγή) when discussing such arguments

What Aristotle called the "inductive syllogism" takes this form·

All M is P,
All M is S,
∴ *All S is P*

This is a syllogism in Fig III and is formally invalid But it is a cogent argument if we know not only that all *M* is *S* but that *S* and *M* are convertible, so that we have not only "All *M* is *S*" but also "All *S* is *M*." Substituting the latter proposition for the original minor, we get a valid syllogism in *Barbara* The possibility of the "inductive syllogism," therefore, depends on our finding, by exhaustive observation, that *S* and *M* are convertible. Thus the Aristotelian "inductive syllogism" is not a mode of proof distinct from deduction For Aristotle, complete enumeration was quite feasible, since what were enumerated were not individuals but *species*, and according to the current view it was always possible to enumerate completely the species of a genus, since in Greek science any genus or species was assumed to be naturally fixed and unchanging

---

[1] *Cf* Ch 32

2 Method of Induction —How then is the analysis of phenomena to be conducted? Since the universal is not directly open to observation, it can only be grasped by thought A first observation gives acquaintance with the facts These have no meaning apart from the universals which they exemplify. Hence the mind is led to conjecture a universal law of relation which will make the facts significant, or in other words explain them. Such a supposition is called a hypothesis, and before it can be accepted it must be subjected to a careful examination in the light not only of the phenomena it is intended to explain, but also of all established knowledge which seems related to them.

Indeed the method of induction throughout consists in the framing of hypotheses to explain phenomena given in experience, and the verification of those hypotheses by constant appeal to facts In the process of examination and verification it will rarely happen that the original hypothesis stands as first conceived In many cases it will be rejected outright; in others it will be pruned and re-fashioned until it expresses with greater accuracy the true nature of the data that experience affords When its agreement with known reality is exact then its truth is held to be established.

The testing, re-shaping, and verifying of hypotheses may proceed mainly by either of two methods, the one direct, the other indirect The causal relation may be such that the sequence lies open to observation, or the cause may so far admit of manipulation as to be controlled by experiment. Then the behaviour of the cause in relation to the effect can be watched to some extent directly It is here that the methods associated with the name of Mill have their chief importance.[1] They all aim at exhibiting to observation a simple causal sequence by means of a definite variation of accompanying circumstances.

On the other hand the indirect method makes use of deduction. When a hypothesis has been formed its consequences are inferred. These are then compared with the phenomena under investigation to see if there is agreement between the two. Such agreement is the minimum test to be satisfied if the hypothesis is to be accepted as the statement of a real causal relation This method may be used as well as the direct method in those cases where, though the cause is of such a nature as to make experiment impossible, nevertheless the causal sequence is open to observation amid diverse surroundings. But its special sphere is found where the direct methods of observation and experiment are inapplicable The causal relation is often hidden from view, and then there is no other resource but to devise a hypothesis which, by the consequences it necessitates, explains the facts as they are

This method, then, is necessarily used where we are compelled to start from certain given effects, and from them infer the causes, because direct observation of the causal sequence is then impossible. This is well illustrated in the explanation of present-day geological phenomena by the geologist, or in the causes assigned by the historian for the growth of an institution such as Parliament Indeed geology, history, and the social sciences are almost entirely dependent on the indirect method as a method of investigation

The essence of the method of induction is clearly put by De Morgan "Modern discoveries have not been made by large collections of facts with subsequent discussion, separation, and resulting deduction of a truth thus rendered perceptible A few facts have suggested an *hypothesis*, which means a *supposition* proper to explain them The necessary results of this supposition are worked out, and then, and not till then, other facts are examined to see if these ulterior results are found in nature The trial of the hypothesis is the *special object*, prior to which hypotheses must have been started, not by rule, but by that sagacity of which no description can be given, precisely because the very owners of it do not act under laws perceptible to themselves The inventor of hypotheses, if pressed to explain his method, must answer as did Zerah Colburn, when asked for his mode of instantaneous calculation. When the poor boy had been bothered for some time in this manner, he cried out in a huff, 'God put it into my head, and I can't put it into yours' Wrong hypotheses, rightly worked from, have produced more useful results than unguided observation."[1]

---

[1] See Ch 30

The essential steps in the inductive method, then, are summarised as follows :—

(1) A first observation of facts.

(2) The formation of a hypothesis suggested by this observation

(3) The deduction of the consequences of this hypothesis.

(4) The testing of these consequences by a careful analysis of phenomena, and the consequent exact formulation of the hypothesis, which then, as expressing the true universal nature of reality, is verified and received as an established theory or law

---

[1] *Budget of Paradoxes*, pp 55-6

CHAPTER XXV.

THE POSTULATES OF INDUCTION.

1. The Bases of Generalisation.—So far as knowledge is obtained by means of inductive inference a new problem arises Induction begins with particulars and establishes universals The relation which is exemplified here and now is extended to cover all cases of the same kind, past, present, and future The statement "this or that fire burns" is generalised into "fire burns," and wherever fire may be met with we are confident that its nature will be the same. But what right have we to affirm on the ground of past experience that such will be the case? How can we know that the fire that is kindled to-morrow will not cool instead of scorch the hand that is thrust too near it, or will not burst into fiercer flame as water is poured upon it?

Science refuses to limit itself to a mere registration of phenomena that have come under its observation, and denies that the validity of the principles it discovers is restricted to the cases from which they were drawn It grants that all the instances cannot be examined, but it asserts that this need not deter us from concluding from one to all, if the nature of the one is thoroughly known

It has been usual to seek the justification for this procedure in two postulates, (i) that nature is uniform, (ii) that every event must have a cause These, it is said, are the postulates of induction, and because of their fundamental importance they must be considered at length.

2. The Uniformity of Nature.—There are two interpretations of this principle Logicians, who believe that the universe is really one, in spite of appearances to the contrary, assert that the principle means that the Universe is a system which *as a* whole is always one and the same, but *within which* changes take place according to laws determined by its nature. Accordingly, if the system were other than it is, the laws governing the changes of its parts would be different In other words, the Universe is regarded as a system which remains identical with itself, and which as a whole does not change, at the same time there are unceasing changes in the relations between its parts, these being necessitated and determined by the nature of the whole It is said, for instance, that the Universe is of such a nature that all material bodies attract each other directly as their mass and inversely as the square of their distance If the Universe were different the facts which now exemplify the law of gravitation would be at least partly changed, or they might cease to exist

The conception which we have just outlined is known as that of the ' Unity of Nature " or the " Unity of the Universe " It involves two assumptions, (i) that Nature or the Universe is a persistent unchanging Unity determining changes in its parts, and (ii) that there are laws connecting these different parts

The view that the nature of the universe remains one and the same while determining different necessary changes among its parts rests upon a monistic metaphysical conception which it would be wholly irrelevant to discuss in this book. However, apart from the controversial nature of the metaphysical assumption upon which this first interpretation of the uniformity of nature rests, there is a purely logical reason for accepting a second interpretation, which is not metaphysical but is relevant to and indeed essential to any adequate theory of scientific method This second interpretation, as we shall see, amounts to the assertion that there are " laws of Nature," while the investigations with which inductive logic is concerned are attempts to discover such laws If, therefore, we can justify the belief that there are laws, we can justify inductive investigations without making the assumption that laws are determined by the nature of a whole which remains always the same

The "Uniformity of Nature," so understood, is the assumption that what is true in one case,—or, more precisely, what takes place under a group of conditions which can be observed,—will be true in all cases which are sufficiently like the former, or under any other group of conditions which are sufficiently like it. This is essentially the formulation of the principle of Uniformity given by J. S Mill. But he also observes that 'the unknown will be similar to the known, and the future will resemble the past' This statement is vague and misleading. Experience shows us that there are general kinds of orderly succession in outward course of events such as appear, for example, in the succession of day and night, summer and winter, seed-time and harvest, life and death. The regular succession of events in a thousand different ways accustoms us, from force of habit, to expect things to happen in a regular order, and we find that the expectation is fulfilled. This constitutes an overwhelming presumption in favour of the maintenance of the present arrangements in Nature, but it does not show that deviations from this order are impossible. An expectation, bred by tradition and custom, that events will occur in a certain way, though practically indispensable, must not be confused with the Uniformity of Nature as a scientific assumption Expressed in its most concise form, this assumption is that "the same cause will have the same effect." The same cause may conceivably never act again; but this does not affect the legitimacy of the assumption that if it did it would have the same effect

Hence it is misleading to say that "the unknown must resemble the known" Consider what is "known" of the Universe now does it "resemble" what was "known" in the days of Copernicus? In those days it was not only "unknown" but unimaginable and inconceivable And as regards the future "resembling" the past the future might be exceedingly unlike the past (*in the ordinary sense of the words*), without any violation of the principle of inductive reasoning, rightly understood And even at present, experience has an aspect of chaos as well as of regularity. There are indeed in the infinite variety of Nature many 'usual' or 'ordinary' events; but others appear uncommon, perplexing, or even contradictory to the general run of things This is fully admitted by Mill "The course of nature, in truth, is not only uniform, it is also infinitely various Some phenomena are always seen to recur in the very same combinations in which we met with them at first, others seem altogether capricious; while some, which we had been accustomed to regard as bound down exclusively to a particular set of combinations, we unexpectedly find detached from some of the elements with which we had hitherto found them conjoined, and united to others of a quite contrary description."[1]

Nevertheless, the whole procedure of scientific investigations is based on the assumption that such uniformities, or laws, are to be found, and the principle of the uniformity of nature simply asserts this assumption Three questions arise, (i) How have we come to believe the assumption ? (ii) Is it justified ? (iii) Is it sufficient as the basis justifying inductive investigations ? As logicians we are concerned with the first of these questions only in so far as it is related to the second. Hence these two questions may be examined together.

(i) *The Origin and Justification of our Belief in the Uniformity of Nature* —It has been held that we believe that nature is uniform because we have observed repetition of phenomena in sensuous experience We have seen similar facts occur in similar circumstances, and so we have come to believe that they always will do so As a statement of what happens this is not true without qualification, for as we have seen, we observe variety as well as uniformity However, if it is recognised that the variety disappears under wider observation the statement expresses at least part of the cause on account of which we believe that nature is uniform , for, had we never observed uniformity, it is unlikely that we should ever have believed in it

However, whether or no, mere observation of repetition is sufficient to give rise to the belief, it is not sufficient to justify it As Hume demonstrated, observation of repetition could only give us an *expectation* that under similar conditions phenomena already observed would be repeated , and our expectation might be disappointed It would be only a habit that had arisen from the recurrence of similar instances in the past, and we have no right to assume that what we have formed the habit of expecting will actually come to pass. Moreover, if the validity of the belief is based upon its alleged origin in observed uniformity, its only logical basis, apart from psychological expectation, is the process of simple enumeration The recurrent sequences are counted, and on no other logical ground than their frequency, they are held to indicate uniformity But this method of reasoning is not cogent

---

[1] Mill, *Logic*, Bk III , Ch iii , § 2

It has also been held that the belief is *à priori* There are two senses of *à priori* in which this assertion may be true In the first sense, the assertion means only that the belief is not derived from experience in the second sense, the assertion means that the belief is a condition of knowledge

Those who hold that the belief is *à priori* in the first sense say that on the occasion of certain experience it forms itself in the mind as a conscious assumption One instance of uniformity may be sufficient to make us realise the general fact of uniformity, or more than one instance may be necessary; but the belief does not arise simply because of the experience, the experience is only the occasion *calling it forth into recognition* The belief, it must be remembered, is the general belief that there are laws according to which things are related, it is not a belief in any particular law, such as gases expand when heated These particular laws require investigations each on its own account As logicians we are concerned with the question whether, if the general belief were *à priori* in this first sense, we should be justified in holding it. The answer to this question must be in the affirmative The belief in the uniformity of Nature arises in the course of experience but is not created or "manufactured" by experience. There is something in the nature of experience which calls it forth, and therein lies its justification

The second sense of *à priori*, which is such that if belief in the uniformity of nature is *à priori* in this sense, it is a condition of the possibility of knowledge, need not detain us, since, being necessary for any knowledge, the belief would require no other justification. Moreover we can never know whether this account of the function of the belief is true or not since we cannot contemplate knowledge from the outside

It is therefore possible that belief in the uniformity of nature is justified, for, we have seen that, provided we do not seek its justification in one particular view of its origin, that is, mere repeated observation of uniformities, the belief can have originated in a way which justifies it It remains to be seen whether the principle forms a sufficient basis for induction

(ii) *Adequacy of Belief in the Uniformity of Nature*—The object of inductive investigations is to establish particular uniformities, while the principle of the uniformity of nature means *only* that there are uniformities The belief in particular uniformities undoubtedly presupposes the general principle that there are uniformities, but, should we not feel more secure in our inductive generalisations if there were some principle which explained how it was that things were related together according to laws? The principle of uniformity simply assures us that they are so related, it contains nothing which in any way explains why this is so In knowing that the principle is justifiably believed in we know only that one presupposition of our inductive generalisations is legitimate But we are not confident that no other presupposition is made.

3. The Principle of Causation—It has been held that this principle supplements the principle of uniformity Together, it is said, the two principles form the sufficient basis justifying inductive generalisations. It is, however, recognised that the two principles are not independent, since the principle of causation is regarded as the most important exemplification of the principle of uniformity. While the latter principle states that one thing is related to another in an orderly way, the former states that every event is *causally* related to other events

As plain men we all know roughly what we mean by causation, we understand clearly such sentences as, "Frost causes burst pipes," "Shock may cause death," but the concept referred to in such sentences has defied exact definition, yet it can only be on an exact notion that we can pronounce whether it either is, or is not, sufficient supplement to the principle of uniformity as the basis of induction. It is therefore necessary to consider some of the different views which have been put forward concerning the nature of causality.

Broadly speaking two different attitudes to causation are distinguishable, (i) that which attributes the peculiarity of causation in the respective *events* related, and (ii) that which places the uniqueness in the *relation as such* Those who attribute the uniqueness to the events naturally refer to "cause and effect" rather than to the causal relation It has been held, for instance, that the essence of the idea of cause is that it has power to produce change while the essence of effect is that it is a change which has been produced and not one which has simply happened accidentally Under the form of causation, it is said, man first thinks his own efforts to do things, *he* is the efficient cause of the changes in the world due to his efforts, as he is active in producing effects so is a cause active in producing its effects This "activity view" of the nature of cause has fallen into disrepute, for it is realised that it is but one consequence of man's tendency to interpret nature in the light of his own attributes It is mere mythology to speak of "causation" as if it were the name of some kind of power which the "cause" *possesses* to produce "effects"

The cause has come to be regarded as an event, usually an event such that it particularly attracts our attention "Cause" thus comes to be used for an event with a particularly striking character or for an event which appears to precede the effect immediately, for instance, the pouring of a pail of water, is said to be the cause of the extinguished fire, the pulling of the trigger, the cause of a pistol being fired. Such a use of "cause" presupposes a distinction between the total set of conditions preceding an effect and one or more events among these conditions. It is realised, for instance, that the pulling of a trigger cannot occur in isolation, and it would be admitted that in a wider sense of cause all the events connected with the pulling of the trigger are the cause of the fired pistol, yet some special importance is attributed to the one event which is the pulling of the trigger, and popularly this is regarded as the cause.

This isolation of one event from among the total set of conditions, which is made by the plain man in his reference to causes, is paralleled in another direction Not only is one event isolated from others and regarded as the cause, but one property of events is also isolated and frequently it is implied that this is the cause When, for instance, it is said that arsenic poisoning is the cause of death, it is plausible to believe that what is referred to is a certain property in the events which precede death by arsenic poisoning This isolation of a property is similarly made in the case of the effect, death, for instance, is a property common to all of a very extensive class of events. On account of this isolation the question as to whether there is a plurality of causes arises If each effect of a certain kind were considered in all its particularity we should see that one particular effect is not produced by a plurality of causes but by one only. It is because we disregard differences and concentrate upon similarity that we are able to refer to a plurality of causes, we say, for instance, that happiness is caused by health, by wealth, by virtue, and by intelligence, but if we could discriminate, we should see that the happiness produced by each of these factors is not precisely similar in each case We may say then, that if we refer to general properties there may be plurality of causes, but if we refer to concrete cases of particular groups of properties it is improbable that there ever is plurality of causes

The question concerning plurality of causes arises in a slightly different form, for those who place the uniqueness of causality in the relation, not in the events. It is then formulated in such a way as "Is the causal relation reciprocal"? If an affirmative answer is given to this question it means that we affirm that if A is necessarily related to B, B is necessarily related to A, or, to revert to the terminology of those who emphasise the peculiar nature of the terms rather than of the relation, it means that the cause necessarily determines the effect, and the effect similarly necessarily determines the cause

So far, we have assumed that cause preceeds effect; but, it has sometimes been maintained that cause is identical with effect. Such a view rests upon a confusion. One and the same event may be both cause and effect in relation to different events, but it can never be both cause and effect in relation to the same event *A* may cause *B*, which in turn causes *C*, so that *B* is the effect of *A* and the cause of *C*, but this does not mean that cause and effect are identical

The true view of the temporal, and we shall now have to add *spatial*, relation between cause and effect is that there is continuity between the events which are the cause and those which are the effect All that is meant by continuity here is that no gap exists between cause and effect, one set of events is continuous with another set, the two sets are not separated by a third set which is wholly unrelated to either set. An account of the temporal and spatial relations of events causally connected, which is based upon our revised concept of space and time necessitated by Einstein, has yet to be given It is clear that such an account must regard cause and effect as sets of events This view of cause and effect is the scientific view, and it contrasts with the popular view, for, as we have seen, this view concentrates upon the peculiar property of the terms of the causal relation, this means that it gives an account of cause, and not of the causal relation. Science, regarding cause as a set of events is more interested in the kind of relation than in properties of the cause. So far no adequate account of this relation has been given. If the relation is to be a useful scientific concept it must be because it is importantly different from other relations with which the scientist is concerned, but we do not yet know what are the properties which distinguish the causal relation from other relations between sets of events

We are able to recognise some relations as causal and to see that others are not causal, for instance, we do not believe that the set of events which we briefly refer to as *day* are causally related to the set of events which we refer to as *night*. We regard both sets as being effects of some other cause, *i e.* the earth's rotation relative to the sun Again, we can see that some sets of events are independently related, for instance, the progress of a royal procession and the raging of a snow storm. We see also that relations between sets of events are not identical with relations between coexisting properties, for instance, the atomic weight of mercury and its silvery appearance.

4 The Principle of Limited Variety—The principle of Uniformity and the principle of Universal Causation are fundamental in the sense that inductive reasoning is impossible without them. But we must ask whether a principle can be found which includes them both and is more fundamental. This question can now be answered in the affirmative The required principle may be formulated thus *There are in Nature groups of properties which are limited in number, and are such that one property belonging to such a group implies another property (or other properties) belonging to the same group.* This is called the "Principle of Limited Variety."

We will first briefly illustrate the principle Consider an animal species such as "dog," and a species of chemical element such as "gold" These are characterised by a number of properties, for instance, gold has a certain colour, a certain hardness, it dissolves in very few acids Now from the knowledge that a given specimen has one of these properties, we infer that it has others, we assume, that is to say, that the properties belong to a certain group, one of which specifies others

If, again, we think of dogs, we should agree that all dogs have a certain group of properties, though we should find it difficult to name these properties We realise that there is both limitation and variety among the properties peculiar to dogs, for instance, one does not expect to find any dog as big as a horse, nor as small as a mouse, but within these limits there is a great variety in the size of dogs, similarly with their colour, there are limits, but there is a range of variety within these limits Once more all dogs have some inclination to chase smaller animals of different species, but not all in the same degree.

It was such species as these that Mill referred to as *natural kinds.* Mill attributed to natural kinds the unmodifiable attributes of the Aristotelian species[1] We now know that species are modifiable, and that inorganic substances have the same important property as that attributed to natural kinds, *i.e.* their properties belong to groups, one member implying another member.

If then we think of the kind of objects Mill denoted by "natural kind," and slightly modify the connotation Mill attached to this term so that it includes the possibility of modification and excludes the restriction to living beings, we have reason to believe that there are in fact such groups of properties as those postulated by the principle of limited variety. The principle is therefore not easily doubted; on the other hand, it is not so obviously true as such a proposition as $1 + 1 = 2$; nor can we prove the principle For these reasons the principle remains a postulate But it is a postulate which is very likely to be true, and if true, it is a more adequate basis of inductive generalisations than either the principle of uniformity or the principle of causation, and than these two principles together, since the most that they do is to assert that there are laws and that some of these are causal laws. The principle of limited variety on the other hand, contains an explanation of how there can be laws There are laws, it implies, because properties belong to groups, one member of a given group implying other members of the same group.

The aim of induction is to discover properties such that they belong to the groups thus postulated. Some of the means of discovery are more cogent than others, those which are least cogent give results to which we cannot attach conviction, those which are most cogent give results which we regard as being verified.

The Principle of Limited Variety was first formulated by Dr C D Broad, and has been discussed and defended by Dr J. M Keynes in his work on *The Theory of Probability*, by Professor L. S Stebbing, and others[2] The following statement of it by Dr. Broad may be quoted here.[3]

---

[1] Cf p. 39 [2] See, in particular, Stebbing, *A Modern Introduction to Logic*, second edition, Ch xxi

[3] Broad, *The Philosophy of Francis Bacon. a Lecture*, pp 37-39.

(i) The material world is composed of various kinds of substance, such that each kind can be distinguished from all the others by enumerating a comparatively small number of specific properties characteristic of it This small selection carries with it all the rest of the properties of the kind—*e g* gold can be completely distinguished from all other kinds of substance by mentioning that it is yellow in white light, that its density is 19 26, and that its melting-point is 1062° C. Anything that has these few specific properties will have all the other specific properties of gold

(ii) The number of different kinds of material substance is comparatively small, and the apparent multiplicity of kinds arises from the various proportions in which these few are mixed and compounded

(iii) The various specific modifications of a single generic quality, such as colour, often differ from each other in such a way that we can immediately recognise the differences but cannot reduce them to any one principle—*e g* we can immediately recognise the differences between red, blue, green, and yellow, but each of these differences is ultimate and incomparable with the others Now, if the physical nature of colour be a certain kind of periodic change, these ultimate and incomparable differences between the specific colours reduce to the single numerical difference of frequency.

(iv) The various generic qualities, such as colour, temperature, etc , are wholly incomparable with each other and cannot be regarded as species of any one genus But, if the physical nature of colour be periodic motion of particles of a certain form of magnitude, and the physical nature of heat be violent irregular motion of particles of a certain other order of magnitude, it is evident that there is a generic unity among the physical natures which is lacking among the qualities themselves

It is clear that the assumptions implied in the Principle of Limited Variety do actually work in practice, since it is in accordance with this principle that the body of knowledge which we call "Science" has been built up And the inductive conclusions reached in accordance with it will *strengthen* its initial probability.

CHAPTER XXVI.

OBSERVATION.

1. The Basis of Science.—All the sciences aim at explaining the facts of experience It is, therefore, evident that they must rest on an exact knowledge of those facts When the facts are wrongly thought, the theories invented to explain them will be erroneous. But knowledge of facts is gained in the ultimate resort only by observation Not only at the beginning of an investigation, but throughout its whole course, the enquirer must get in touch with facts

Hence, logic must recognise that observation is an integral part of an inductive enquiry, and though no formal rules can be laid down for its conduct, yet its nature must be examined So will appear the general conditions of sound and fruitful observation, and the general ways in which observation is most liable to error

Now when we simply observe, without attempting to change in any way what we are observing, we have observation pure and simple—observation in its most direct form. The analysis of the phenomena we are studying is purely mental. When we attempt to modify and determine what we are observing we have observation brought into bondage to the purposes of our thought, and made to answer definite questions. This is experiment, the great hand-maiden of science.

Science is, however, a co-operative movement in which each worker avails himself of the results of others Such results are communicated in speech or writing. Sometimes they can be tested by fresh observations, at others they cannot. Then the whole basis of the structure built upon them rests on the accuracy of the reports of the original observations. With this also logic is concerned So our enquiry branches out in a three-fold direction, and we must consider in turn the nature of observation, of experiment, and of testimony

2. Simple Observation.—To observe seems simplicity itself, and in any particular case we find it difficult to believe that "the testimony of our senses" cannot be implicitly trusted. Doubtless we grant that we *have* made mistakes—we have taken a stranger for a friend, we have misunderstood what was said to us; we have read words in the printed page which were not there instead of those that were But at the moment of experience nothing seems more certain than this testimony. What we see, hear, touch, taste, or smell, has an impressive directness which admits of doubt much less readily than do constructions of our thought which are not determined by immediate sense-experience So also we find it hard to believe that our memories of such experiences are at fault, yet careful examination has proved that this is so to the extent of at least twenty-five per cent Indeed, there is nothing more common than for "the senses to play us false" as we say. It is a commonplace that only the artist's eye observes the colours of a scene, light and shade, as they are. Every illusion tells the same tale

"When I look at a brick viaduct, a mile or two off, I appear to myself to recognise its redness In fact, however, the impression of colour which I receive from the object is not that of brick red at all, but a much less decided tint, which I may easily prove by bending my head downwards and letting the scene image itself on the retina in an unusual way."[1] Moreover, the observer tends to experience what he expects to experience 'An officer who superintended the exhuming of a coffin rendered necessary through a suspicion of crime, declared that he already experienced the odour of decomposition, though it was afterwards discovered that the coffin was empty."[2] It is the same with observations carried out for scientific purposes The astronomer who is watching for the appearance of a particular star will tend to see the first ray of light before it comes within his line of vision. Important points are equally likely to be omitted. Before the labours of Venetz many keen geologists had worked in valleys once occupied by glaciers, and failed to see the evident marks of glacial action There is, therefore, more in observation than the bare reception of impressions through the senses It involves also interpretation and selection

---

[1] Sully, *Illusions*, p 88

[2] *Ibid*, p 108.

It is here that we find the possibility of error It is certain that physiologically each external stimulus leads to the appropriate nervous response If we mistake a stranger for a friend, it is not because the nervous response is false, for this is purely physiological, and as such can be neither true nor false, it is because the response is accompanied by a false belief. Beliefs are not evoked by every stimulation of the sense organs, nor are all those beliefs, which are evoked by such stimulation, inferences, they may be merely interpretations determined by past experiences

In practice the line between interpretation and inference may be difficult to make, but in theory the distinction is clear, for, while an interpretation is a belief determined by past experience which in no way constitutes evidence for the belief, an inference is based upon factors which can be explicitely formulated as evidence If a man looks at an orange and says "That's a Jaffa," he is stating what is certainly not given directly by the sense impressions which reach his eye. The judgment is immediate and does not point to anything beyond itself which would justify the statement, that is to say, it is an interpretation causally determined by past experience. But if the question was asked, "How do you know?" he might proceed to call attention to the shape, and to assert that all Jaffa oranges have the same shape, namely that of the example before him, and hence that his original assertion was correct To strengthen his conclusion he might add that it could not be any other variety, for instance a Tangerine, because of the absence of certain characteristics of size and so forth by which that variety is distinguished. In this case he would be inferring, not simply interpreting.

When this inference is made explicit it is seen to take the form of a syllogism in the second figure—

Jaffas have qualities *a b c*,
This orange has the qualities *a b c*,
Therefore, this orange is a Jaffa

The fact that the middle term is undistributed shows that formally the conclusion is only one of a greater or less amount of probability hence, the possibility of error

We have dealt with the very simple case of recognition because it is evident that if that involves inference, and is liable to error, much more will this be the case with the more elaborate observations on which science is built Throughout, observation is seen to depend not simply or even mainly on the integrity and firmness of the senses, but on the adequacy of the interpretation and the accuracy of the inference

We have pointed out that always the greater part of the sense impressions we receive pass unnoticed in other words that all observation is *selective.* What we select to observe is determined by the purpose in hand, that is by the explicit or implicit question our minds ask of reality The fruitfulness of our observation will depend on the perfection of our choice. And this is also inference, guided by pertinent knowledge. For we may disregard what is really essential In the days when chemistry was almost exclusively qualitative, the weight of the products of chemical action, though occasionally recorded, was regarded as unimportant It was not until the time of Cavendish and Lavoisier that this quality was selected as of the first importance in chemical enquiry. Nor would it have occurred to them to give such prominence to the balance had they not been expert chemists as well as men of insight

On the other hand the selection may be vitiated by laying too much stress on what is trivial and incidental

But how can the selection be rightly made ? There are no rules. Both the intelligence with which the phenomena to be observed are selected, and the power of finding meaning in the observations when they are made, depend upon the character of the mind of the observer—not only upon previous knowledge, though that is essential, but also upon that special insight which marks the true discoverer. A strict impartiality open to every impression would defeat itself, but to appraise correctly what is presented requires abundant knowledge in the department of science to which the investigation belongs.

Moreover, the growing recognition of a fundamental unity in the sciences emphasises strongly the need for a considerable acquaintance with sciences which are collateral with the particular one which the worker has made his own Only so can the facts be appreciated at their true worth What is found in any object examined is largely determined by what the mind brings to the examination A piece of machinery means more to an engineer than to an observer with equally good sense-organs who is ignorant of machinery, the former, indeed, actually *sees* more in it than does the latter

It is the same in the domain of scientific research. Count Rumford in 1798 "while engaged in the boring of brass cannon at the military arsenal in Munich . . was struck by the high temperature of the metallic chips thrown off, and by the excessive development of heat during the process"[1] The observation was not barren, for it led him to make certain experiments by which he showed that there was a relation between work done and the amount of heat generated, though it was left to Joule to determine the relation exactly Yet the facts must have been perfectly familiar to the workmen engaged · to the mind of the Count, prepared by wider knowledge, they meant more

After some time spent in the pursuit of any branch of knowledge, an investigator comes to recognise almost intuitively the kind of conditions to which it will be well for him to give heed His increasing knowledge makes it possible for him to detect with greater readiness the bearing of the facts as they are given, and so to isolate in thought the essential from the unessential But there will always remain individual differences in knowledge and in insight "The rôle of the mere observer must always be a humble one, even in the case of those sciences which offer him the most abundant scope. The true 'seer,' indeed, is the rarest of all discoverers: but the true seer is one who brings to his observation more than he finds in it The drudgery of the patient interrogator of nature is made divine only when it is inspired by ideas which are not objects of observation "[1]

---

[1] Preston, *Theory of Heat*, p 39

3. Danger of Bias.—Since the mind has so large a share in the practice of observation it is difficult, even with the utmost candour and a sincere desire for truth, to distinguish what is perceived from what is inferred The difficulty is rendered greater by the liability of most men to be unconsciously the victims of bias and prejudice Beliefs that have been handed down by tradition or that are the outcome of previous investigation become hardened by use and custom until they are acted on as inviolable truths Prepossessed by such shadows of knowledge men are apt to attend only to those facts which support their prejudices or preconceived theories, and to neglect those that tell against them, or even it may be to explain them away in the interests of their prior notions

Before the discovery of oxygen, bodies when heated were thought to give off a special substance named 'phlogiston' When it was found that metals so heated became heavier, the apparent contradiction was resolved by supposing phlogiston to have a negative weight which diminished the true weight of compounds in which it was present So the theory was saved, and the progress of chemistry retarded [2]

The difficulty is especially felt when a possible explanation of certain phenomena has been conceived, and an appeal is being made to the facts to establish the truth or falsity of the conception The mind is apt to hold fast with a singular tenacity to theories of its own invention, and "it is difficult to find persons who can with perfect fairness register facts for and against their own peculiar views "[3] It is, therefore, essential to cultivate an attitude of detachment towards the hypotheses which guide for the time being the course of enquiry This implies an equal readiness to give due weight to instances which appear to negate the suggested explanation as well as to those which strengthen it, and, if need be, to banish ruthlessly the most cherished theory which runs counter to the facts

---

[1] Mackenzie, *Introd to Social Philosophy*, p 13

[2] See Von Meyer, *History of Chemistry*, Ch iv

[3] Jevons, *Principles of Science*, p 402

The qualities of mind which disregard the influence of bias cannot be brought under logical rules They may be summed up in the requirement that the observer should incessantly submit himself to the discipline of fact "Man must submit his idea to nature as it were tremblingly, and if nature rejects it, he must not stiffen himself against her, and take upon himself, which were a useless thing to do, to lesson her, laying down for her the law . he must yield to nature and renounce his idea "[1]

4. Scientific Instruments.—If men were confined to their unaided senses as means of observation the area of knowledge would be considerably contracted Each sense has but a limited range, and there are some natural phenomena, such as those of electricity, for the direct detection of which no sense exists But what cannot be directly perceived may be prepared for observation by the use of scientific instruments. An object too small or too distant to be seen, a sound too low to be heard, are rendered evident by microscope, telescope, or microphone So also an event too swift, a scene too extensive to leave a clear impression on the retina may be faithfully recorded on the photographic plate . the composite structure of light which the eye has no power to decompose is revealed through the spectroscope

To extend the range of observation is not the only service which instruments can render they also increase its exactness We can judge weight by the hand, but not with the accuracy of the balance we can distinguish temperature by the skin as greater or less, but not with the certainty of the thermometer. And in many ways phenomena may be registered and measured which would either escape detection altogether or which would be imperfectly realised in their quantitative relations.

Now all scientific instruments have grown out of previous knowledge, and embody much knowledge in themselves. They contribute greatly, therefore, to the advance of science. But their use is dependent for its accuracy and fruitfulness on the qualities of the observer Only a man of great skill and well-versed in science can employ many of the most accurate instruments, because he alone can turn to practical account the knowledge they embody, and can detect and allow for errors incidental to their use. "Skill in modern laboratory work is as far out of the reach of the untaught as performance on a musical instrument"[1]

---

[1] Rabier, *Logique*, p 103.

In many cases the use of instruments makes no change in the phenomena, but only in the conditions under which they are observed It is still observation, but it implies not only the interpretation implicit in all observation, but also the inference involved in applying the knowledge embodied in the instrument Thus we may have to infer that the object focussed in the microscope is one hundred times smaller than it looks, or that a certain deflection of the galvanometer indicates a current of a certain strength The accuracy of the observation depends upon the precision with which the instrument records differences, as well as on the competence of the observer

5. Observation by Experiment.—The use of scientific instruments is one aspect of the transition from simple observation to experiment It is better to regard it in this light than to speak of the modified arrival of sense-impressions of phenomena through instruments as being really experiment The latter name is not appropriate unless the instrument modifies the object which is being observed

Thus we invariably speak of *observing* with a telescope or a microscope. The distinction is very clearly put by Dr. Bosanquet. "The fact is then that experiment is not merely observation under artificial and determinable conditions but *observation under determinate conditions which constitute an integral part of the image or product to be observed.* Thus common dissection is not experiment, though it introduces conditions in the way of separation and demarcation as definite as anything can be · but vivisection is experiment, because the determinate conditions it produces enter as factors into the action of the organism observed."[1] This raises the further question as to the relation between observation in general and experiment

---

[1] Sir T. Clifford Allbutt, Article on *Medicine* in *Enc Brit*, eleventh ed.

The end aimed at in observation is a full and exact knowledge of all the conditions without which the phenomena observed would not occur. If these conditions were presented in isolation, the task of the observer would be comparatively simple. But this is not the case They are as it were overlaid with many other elements which obscure them from view, and often an analysis which is purely mental is not sufficient to get rid of these factors which do not directly contribute to the result under investigation By varying as much as possible the circumstances under which the observation is made something may be done to eliminate what is unessential If at different times and in different places with varied surroundings we find the same features recurring again and again, there is some probability that their persistence amid considerable change is an indication that among them the true conditions are at least included To that extent the area of enquiry is narrowed

Such observation under varied circumstances is closely akin to experiment, and differs from it only in degree This has been well expressed by Jevons, who gives to it the name of " natural experiment," and thus describes his meaning—

"It may readily be seen that we pass upwards by insensible gradations from pure observation to determinate experiment When the earliest astronomers simply noticed the ordinary motions of the sun, moon, and planets upon the face of the starry heavens, they were pure observers But astronomers now select precise times and places for important observations of stellar parallax, or the transits of planets. They make the earth's orbit the basis of a well arranged *natural experiment*, as it were, and take well considered advantage of motions which they cannot control. Meteorology might seem to be a science of pure observation, because we cannot possibly govern the changes of weather which we record Nevertheless we may ascend mountains or rise in balloons, like Gay-Lussac and Glaisher, and may thus so vary the points of observation as to render our procedure experimental We are wholly unable either to produce or prevent earth-currents of electricity, but when we construct long lines of telegraph, we gather such strong currents during periods of disturbance as to render them capable of easy observation "[1]

---

[1] *Logic*, Vol ii., p 145

But the observer, whether he has recourse to simple observation or to "natural experiment," is hampered in his endeavours to discover the essential conditions of phenomena. He cannot go far by those means alone, for he is compelled to wait on nature Now nature may present him with instances in abundance, but of such complexity that he cannot disentangle them. On the other hand, they may be of such rarity that adequate investigation becomes difficult or impossible Again, there are processes of nature as swift and transient as the lightning, and others so slow and gentle that they escape observation As Lavoisier remarked, the decomposition of water has been continually going on, though none had observed it before his time

But however alert and active the mind of the observer may be, his activity in every case is limited to the examination of conditions that he can neither determine nor modify. He must make the best of what is given him. It is here that experiment comes to the aid of simple observation by supplying a means of control over natural conditions. By isolation and combination of physical agents it can so manipulate them as to determine in many cases the conditions under which the phenomena to be examined occur Such definitely determined observation is what is meant by experiment.

Wherever experiment is possible it will clearly be advantageous to resort to it in preference to simple observation. Instead of the medley of conditions, some known, others unknown which nature presents, there will be an assemblage of conditions in greater part determined by the observer, and therefore known. Whatever is irrelevant or likely in any way to interfere with the phenomena under investigation will be as far as possible excluded. Factors believed to affect the result will, so far as they are under control, be varied in intensity and introduced or removed at will, and the differences, if any, will be carefully noted In this way those conditions which are unessential will be eliminated with greater accuracy and certainty than would be possible to a purely mental analysis

---

[1] *Principles of Science*, pp 400-1.

Moreover there is no long waiting on nature Experiments can be repeated as often as is necessary. They may be devised so as to produce effects that throw an important light on phenomena, although these effects are never produced by nature herself "Experiment *invents* original phenomena which nature left to herself never realises, for example, the fall of bodies in a vacuum, the liquefaction of hydrogen and oxygen. The chemist creates in his laboratory many compound bodies which do not exist outside it"[1] In this way knowledge advances more surely and rapidly than would be possible were men confined to simple observation It is only by the use of experiment that instances can be sufficiently varied in the points of identity and difference to show clearly and simply what the essential conditions are And these can often be determined with a quantitative precision

It would therefore be a mistake to set up any opposition between observation and experiment Both aim at establishing the exact conditions upon which phenomena depend, but the element of control in the latter case makes observation more efficient than it would otherwise be Indeed, it is not too much to say that without experiment physics and chemistry would have been unable to make any serious advance.

There are, however, other departments of knowledge in which observation must always be the prime resource. Some natural processes are so slow that experiment is impossible. The geologist, for example, in tracing the history of the earth is confined to observation as to the structure and formation of rocks and the occurrence of fossils; the biologist is unable to experiment on the evolution of species; the historian cannot experiment with the past. On other grounds the doctor and the politician are limited in the experiments it is permissible to make.

---

[1] Rabier, *La Logique*, p 115

6. Aim of Experiment.—Appeal to experiment is, then, necessary whenever simple observation alone will not make plain all the essential conditions of a phenomenon; and its object is to eliminate all conditions which are not specially operative in the particular case under consideration When this has been done successfully we have one or more hypothetical judgments of the form *If S is a then it is x.* Here *x* will stand for a known element in the phenomenon and *a* for the condition upon which it invariably and necessarily depends Now we can only be sure that this relation is invariable and necessary if we establish the reciprocal proposition: *If S is x then it is a* as well as the pure hypothetical, *If S is a it is x* There is no other way of doing this than by examining instances of the absence of *a* (*a'*), and so trying to show that when *a* is absent, *x* is also absent (*x'*); in other words to establish the judgment *If S is a' then it is x'*. Hence in every conclusive experiment there is comparison of the phenomenon both in the presence and in the absence of that particular condition we are investigating

An illustration which was formerly often given in this was that of the "undulatory" *versus* the "corpuscular" theory of Light Newton, in view of the laws of elastic collision of bodies, was led to adopt the theory that Light consisted of elastic particles of extreme minuteness *shot out* with extreme velocity by luminous bodies, and that these particles when approaching a non-luminous body were subject to gravitational attraction Newton was able to apply this theory to the *reflection* and *refraction* of Light. The rival theory was that Light consisted of undulations or waves in a non-gravitational medium (the so-called "ether"). This theory explained not only reflection and refraction but many other familiar phenomena of experimental optics Now when these two theories were analysed *in their original forms,* it was found that, according to the corpuscular or emission theory the velocity of Light should be greater in water than in air, while according to the undulatory theory, the velocity of Light should be greater in air than in water The difficulties of an experimental test of this were surmounted in the middle of the nineteenth century, and the velocity of Light was found to be greater in air The undulatory theory in its original form, held the field We say " in its original form," because since then both theories have been revised and have taken a new form, in consequence of which the whole question has been re-opened and is now under experimental and theoretical investigation [1] The difficulty arises from the fact that the negative instances (*i e* cases of the absence of the particular condition which we are investigating) must be experimentally constructed, and the extent of the field over which we must range in assembling negative instances is a question which the trained investigator, possessing wide and accurate knowledge of the subject, alone can decide.

To render a negative experiment conclusive is therefore difficult, though it is at the same time essential Such a conclusion can be justified only on the assumption that our analysis excludes all inoperative elements and them only. But in every investigation, owing to the incompleteness of our knowledge, there is a residue of unanalysed phenomena which is regarded as indifferent to the relation we are trying to establish, and this in addition to those elements which are disregarded because previous knowledge of their nature makes it improbable that they need be considered in the given case. The exclusion of possible conditions in either of these directions may be at fault Such an arbitrary limitation can only be made with any probability of justification by one who has large and varied, as well as systematic knowledge, both of the subject under investigation and of kindred subjects. For effective experiment, even more than effective observation, is conditioned by the knowledge and insight of the man of science who devises the experiment, whether he carries it out himself or not.

---

[1] See Westaway, *Scientific Method,* 4th edn , Ch xli (" Particles or Waves "), and Stebbing, *Modern Introduction to Logic,* p 307 See also Ch xxxi , § 6, below.

In all cases where the phenomena are complex this limitation through exclusion is, therefore, liable to error. Such error can only be detected by extremely careful and varied experiments to determine whether any condition is operative which has not been suspected, and had, therefore, been relegated to the realm of concomitants that it is thought need not be taken into consideration. An experiment of Pouchet affords a striking example—"He filled a bottle with boiling water, hermetically sealed it with the greatest care, and plunged it upside down into a basin of mercury. When the water was quite cold he uncorked the bottle under the metal, and introduced into it half-a-litre of pure oxygen gas . . . [He] then introduced a minute bunch of hay which had been enclosed in a corked bottle, and exposed in a stove for a long time to a temperature of more than 100 degrees"[1] Living organisms developed in the hay. He concluded that since he had excluded all germs from the water, the hay, and the oxygen, life had been spontaneously generated "Pasteur thus criticised the experiment of Pouchet 'This experiment is irreproachable, but irreproachable only on those points which have attracted the attention of its author. I will demonstrate before you that there is a cause of error which M Pouchet has not perceived, which he has not in the least suspected . I will prove to you, in short, that it is the mercury which carries the germs into the vessels' . "[2] A number of experiments were carried out which established the truth of this assertion.

7. Fallacies Incident to Observation.—As all inductive inference starts from concrete phenomena as the basis of every hypothesis, and continually returns to concrete phenomena as the test of accuracy, it is evident that its validity depends directly upon the correctness and perfection of the observations of reality upon which it is based. But observation of given phenomena is a process of extreme difficulty and delicacy, and, consequently, one in which it is very easy to go wrong The conditions which must be fulfilled by a perfect observation have already been set forth We will now consider the main kinds of error to which observation is liable. Error which is due to mere personal idiosyncrasy or to carelessness, we are, of course, not concerned with Logic only considers those sources of error to which observers in general are subject.

---

[1] *Louis Pasteur*, p. 95

[2] *Louis Pasteur*, p 96.

In the first place, then, as Mill points out, " a fallacy of misobservation may be either negative or positive; either Non-observation or Mal-observation It is non-observation when all the error consists in overlooking, or neglecting, facts or particulars which ought to have been observed. It is mal-observation when something is not simply unseen, but seen wrong, when the fact or phenomenon, instead of being recognised for what it is in reality, is mistaken for something else "[1] It will be most convenient to consider these two classes of imperfect observation in succession

(1) NON-OBSERVATION —It has been pointed out that all observation implies selection and isolation of phenomena. In making this selection it is evidently easy to overlook or to neglect either instances or conditions which are pertinent to the matter in hand The former would be most likely to happen in the earliest stage of inductive enquiry, when by simple enumeration of instances an attempt is made to determine exactly what is the character of the phenomena to be explained The latter would be most easily committed at a later stage of the process, when an analysis of phenomena has been entered on for the purpose of testing and moulding a hypothesis.

(*a*) *Neglect of Instances* Probably the most fertile source of the error of passing over instances pertinent to the subject in hand is bias. We have a natural tendency to dwell upon instances which make for the theory we would like to see established, or which we have hitherto held, and to treat as of no importance those which make against it, or even to neglect to consider them at all. A striking example of this is mentioned by Mill :—

---

[1] *Logic*, V, iv, § 1.

"The opponents of Copernicus argued that the earth did not move, because if it did, a stone let fall from the top of a high tower would not reach the ground at the foot of the tower, but at a little distance from it, in a contrary direction to the earth's course ; in the same manner (said they) as, if a ball is let drop from the mast-head while the ship is in full sail, it does not fall exactly at the foot of the mast, but nearer to the stern of the vessel The Copernicans would have silenced these objectors at once if they had *tried* dropping a ball from the mast-head, since they would have found that it does fall exactly at the foot, as the theory requires : but no , they admitted the spurious fact and struggled vainly to make out a difference between the two cases."[1]

This influence of bias is not surprising when it is remembered how largely observation involves implicit inference and is guided by previous knowledge

A very common form in which non-observation of instances appears is when attention is directed to positive instances, whilst negative instances are neglected This originates in a kind of natural tendency of the mind to be impressed by any occurrence and to omit to notice non-occurrence To this are due many superstitions which take the general form of attributing causal connection to what is merely casual coincidence For instance, the belief in the prophetic character of dreams is based upon taking note of the few cases in which a dream bears some resemblance to succeeding or simultaneous events, and passing over entirely those infinitely more numerous cases in which the dream is not 'fulfilled' The theory of probability would prepare us to expect some such coincidences—especially as a small degree of resemblance is always liberally interpreted—and that without any necessary connection

"In former generations," remarks Dr Fowler, "'coincidences' of this kind were regarded not simply as 'curious' and 'remarkable,' but as proofs of some causal connection between the events. To talk of a person was supposed to render his presence more likely; a verified prediction was regarded as evidence of second-sight, and a comet which was observed to be followed by a war was supposed to be, if not the cause of the war, at least a messenger sent from Heaven to proclaim its approach "[1]

---

[1] *Logic*, V., iv , § 3.

Here the unconscious influence of bias and prejudice plays an important part—"He answered well, who, when the pictures of those who had fulfilled their vows after escaping the peril of shipwreck were shown him hung up in a temple, and he was pressed with the question, did he not after this acknowledge the Providence of the Gods, asked in his turn, 'But where are they painted who, after vowing, perished?' The same is the method of almost every superstition, as in astrology, in dreams, omens, judgments, and the like, in which men who take pleasure in such vanities as these attend to the event when it is a fulfilment, but where they fail (though it be much the more frequent case), there they neglect the instance, and pass it by "[2]

One other danger of non-observation must be noticed—the tendency to infer that because a phenomenon has never been noticed it is non-existent To what extent such an inference is justifiable depends upon the improbability that the phenomenon would have escaped observation had it existed. As Jevons says, "The earth's surface has been sufficiently searched to render it highly improbable that any terrestrial animals of the size of a camel remain to be discovered "[3] But the smaller the phenomenon the more likely it is to escape observation A good instance of this is the length of time during which the existence of argon, as a constituent of the atmosphere, was unsuspected

When a proposition is accepted on merely negative evidence, care should be taken to make that evidence as complete as possible. An excellent example of this care is seen in the investigations which led Darwin, on purely negative evidence, to conclude that certain orchids secrete no nectar. Many observations both of German naturalists and of Darwin himself seemed to point to this conclusion, but, says Darwin . "Notwithstanding these several facts I still suspected that nectar must be secreted by our common Orchids, and I determined to examine *O morio* rigorously. As soon as many flowers were open, I began to examine them for twenty-three consecutive days . I looked at them after hot sunshine, after rain, and at all hours . I kept the spikes in water, and examined them at midnight, and early the next morning : I irritated the nectaries with a bristle, and exposed them to irritating vapours I took flowers which had lately had their pollinia removed by insects, of which fact I had independent proof on one occasion by finding grains of some foreign pollen within the nectary , and I took other flowers which, judging from their position on the spike, would soon have had their pollinia removed , but the nectary was invariably quite dry . . .

---

[1] *Inductive Logic*, p 256.

[2] Bacon, *Novum Organon*, tr by Kitchin, § 46.

[3] *Op. cit*, p 412

"I one day saw various kinds of bees visiting repeatedly the flowers of this same Orchid, so that this was evidently the proper time to examine their nectaries , but I failed to detect under the microscope even the minutest drop of nectar So it was with the nectaries of *O maculata* at a time when I repeatedly saw flies of the genus Empis keeping their proboscides inserted into them for a considerable length of time. *Orchis pyramidalis* was examined with equal care with the same result, for the glittering points within the nectary were absolutely dry We may therefore safely conclude that the nectaries of the above-named Orchids neither in this country nor in Germany ever contain nectar "[1]

(*b*) *Neglect of Operative Conditions* In every examination of concrete reality a residue of unanalysed elements remains, and this opens out a possibility of leaving out of consideration some element which is an essential part of the phenomena we are investigating The whole intention of all inductive methods is to eliminate those elements, and those elements only, which are not operative in respect to the aspect of reality under examination

In a science still so largely in the empirical stage as medicine this fallacy is still not unknown and was formerly extremely common. Take as an instance Kenelm Digby's sympathetic powder which in the seventeenth century attracted considerable attention even from scientific men "The sympathetic powder was that which cured by anointing the weapon with its salve instead of the wound I have long been convinced that it was efficacious. The directions were to keep the wound clean and cool, and to take care of diet, rubbing the salve on the knife or sword If we remember the dreadful notions upon drugs which prevailed, both as to quantity and quality, we shall readily see that any way of *not* dressing the wound would have been useful "[1] Those who attributed the cure to the powder committed the error of overlooking the essential circumstances that nature was left to her own devices under favourable conditions for effecting a cure

---

[1] *Fertilization of Orchids*, pp 38-9.

Owing to the complexity of the phenomona, all inductions connected with social and economic subjects are particularly liable to this form of fallacy An increase in the number of convictions for any particular crime must not be taken as a necessary proof of an increase in that particular form of criminality, it may be due to greater vigilance on the part of the police An excellent example, given by Mill, is the following —

"Take, for instance, the common notion, so plausible at the first glance, of the encouragement given to industry by lavish expenditure A, who spends his whole income, and even his capital, in expensive living, is supposed to give great employment to labour. B, who lives on a small portion, and invests the remainder in the funds, is thought to give little or no employment For everybody sees the gains which are made by A's tradesmen, servants, and others, while his money is spending B's savings, on the contrary, pass into the hands of the person whose stock he purchased, who with it pays a debt he owed to some banker, who lends it again to some merchant or manufacturer, and the capital being laid out in hiring spinners and weavers, or carriers and the crews of merchant vessels, not only gives immediate employment to at least as much industry as A employs during the whole of his career, but, coming back with increase by the sale of the goods which have been manufactured or imported, forms a fund for the employment of the same and perhaps a greater quantity of labour in perpetuity.

---

[1] De Morgan, *Budget of Paradoxes*, p 66.

"But the observer does not see, and therefore does not consider what becomes of B's money, he does see what is done with A's he observes the amount of industry which A's profusion feeds, he observes not the far greater quantity which it prevents from being fed, and thence the prejudice, universal to the time of Adam Smith, that prodigality encourages industry, and parsimony is a discouragement to it"[1]

(2) MAL-OBSERVATION —By mal-observation is meant the wrong interpretation of sense impressions It has been pointed out that all observation involves the interpretation by past experience of what is perceived by the senses, and also inference Such interpretation and inference may be inadequate for various reasons When this is so it is called mal-observation The rustic who takes a tombstone brightened by the rays of the moon for a ghost, or who interprets a donkey's bray as the voice of a departed ancestor, falls into the fallacy we are now considering All 'conjurer's tricks' appeal to the innate facility with which mankind observes badly.

It is, however, never the senses that are wrong, the sensuous impression as received is just what it must be under the circumstances, in the meaning given to that impression the error will always be found to lurk, and this, to repeat, is determined either by past experience or by inference. One of the most striking examples of mal-observation was the universal acceptance of the Ptolemaic solar system for many centuries As Mill remarks "People fancied they *saw* the sun rise and set, the stars revolve in circles round the pole. We now know that they saw no such thing, what they really saw was a set of appearances equally reconcilable with the theory they held and with a totally different one."[2]

---

[1] *Op cit*, V, iv, § 4

[2] *Op cit*, V, iv, § 5.

Sometimes we find ourselves practically unable to interpret our sense impressions rightly, and we are then said to labour under an illusion. "To give one or two . . . examples of the kind of illusion which the senses practise on us or rather which we practise on ourselves, by a misinterpretation of their evidence: the moon at its rising and setting appears much larger than when high up in the sky This is, however, a mere erroneous judgment, for when we come to measure its diameter, so far from finding our conclusion borne out by fact, we actually find it to measure materially less Here is eyesight opposed to eyesight, with the advantage of deliberate measurement

"In ventriloquism we have the hearing at variance with all the other senses, and especially with the sight, which is sometimes contradicted by it in a very extraordinary and surprising manner, as when the voice is made to seem to issue from an inanimate and motionless object If we plunge our hands, one into ice-cold water, and the other into water as hot as can be borne, and, after letting them stay awhile, suddenly transfer them both to a vessel full of water at blood-heat, the one will feel a sensation of heat, the other of cold And if we cross the two first fingers of one hand, and place a pea in the fork between them, moving and rolling it about on a table, we shall (especially if we close our eyes) be fully persuaded we have two peas If the nose be held while we are eating cinnamon, we shall perceive no difference between its flavour and that of a deal shaving"[1]

The history of science presents us with many instances of mal-observation "A vague and loose mode of looking at facts very easily observable, left men for a long time under the belief that a body, ten times as heavy as another, falls ten times as fast,—that objects immersed in water are always magnified, without regard to the form of the surface;—that the magnet exerts an irresistible force,—that crystal is always found associated with ice;—and the like These and many others are examples how blind and careless men can be, even in observation of the plainest and commonest appearances, and they show us that the mere faculties of perception, although constantly exercised upon innumerable objects, may long fail in leading to any exact knowledge "[1]

---

[1] Herschel, *Natural Philosophy*, § 72.

Dangerous as this fallacy is, logic can neither give special rules for avoiding it, nor determine when it has been committed. The latter point is decided by further advance in that particular branch of knowledge On the former the only rule that can be given is the very general one that every observer should equip himself with as much definite knowledge as he possibly can both of the subject under investigation and of cognate subjects

---

[1] Whewell, *Novum Organon Renovatum*, p 61.

CHAPTER XXVII.

TESTIMONY.

1. Importance of Testimony.—The range of direct experience even for the most versatile and gifted of men is extremely small. Were the individual dependent upon it alone for his knowledge his mental outlook would be narrow, and he could neither impart the results of his experience to others nor become acquainted with their achievements, the co-operative movement of science as well as a large part of ordinary life would be non-existent But men communicate the knowledge they acquire to one another, and so contribute both to individual good and to general progress Where the communication relates to observations that any competent person may repeat, there is an independent check on accuracy. The first announcement of the discovery of radium and certain of its properties is not the sole authority on which the facts have been accepted many workers have tested and confirmed the properties for themselves

So vast is the field of knowledge that no individual worker can cover the whole of the ground even in that portion which he seeks to make his own He must accept many of his data on authority, and leave the corroboration of them to others of his fellow-labourers The geographer could not possibly check the widely-scattered observations upon which his generalisations are founded, though each of them might be capable of verification So, too, in ordinary life, we are compelled to receive and act upon much of which we have neither the time, capacity, nor opportunity to make sure for ourselves. We accept London as a fact long before we ever see it, and when we do see it we do not confine our conception of it to the parts that we actually observe. Thus a good deal of the working knowledge both of life and of science is based on testimony.

Further, there are many occurrences which from their nature can never be repeated Where the check of independent repetition fails us, we are forced to a closer scrutiny of the source from which the information comes. In no other way, for example, can we sift the facts which form the foundation of history. The past is past, and is only known to us so far as some record of it remains. In studying it we cannot get into direct touch with the experiences we seek to understand . we know them only through the medium of one or many witnesses, who must go bail for the accuracy of the facts which they avouch If no reliance could be placed on testimony when it is backed up by no evidence but itself, it is unnecessary to say how large a part of historical and sociological knowledge would crumble away for want of support.

2. Value of Testimony.—Now it is obvious that testimony varies considerably in value Some we accept without hesitation, some of it as unhesitatingly we reject, while towards a good deal of it our attitude is one of suspended judgment

Every piece of testimony which is examined resolves itself, if only we can carry the analysis far enough, into an observation and a communication of the observation Each affords numerous opportunities for error Even the careful scientific observer, who in the quiet of his laboratory, or amid the restful scenes of nature, is most favourably situated for a calm concentration of his mind on the matter before him, is liable as we have seen to error. The danger of mistake is far greater when, as so often happens, the witness on whose testimony we are asked to rely was an active participator in scenes which he afterwards portrays Rarely has the narrator of an historical event observed it with no other intent than to make a record for posterity Add to this that any account even of the recent past will almost invariably reveal gaps due to imperfect recollection, and we see that a writer or speaker with a sincere desire to make his statements accurate may easily deceive himself, and hence in all good faith propagate the false as true

Unfortunately not only may a man be unwittingly deceived, he may of set purpose endeavour to deceive. In any particular case we must be satisfied beyond reasonable doubt that deception of either kind is absent before testimony can be accepted as a guarantee that what is testified is true. So great is the improbability of any individual being free from one or other of the two faults that it is commonly said that one witness to an event is no witness at all. Nor is convergent testimony by any means so conclusive as to be accepted at its face value

When we turn from the observer to the written records based upon his observations a fresh series of problems presents itself. The book or manuscript may not be what it purports to be. The relation of the writer to the sources of his information may be of all degrees of nearness, from that of eye-witness to that of the mere transcriber of oral tradition and legend. He may have idiosyncrasies of style or character which cast doubt on the accuracy of all he writes

Enough has been said to show that in whatever form testimony reaches us it must be subjected to careful sifting The aim is that the fact it attests be re-constituted for thought as it really was in the first instance This ideal is often impracticable But in any case such criticism can only attain a measure of success where special knowledge and skill are brought to bear on the task.

3. Criticism of Testimony.—As we have seen, there are two grounds upon which we may have reason to distrust a piece of testimony. There is the possibility that the author may know the truth, and yet deliberately misrepresent it. On the other hand he may in all good faith present a tissue of truth and falsity to us which he himself believes to be solely true. We are bound, therefore, to doubt whatever comes to us through this source alone, until we are convinced of the sincerity and accuracy of the witness who attests it.

But how can we determine whether a man is sincere or not in his statement of what came under his own observation? Obviously the enquiry is one of great difficulty. If we know something of the character of the man, we can estimate his general level of credibility; but as a rule the material for such an estimate is either scanty or, even if copious, conflicting.

There are, however, certain general motives which induce men to lie, and we may ask if anything in the character or circumstances of the witness makes it likely that they were operative. There are some men with a love of exaggeration which leads to habitual distortion of fact; others have an itching to speak, and cannot refrain from supplementing the defects of experience by the products of inference and imagination. Many are swollen with self-importance and allow vanity to credit them with fictions that enhance their reputation. Nor is it uncommon for a man to recount the false and marvellous simply because they are attractive to him. But perhaps the most powerful motive to lying is some form of self-interest. There may be the hope of personal gain, or the fear of impending harm; there may be a party to serve or a cause to condemn. Truth ceases to be of importance if only the end in view can be gained.

There is often no surface test by which to distinguish the false from the true; both wear an air of sincerity. Indeed, in the case of the false this will add to the deception. Literary skill is in itself a snare to a writer. The gorgeous epithet, the rounded phrase and eloquent period, are easily coined from the clippings of veracity. Men differ in the control they exercise over tendencies to insincerity, and all do not feel them in the same form or in the same strength. But whenever sincerity is jeopardised the reason should be ascertained if possible, and allowed for so far as it invalidates the extent to which the testimony can be received. If what is vouched for can be established or rejected by other means, then the good faith of the author ceases to have any logical interest. We are only concerned with it when it claims to be part of the guarantee of truth.

Sincerity is logically useless without *accuracy*, and that is not easy to secure. All direct testimony refers to something observed, and may be marred by any or all of the defects to which observation is subject. It is especially important to determine how far the recorder of a fact was in a position to observe correctly. It is seldom that testimony is confined to a single incident or series of incidents well within the range of an individual observer. Frequently the events described, either because of their complexity, or because of the wide area over which they are spread, cannot be perceived by one man alone.

Thus the description of a siege, for example, would be fragmentary and disconnected if confined to the direct experience of one of those engaged in the struggle. It would be a physical impossibility for him to take in all the essential details of, say, an assault or a sortie, and his duties might or might not have given him leisure for a general survey Moreover, many things would happen of which few would be cognisant at the time · as, for example, the daily consultations and plans of the leaders Hence the necessity of scrutinising the 'narrative of an eye-witness' in order to separate the details which, because of his location or circumstances, must have been supplied indirectly from those which in all probability came under his personal notice Men differ too in their capacity to seize the essential features of a situation One man carries away a confused impression where another swiftly marshals the details into an orderly whole

Prejudice may vitiate testimony as well as observation. A fact cannot be presented naked It must be clothed in words, and in this way we have a second source of inaccuracy. For even where the facts have been apprehended correctly, they may be woven together so as to create a false impression. We must discount, therefore, the sub-conscious bias from which few, if any, authors are entirely free. Enquiry should be made how far the writer has been led by his preconceived opinions to select particular aspects for description to the exclusion of others of equal importance, or how far he has grouped his facts to illustrate an idea which he did not find in them but brought to them We must disrobe the works of the 'whig historian' of their whiggish dress before we can see the truth they contain, nor would it be fair to accept without question the story of the downfall of Carthage as told by Roman writers. Prejudice may peep out in an epithet, and we must cut away all such disguised comment from what purports to be a faithful narration of fact

No matter what may be the protestations of authors to the contrary, love and hatred often exert an influence on their judgment and imagination of which they are quite unconscious.[1] And it is imperative to ascertain their likes and dislikes in order to eliminate all traces of partiality from what they record.

Memory in most men is notoriously treacherous. Its efficiency as a rule decreases with the lapse of time from the events which are recalled For this reason it is a sound demand in all the natural sciences that observations should be noted down at the time when they are made But it would be impossible to insist on a similar requirement in the case of all testimony The men whose writings furnish much of the raw material of history did not mingle in the affairs of life, whether as actors or spectators, note-book in hand · such a procedure is left to the professional reporter. Whether rough notes are made or not the written document is the fruit of recollection Then how many are the gaps that have to be filled in ! Inference and imagination lend their aid. Jagged edges are smoothed away, and a continuous story is composed which has all the air of a transcript from actual experience

The longer the interval, the more likely is the element of construction to preponderate An old man's memories suffuse the past with a mellow light, and facts often recalled soon cease to be distinguished from accretions and confusions which the years have brought with them It is so even for much shorter periods A few hours or a few days are often sufficient to blur a recollection

We must, therefore, ask how near to the actual occurrence is the writer's description of it, and how far was the event of such a kind that it would be recalled with ease and distinctness , and further, are there any indications that the writer's memory was in general trustworthy ? Add to this a critical scrutiny of the statement itself, and we may often make a fair estimate of the probability that certain details are due to the filling out of imperfect recollection by inference, or by imagination guided perhaps by a later opinion or prejudice

---

[1] Cf Casteleyn, *Logique*, p. 405

So far we have spoken of the testimony of a single person. But there may be several witnesses to the same fact. Taken singly each one may be open to doubt on the score of want of good faith and accuracy, and yet the total evidence may be strong. The untrustworthiness of each witness is not necessarily cumulative That they agree or disagree is in the nature of additional evidence Supposing it to be established that there has been no collusion between them, and that in no case are their statements derived from a common source, then their agreement on essential points indicates a strong probability that their testimony is true, while any discrepancy proves that one statement at least is false

This is all the more likely to be the case if there is considerable variation in detail Half a dozen people narrating the story of a fire are sure to differ in describing the several episodes but their diverse stories would be strong evidence as to the fact of the fire If certain witnesses agree while others disagree the conflicting accounts must be carefully compared It will not do merely to count the number for and against Every witness is not equally competent in all matters The opinion of the layman is usually of inferior weight to that of the expert

There are some facts of so improbable a nature that no amount of concordant testimony would lead us to accept them. Crowds as well as individuals are subject to illusion, and in all good faith report portents and prodigies. What at first sight is contrary to the order of nature as we know it is rightly subjected to severer tests than what appears as an exemplification or extension of laws with which we are familiar, though men may sometimes reject as incredible what is afterwards accounted true This antecedent probability or improbability of a fact affects the value of testimony "In certain cases the probability of the fact and the probability of testimony reinforce each other, but in other cases the improbability of the fact and the probability of testimony are counterbalanced: and indeed it may happen that the former will be sufficiently strong to destroy entirely the latter"[1]

4. Criticism of Indirect Testimony.—The greater part of testimony reaches us indirectly It is not often that the statement of an original witness lies before us. The historian as a rule presents material from various sources Even when he states facts on his own authority we may reasonably doubt whether more than a small proportion of them are due to him as an eye-witness. Contemporary evidence is valuable because it is given by one who is under the influence of the age in which he lived, and one very often in a position to ascertain the truth So far as the testimony is that of an eye-witness it must satisfy the requirements we have already set forth But if it represents facts that have been transmitted through the medium of one or more persons we must endeavour to trace them back to the source from whence they came

The first question to ask about any document will therefore be—Who was its author? The problem may be perfectly simple when we are dealing with a modern work, but in earlier times when an author did not scruple to issue his thoughts under a better known name and forgeries were common, and in all cases of anonymous writings, a critical examination of style and content is essential To this must be added, more especially in the case of manuscripts, an investigation directed to the establishment of the texts approximately as the writer wrote it The errors that are made in copying works that have come down to us in manuscript form are numerous and need special knowledge to detect Closely allied with these two enquiries will be the determination of the time when the document was first written All these matters may scarcely present themselves for special investigation in the case of comparatively recent works. But we cannot make an estimate of the value of testimony to fact in any writing until we have satisfied ourselves about its authenticity, integrity, and date.

Then we may begin the task of tracking to their source the statements of fact which the work contains. As a preliminary to this we shall endeavour to divest them of the comment or amplification in which they lie embedded. It is not often that the exact origin of the facts can be determined so that we are face to face with an original bit of testimony. For the most part the authority on which the author has relied will remain unknown, and hence it cannot be tested. We are not in a position to assess at their true worth the sincerity and accuracy of persons about whom we know nothing.

---

[1] Rabier, *Logique*, p 323.

At first sight it might seem a safe rule to reject anonymous statements as unworthy of credence But this must be taken with much abatement It would, for example, reject all newspaper records, which even the most sceptical among us would hardly be prepared to do Events do not stand in isolation from one another, nor do they come and go without leaving any trace behind. So we can often accept the evidence of one or more anonymous witnesses, because what is attested accords with the knowledge we have of the times or helps to explain the past more satisfactorily. Such testimony may even give the key to the results of an age which without it would be unintelligible.

Moreover we are sometimes in a position to test particular statements by an examination of monuments, coins, or other remains. And if the author stands this test successfully it gives a greater or less probability, according to circumstances, that the other parts of his evidence are trustworthy

The monuments, medals, coins, vases and other products of man which survive from the past must themselves be subject to criticism They too may flatter and lie or be misdated. Inscriptions are not always veracious They may err by excess of panegyric or by actual falsehood The English struck a medal commemorating the capture of Carthagena in 1740 by Admiral Vernon, though as a matter of fact the gallant admiral had raised the siege [1]

Where testimony takes the form of traditions handed down orally from generation to generation, there is often no way in which we can be sure whether they had their origin in truth or in fancy. Scarcely anyone can perceive and transmit faithfully an accurate account of even very simple transactions, and after a few repetitions the original is apt to be distorted almost beyond recognition. Even where tradition is embodied in poetic form errors in transmission accumulate. To find, as some profess to do, a kernal of truth in traditions whose source is lost in remote antiquity can never be justified as other than more or less reasonable conjecture. At most we can say that story and legend of this kind are valuable as affording some indication of customs, beliefs, and mode of life, in the time to which they owe their origin.

---

[1] Cf. Rabier, *op. cit.*, p 326.

Not only do men examine what an author has said, but not infrequently inferences are made from what he has not said. This is a tempting procedure whenever information on points of importance is scanty. It generally appears in the claim that an author must have mentioned a certain fact if such fact had been in existence. But the omissions of authors are apt to confound all conjecture. Logically the argument from silence is only admissible where the purpose of the writer was such that had the alleged fact omitted been true it would have been vital to his statement and would on no conceivable grounds have been suppressed.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

NATURE OF HYPOTHESES

1. Nature of Hypothesis.—Observation and testimony furnish facts which need interpretation if they are to find their true place in a system of knowledge To interpret them is to determine the relations which they hold to one another and to the rest of the sphere of knowledge to which they belong The mind must supply the interpretation, and so proceeds by inventing some provisional explanation which seems likely to account for the facts as they are If on further examination this explanation is proved to be true, it becomes a part of knowledge if false, it is rejected. In either case the explanation exists in the first instance as a supposition. Such a supposed relation suggested by the facts is termed a hypothesis

We are continually forming hypotheses Every supposition we make so as to account for any event whatever is a hypothesis No doubt it is customary to restrict the name to suppositions made in the scientific investigation of any subject, but these do not differ in original character from the hypotheses of common life The difference comes in later; the hypotheses of every-day life answer their purpose in a more or less rough and imperfect form, but the hypotheses of scientific thought need to be determined as completely and accurately as possible, till at length they satisfy all the demands made upon them as explanations of actual phenomena, and are accepted as demonstrated and established theories.

To such hypotheses our discussion will be confined, for logic deals only with scientific—that is, with exact and accurate—thought It must be remembered, however, that, as Clifford reminds us, "Scientific thought does not mean thought about scientific subjects with long names There are no scientific subjects The subject of science is the human universe, that is to say, everything that is, or has been, or may be related to man"[1] In scientific thought—no matter what the subject-matter may be—every regularity or irregularity in the occurrence of events for which no reason is apparent, every imperfectly understood or unexplained fact, is a call for a hypothesis And every hypothesis is a guide to further enquiry till the ultimate goal of explanation is reached

2. Origin of Hypotheses.—The modes in which hypotheses are suggested cannot be tabulated The process of suggestion is purely individual, and does not admit of general rules. Some hypotheses are so obvious that an acquaintance with the facts almost inevitably gives birth to them Others, and often the most far-reaching, require the insight of genius to fashion them Thus men differ much in their power and readiness to frame hypotheses One laboriously determines facts, but is slow to see their meaning Another has to prune the luxuriance of conjecture to him everything is suggestive. The man of scientific genius is fertile in suppositions, and quick to see their probable value A few of his discoveries may come as it were unsought, but the bulk of them are the result of definite lines of enquiry set on foot to test his own suppositions We cannot, then, eliminate the personal factor.

But although the suggestion of hypotheses depends so much upon the insight of the individual who conceives them, it is generally to the man with a wide knowledge of the order of facts under investigation that they occur Brilliant conjectures may flash across the unprepared mind, but they are apt to remain fruitless Perraudin, an intelligent Swiss hunter of chamois, conceived the idea that the huge blocks of rock scattered about the valley with which he was most familiar had been transported there by glacial action. But without the special knowledge and interests of the geologist he was unable to perceive the true significance of his observation [1]

---

[1] *Essays*, p 86.

Again, Pasteur prefaced his long investigation into the causes of disease among silkworms by making himself master of all that was then known on the subject It was this, added to his own great ability, which made him ready to see the bearing of the facts revealed by his microscopic examinations, and which gave point to the suppositions he founded on them Knowledge of facts and laws previously ascertained gives the power to detect what is new or exceptional, and so in need of further explanation It enables a man to give steadiness to his conjectures by basing them on what has already been done

It would be wrong to regard the hypothesis as a new creation It always incorporates past knowledge, and arises out of it It is for this reason that men of the same epoch often make the same discoveries or enunciate similar theories. The doctrine of evolution was taking shape in the minds of Darwin and Wallace at about the same time, Adams and Leverrier both predicted the existence of the planet Neptune. There is a general progress of science which while carried on by individuals is in a sense independent of particular individuals Thus it has been said that the invention of the calculus was bound to come about the time it did even though neither Newton nor Leibniz had thought of it On the other hand a bold conjecture may be before its time, and remain in oblivion because the state of knowledge does not admit of its development Thus Copernicus found the germ of his solar theory in an ancient writer. The hypotheses then that are destined to be fruitful are in close relation to the knowledge of the time, and it is obvious that a well-equipped mind is most likely to conceive them

This is evident, too, when the origin of the hypothesis has a largely accidental character For example, the laws of the internal structure of crystals were suggested to Hauy by his observing that in a crystal accidentally broken the fracture showed regular geometrical faces Similarly, " Malus chanced to look through a double refracting prism at the light of the setting sun, reflected from the windows of the Luxembourg Palace In turning the prism round, he was surprised to find that the ordinary image disappeared at two opposite positions of the prism. He remarked that the reflected light behaved like light which had been polarised by passing through another prism He was induced to test the character of light reflected under other circumstances, and it was eventually proved that polarisation is invariably connected with reflection "[1]

---

[1] Cf. Naville, *La Logique de l'Hypothèse*, p 42.

This latter case shows very clearly that, though accident had a share in the discovery of the connection of polarisation with reflection, yet it was an accident that would only have occurred to a student of optics And so it is generally in such cases. The accidental occurrence would be unnoticed by a mind not stored with knowledge of cognate classes of phenomena, but to such a mind it is rich in suggestion

The scientific worker whose mind is rich with the facts and laws pertaining to his special study is in a position to estimate the limits within which current explanations are satisfactory The perception of these limits defines to some extent what is unexplained, and suggests the direction in which hypotheses are still called for Frequently a phenomenon is explained by established laws, and yet there remains a discrepancy between the facts as they are observed and the facts as they would be if the known laws accounted for the whole phenomenon The orbit of the planet Uranus was observed to deviate from that which it would have followed if the attraction of the then known planets had been the sole influence of the kind to which it was subject The deviation led to the hypothesis that a planet as yet undiscovered existed, whose orbit was further removed from the sun than was that of Uranus This was proved to be correct by the discovery in 1846 of Neptune. The hypothesis could not have occurred to men unfamiliar with the achievements of mathematical astronomy

So in other sciences enquiry into slight deviations from known laws has led to many new discoveries But this source of suggestion of hypotheses is obviously open only to those already versed in the science to which the facts belong.

---

[1] Jevons, *Principles of Science*, p 530

It must not be supposed that the right hypothesis is necessarily suggested at once even to the man of knowledge and insight. As a rule there is rather a plurality of hypotheses which must be successively tested till all but one are, by disagreement with the facts, rejected These alternative hypotheses may be simultaneously or successively suggested, but only one is taken up at a time Thus Kepler records that he advanced nineteen hypotheses which he afterwards disproved, before he arrived at the true statement of the laws of planetary motion He was handicapped by the backward state of algebra in his day Had that study been more advanced than it actually was, it is probable that he would much sooner have hit upon his third law –that the squares of the periodic times of the several planets are proportional to the cubes of their mean distances from the sun. For, as Whewell says, "The process of connecting two classes of quantities by comparing their *powers* is obvious only to those who are already familiar with general algebraic views"[1]

The process of selecting out of the several suggestions that occur to the mind the one which finally does lead to a full explanation of the facts may go on rapidly or slowly. Sometimes a false hypothesis is dwelt on and its consequences worked out in detail before its inadmissibility becomes apparent, at others it is rejected almost as soon as formed Wrong hypotheses generally precede right ones, and that frequently in the same mind "To try wrong guesses is, with most persons, the only way to hit upon right ones."[2] It is not, however, pure unguided guesswork In most cases the attempts of previous enquirers have shown more or less plainly in what direction explanation must be sought; either by partial establishment of some hypothesis, or by making manifest the inadmissibility of others

---

[1] *Hist of Ind Sciences*, Vol i, p 323

[2] Whewell, *Nov Org Ren.*, p 79

3. Testing of Hypotheses.—Every hypothesis, then, must be held subject to revision The truly scientific thinker has none of the spirit which says " If the facts do not agree with the theory, so much the worse for the facts." It was against this spirit—this assumption of hypotheses on little or no evidence, and obstinate adherence to them without much direct reference to the world of fact—that Newton protested when he said *hypotheses non fingo*[1] On the contrary, to the true thinker, as Brown says, hypotheses " are of use . not as superseding investigation, but as directing investigation to certain objects—not as telling us what we are to believe, but as pointing out to us what we are to endeavour to ascertain "[2]

As striking examples of the true scientific spirit, Whewell quotes Kepler and Newton The former not only most earnestly and carefully worked out the results of his various hypotheses as to the orbit of Mars, but " never allowed the labour he had spent upon any conjecture to produce any reluctance in abandoning the hypothesis, as soon as he had evidence of its inaccuracy "[3]

A similar spirit was shown by Newton in respect to his hypothesis that the moon is retained in her orbit by the force of gravity From this hypothesis, he calculated that the moon ought to be deflected from the tangent of its orbit something more than fifteen feet every minute But the apparent deflection was only thirteen feet This discrepancy, comparatively small though it was, Newton accepted as a disproof of his hypothesis, and " laid aside at that time any further thoughts of this matter," critical though the supposition was to the theory of cosmical gravitation But some fifteen years later, the distance of the moon from the earth had been more exactly ascertained, and Newton repeated his calculations, working with these new values The agreement between the calculated and the normal actual deflection was then seen to be remarkably precise, and the hypothesis became an established theory

---

[1] *I do not invent hypotheses*

[2] *Philosophy of the Human Mind*, Vol i, pp 230-1

[3] *Op. cit.*

4. Descriptive and Working Hypotheses.—All hypotheses, then, must be held subject to revision, modification, or even rejection But it does not follow that a hypothesis which is finally disproved has been of no service Every well imagined hypothesis, suggested by a real knowledge of the facts dealt with, opens out a line of enquiry which is rarely fruitless As an example we may take the Ptolemaic hypothesis of cycles and epicycles to account for the motions of the sun, moon, and planets This hypothesis enabled the ancient astronomers to calculate those motions with considerable accuracy, and was, therefore, "of immense value to the progress of astronomical science, for it enabled men to express and reason upon many important truths which they discovered respecting the motion of the stars up to the time of Kepler"[1] Yet the hypothesis was essentially false as an explanation, for it assumed the earth to be the centre round which all heavenly bodies revolve, and the motions of all such bodies to be circular

A hypothesis may be of a purely descriptive character When the relations embodied in phenomena are unknown it is often possible to describe the facts through their resemblance to the characteristics of something with whose properties we are familiar The description is recognised as rather symbolic than explanatory Such a hypothesis was that which spoke of the "electric fluid," when the term 'fluid' was used as merely a convenient way of describing some of the known phenomena of electricity, but with a full consciousness that electricity is not a fluid in the correct meaning of that word. It may be the case that the Rutherford Bohr theory of the structure of the atom is only descriptive Physicists know that certain formulae can be used in calculations which are capable of interpretation in their last steps, but they are not agreed that there are atoms having the structure which certain interpretations of the formulae suggest

When a hypothesis is provisionally assumed as a guide to enquiry, it is termed a *working hypothesis* It furnishes an expression of the facts which is recognised as only partially adequate, and yet seems indispensable for further advance. As Jevons says: "When [Professor Huxley] advocates the use of 'working hypotheses' he means no doubt that any hypothesis is better than none, and that we cannot avoid being guided in our observations by some hypothesis or other."[1] Thus the Ptolemaic theory of astronomy was essentially a working hypothesis although at one time it was mistaken for a real explanation.

---

[1] Whewell, *op cit*, p. 84

Of such hypotheses more than one may for a time appear to be equally true: the facts in question may be expressed in more than one way. Many of the observed facts of the motions of the heavenly bodies could, for example, be as accurately formulated on the Cartesian hypothesis of vortices as on the Newtonian theory of gravitation. But, as other facts were accurately observed and measured, the hypothesis of vortices required a continual series of modifications each of which made it more complex than before, while the Newtonian theory was found to explain these new facts as well as those for whose interpretation it had been originally suggested. Thus, the necessity of relating the original facts to other series of phenomena furnishes a test of the truth of a working hypothesis, and as it is only in such a relation that explanation can be found, so only a working hypothesis which ultimately admits of explanation can be true.

However, a working hypothesis discarded as untrue may still be retained as a ready means of expressing many of the facts. Einstein has shown that gravitation is not a force, but a special character of spatial and temporal properties in regions where there is matter, but it may be convenient still to refer to gravitation as a force.

5. Conditions of Validity of Hypotheses. (*a*) STATEMENT OF CONDITIONS.—Every hypothesis is an attempt to relate observed phenomena, to known laws. It follows that the fundamental condition of a valid hypothesis is that it should explain the facts of observation. And it can only do this if it relates isolated facts to orderly systems of facts. This general condition, then, may be considered as involving three subordinate conditions—

---

[1] *Principles of Science*, p. 509.

(1) That the hypothesis be self-consistent, and in harmony with laws included in the rest of the conceived system of reality

(2) That it furnish a basis for rigorous deductive inference of consequences

(3) That these inferred consequences be in agreement with fact.

Of these conditions, the first two are applicable to the formation of every hypothesis, no matter how provisional a character it may have , the third is a condition of the acceptance of a hypothesis as true

(*b*) EXAMINATION OF CONDITIONS *First Condition* —The requirement that a hypothesis does not involve consequences which would be inconsistent with itself is obviously necessary That it should not be in conflict with the rest of reality as known must be interpreted with caution There is always a presumption that any hypothesis which contradicts a law which has been found to hold good over a wide range of fact is scarcely worth investigation We should be rightly disinclined to entertain a suggestion which implied the complete reversal of the law of gravitation Yet theories have been received as true, which later thought has shown to be false. In this way the Copernican theory of the heavens was substituted for the Ptolemaic

When the hypothesis is first formulated there is an initial inconsistency which constitutes a definite claim to modify or to reject in the interests of truth what has been previously accepted as an explanation of the facts. In no case is the new hypothesis held concurrently with theories inconsistent with itself , on the contrary, the previously accepted theories are modified and brought into harmony with the new view necessitated by the fuller study of reality Thus Newton's theory of gravitation has been modified and brought into harmony with Einstein's theory of relativity , the former theory required modification because of the limitation of its scope , Einstein showed that Newtonian axes were privileged and that a more comprehensive theory, which attaches proportionate, not privileged, importance to these axes, is more adequate

Second Condition —It is impossible to infer any consequences from the absolutely unknown As Jevons says "We can only infer what would happen under supposed conditions by applying the knowledge of nature we possess to those conditions "[1] Hence, our hypothesis must be always in accordance with some analogy, or based on some experience , otherwise we can draw no conclusions from it Jevons illustrated this fact by means of the hypothesis of ether , he says—

" When we attempt to explain the passage of light and heat radiations through space unoccupied by matter, we imagine the existence of the so-called *ether* But if this ether were wholly different from anything else known to us, we should in vain try to reason about it We must apply to it at least the laws of motion, that is, we must so far liken it to matter And as, when applying those laws to the elastic medium air, we are able to infer the phenomena of sound, so by arguing in a similar manner concerning ether we are able to infer the existence of light phenomena corresponding to what do occur All that we do is to take an elastic substance, increase its elasticity immensely, and denude it of gravity and some other properties of matter, but we must retain sufficient likeness to matter to allow of deductive calculations "[2] This illustration is still apt, although the hypothesis of an ether has fallen into disrepute

Hypotheses, then, should not be mere arbitrary fictions They must be capable of being, and likely to be, true. This does not mean that they must be *obviously* true A hypothesis may be conceived for the first time when suggested as a possible explanation Nor need it be open to direct perception that would rule out such fruitful theories as the atomic constitution of matter and the assumption of a luminiferous ether But it must be in real and necessary relation to the facts we are considering If a hypothesis fulfils that requirement then it will necessarily offer a basis of deductive inference to the facts dependent on the explanation to which it refers.

---

[1] *Op. cit*, pp. 511-12.

[2] *Ibid.*

Third Condition —As the very aim of every hypothesis is to express the relations which exist in reality, it is obviously essential that the hypothesis should be verified by comparison of the results deduced from it with facts of observation In order that this may be done it is essential that the consequences of the hypothesis should be inferred with the utmost precision, and that the comparison of these consequences with the fact should be made with great care and accuracy. The hypothesis must, of course, in the first place agree with the phenomena it was invented to explain But we must not rest satisfied with this It must be compared with facts of the greatest possible variety, and exemplifying every possible case which can be brought under it A single absolute disagreement with facts is fatal to a hypothesis

Nevertheless, a hypothesis is not to be hastily abandoned on the first *prima facie* conflict with reality It must be made clear first that the opposing facts have been rightly grasped—that they really are in conflict with the hypothesis. If this turns out to be the case, enquiry should be made as to whether these facts have not been partly determined by the existence of interfering conditions, in the absence of which they would be found in agreement with the hypothesis And, finally, if, after making all such allowances, the facts are still in conflict with the hypothesis, it must be considered whether a modification of the latter will meet the case, or whether it must be absolutely rejected

6. Extension of Hypotheses.—If the hypothesis is true, it will generally be possible to infer deductively from it facts which have not been before explained or which have even been unobserved Still, Comte's saying that "prevision is the test of true theory" cannot be accepted absolutely as a hypothesis may be true even though it does not enable the discovery of new facts to be predicted, and, on the other hand, predictions may sometimes be made successfully from a false hypothesis Yet, it is, doubtless, one of the tests of the validity of a hypothesis

The history of science is full of such extension and prediction. Thus, for example, the discovery of Neptune was predicted by deductive reasoning from the principle of gravitation. Other instances of deductions from the same theory are thus summarised by Whewell "The attraction of the sun accounted for the motions of the planets, the attraction of the planets was the cause of the motion of the satellites. But this being assumed, the perturbations, and the motions of the nodes and aphelia, only made it requisite to extend the attraction of the sun to the satellites, and that of the planets to each other, —the tides, the spheroidal form of the earth, the precession, still required nothing more than that the moon and sun should attract the parts of the earth, and these should attract each other,—so that all the suppositions resolved themselves into the single one, of the universal gravitation of all matter"[1]

Another example is Whewell's own prediction that as the tides of the North Sea consist of interfering tidal waves, one coming round the North of Scotland and the other through the English Channel, there would be a point about midway between Lowestoft and Brill on the coast of Holland, where no tide would be found, the two interfering waves exactly neutralising each other The accuracy of this prediction was established during a survey of that sea

The next instance we will take is a striking one as it shows how it is permissible to maintain a clearly conceived hypothesis, even though results may be deduced from it which are at variance with present experience, *if it can be shown that it explains these exceptions* It is thus recorded by Herschel—

"When Dr Hutton expounded his theory of the consolidation of rocks by the application of heat, at a great depth below the bed of the ocean, and especially that of marble by actual fusion, it was objected that, whatever might be the case with others, with calcareous or marble rocks, at least, it was impossible to grant such a cause of consolidation, since heat decomposes their substance and converts it into quicklime, by driving off the carbonic acid, and leaving a substance perfectly infusible, and incapable even of agglutination by heat To this he replied, that the pressure under which the heat was applied would prevent the escape of the carbonic acid; and that being retained, it might be expected to give that fusibility to the compound which the simple quicklime wanted. The next generation saw this anticipation converted into an observed fact, and verified by the direct experiments of Sir James Hall, who actually succeeded in melting marble, by retaining its carbonic acid under violent pressure "[1]

---

[1] *Op cit*, p. 92

As a last example we will take one from the theory of Electricity, quoted by Jevons " As soon as Wheatstone had proved experimentally that the conduction of electricity occupies time, Faraday remarked in 1838, with wonderful sagacity, that if the conducting wires were connected with the coatings of a large Leyden jar, the rapidity of conduction would be lessened This prediction remained unverified for sixteen years, until the submarine cable was laid beneath the Channel A considerable retardation of the electric spark was then detected, and Faraday at once pointed out that the wire surrounded by water resembles a Leyden jar on a large scale, so that each message sent through the cable verified his remark of 1838 "[2]

7. Crucial Instances.—It sometimes happens that two or even more rival hypotheses are held concerning certain facts. In such cases it is necessary to look for some experimental fact which is consistent with one hypothesis, and inconsistent with alternative hypotheses Such experimental facts are called *Crucial Instances* To take an obvious example, before Galileo's experiment at Pisa, it was supposed that bodies fell to the ground with a velocity proportional to their weight, Galileo maintained the opposed hypothesis, *i e* that the weight of bodies was irrelevant to the rate at which they fell By dropping canon balls of unequal weight from the top of the leaning tower at Pisa and observing that they reached the ground at the same time, he proved his hypothesis. Such an experiment is called an *Experimentum Crucis*

It may sometimes happen that an experiment which, considered in relation to the only available knowledge at a certain time, appears to be crucial as between two rival hypotheses, is yet not sufficient to disprove the one hypothesis and establish the other This is because new facts are discovered which are relevant to both hypotheses, and may only be explainable by the one hypothesis, which, had our experiment been really crucial, we should have regarded as disproved

---

[1] *Natural Philosophy*, § 299

[2] *Principles of Science*, p. 543.

This has happened again and again in the history of the two rival hypotheses of the nature of light. Scientists, restricted to the knowledge available in 1850, believed that Foucault's experiment with the velocities of light in air and in water was crucial as against Newton's theory and in favour of Huygens' theory Nor were they illogical in holding this belief on the basis of the available data, but when new discoveries were made, their data were increased, and the experiment ceased to be crucial as between the two hypotheses[1] In the present state of affairs, *i e* with the data now available, scientists do not know of any experiment which is crucial as between these two theories

This fact illustrates the general truth that it may be, and frequently is, difficult to discover a crucial instance. When we remember that a crucial instance is one which admits of *one* explanation only, this difficulty does not surprise us

---

[1] See pp 411-13

CHAPTER XXIX.

THE INCEPTION OF HYPOTHESES

1. The Beginnings of Induction.—Hypotheses are suggested to the mind by observed experience, but they occur only to that mind which can use what it already knows to throw light on the facts The aim of every hypothesis is to bind together into an intelligible whole a vast mass of experiences otherwise disconnected It is because things are similar or dissimilar that we relate them together

The likeness which first strikes the mind is that of external observable resemblance The mind tends to generalise uncontradicted experience into universal law Logically this is the first suggestion of a hypothesis that such resemblance is really universal --a hypothesis which deserves consideration but which cannot be taken as proved The attempt to show that it is true must proceed through examination of the nature and relations of the facts involved So is reached likeness of a more fundamental kind —one not always open to direct observation Our thought has passed from obvious resemblances which can be enumerated to that deeper likeness which is strictly called analogy But the fact that a suggested explanation has its analogue in some other relation known to exist does not prove its truth We are still, then, in the realm of hypothesis, the establishment of the supposition as true has yet many stages to pass through

These two initial stages, however, are of sufficient importance to deserve our serious consideration of their logical value and function.

2. Enumerative Induction.—Generally it may be said that every observed regularity of connection between phenomena suggests a question as to whether it is universal To take a simple example from mathematics—it is easily seen by simple inspection that $1 + 3 = 2^2$, $1 + 3 + 5 = 3^2$, and so on This suggests the hypothesis that in every case the sum of the first n odd numbers will be equal to n^2 Such a hypothesis may be tested by additional examples, and as it is found to hold in a continually increasing number of cases, the probability of its holding universally is strengthened. But it can never be more than an empirical law—that is, a description of what relation actually does hold—until its necessity is established by a consideration of the essential properties of numbers, and this takes us beyond mere enumeration

Such inductive inference does not start from wholly unorganised experience Ordinary speech carries with it an enormous amount of preliminary organisation In learning general terms we are learning to class things, actions, and qualities together, so that their points of resemblance are, as it were, forced on our notice Were it not for the general name "dog," for instance, would the thinking together, as members of one class animals which show so many differences of size, form, and colour, be as general as it is? Evidently it would not be so readily acquired

Here we meet the first difficulty of induction The things marked out by common speech can be thought in various relations of likeness to other things, and therefore classed in various ways Wheat, for example, may be thought of as food, as a grass, as a plant, as an import into this country or an export from that, as a product of the temperate regions, and so on So according to the purpose of knowledge at the time we must determine under which of these sets of relations the particulars we are examining shall be thought This determination is itself a preliminary hypothesis—that the ground of the relation we seek to establish will be found within that set of relations

Here error is very possible We should, for example, be unjustified in inferring the excellence of all pictures from the recognised excellence of a few we have examined, even had none but admirable examples come within our purview. But if we take as a narrower class within the genus 'picture,' the pictures painted by one great artist we have a more probable ground for the expectation that new examples of that class will possess not only excellence but excellence of the kind exemplified in the pictures we have examined.

Yet the adoption of too wide a class as our first working hypothesis may be prolific of result Suppose, for example, that electricity has been observed to move freely in silver and copper. There are two obvious concepts under which 'silver' and 'copper' fall, viz *metals* and *substances* The direction of enquiry will be different according as one or the other of the two is adopted If we take the first, our attempted generalisation, 'In all metals electricity moves freely,' will as a matter of fact be correct if we take the second and assume that 'Electricity moves freely in all substances,' the assumption will be false, but the enquiry based on it will be more fruitful, for it will probably lead to the true concepts under which to think the phenomena—*conductors* in which electricity moves freely, *insulators* in which it does not In this case the concepts that we really need are not fully defined until the end of the investigation, and as a rule the concepts available, because already named, merely serve to give a starting-point for the enquiry

Now when from observed resemblances we tentatively proceed to a universal relation we have a syllogism in the third figure, which regarded as an attempt at demonstrative inference is invalid We have observed that certain individuals *a, b, c, d* have the quality *P*, and we have classed *a, b, c, d* under the class-name *S* So we get the premises

a, b, c, d, are P,
a, b, c, d, are S

As *S* is undistributed we have no formal ground for asserting that *every S* is *P* , but it is suggested as a possible truth.

3. Analogy. (1) *Nature* —In induction by enumeration the generalisation *All S's are P* is based solely on the ground that a certain number of *S's* have been found to be *P* ; but, in the case of an analogical induction the ground of the generalisation is the agreement observed in the instances; thus, we pass beyond *All S's are P because n S's have been found to be P*, to *All S's are P because they are all S*, making the character in which the instances agree the evidence for our inference This character may be analysed or unanalysed, we shall as a rule consider our evidence stronger in the former case

Let us suppose, as an example, that certain schools—*a*, *b*, *c*, *d* —are shown by statistics to be abnormally successful at examinations This success we will denote by *P* When we try to account for this we seek to find something in common between *a*, *b*, *c*, *d* which will explain *P* In other words, we search for an *S* under which to class *a*, *b*, *c*, *d* Now the first *S* suggested is schools—and that is obviously insufficient for our purpose We may then seek among such specific divisions between schools as are given by local position, character of buildings, social class of pupils, number of pupils If we find agreement in any one of these points between all the cases of abnormally successful schools we have a ground for trying to pass on to the analogical argument

For example, schools are successful in examinations because of a certain social status among pupils We may then analyse the social status, and finding that it involves conditions especially favourable to study, such as opportunities in the way of books, of cultured help from parents, of a quiet room for work, we feel that our argument is on a firmer basis We may also look for further points of agreement , for instance, we may consider the teachers employed, and, if we find that they are specially efficient, we again feel that our argument is stronger

We realise, however, that there may be some points of resemblance, which, even if included in our premises, would not incline us to place greater reliance on our conclusions; for instance, we should not consider that agreement in the number of doors painted green was relevant to our argument, since the colour of doors and success in examinations appear to be irrelevant to one another This brings out the point that not every resemblance is evidence for further resemblance. To take another illustration, the inference that every other planet is inhabited by living beings like ourselves has no force if it is based only on the fact that they are also members of the solar system

Arguments from analogy may thus be extremely superficial, of rhetorical rather than of logical force But, on the other hand, they may be of considerable cogency There are certain criteria whereby sound may be distinguished from weak analogical arguments

(ii) *Force* —An analogical argument, as we have seen, asserts the universal relation between two or more properties on the ground of similarity in the instances in which these two properties have been found together The force of such arguments depends on two factors (*a*) the relative *comprehensiveness*[1] of the properties asserted to be universally connected, and (*b*) the *importance* of one of these properties with respect to the other

(*a*) In an *analogical argument* the presence of one property leads us to expect the presence of another, for instance, if we find specimens which look like mushrooms we expect them to taste like mushrooms Let us refer to the property which leads us to expect another, as the alleged implying property, and let us refer to the property we expect to find, as the alleged implied property

Now the more comprehensive is the property alleged to be implied by other properties the less likely is our generalisation to be true Thus, returning to the illustration of successful schools, if, instead of arguing that because schools agree in the social status of their pupils they will agree in their success at examinations, we argue that they will also agree in playing the same games, being heated in the same way, having the same number of rooms, our argument is much less plausible On the other hand, the more comprehensive is the alleged implying property the more likely is our conclusion to be true, for instance, if, instead of basing our inference solely upon agreement in social status, we include agreement in efficiency of teachers, our inference is more plausible

It is, however, clear that a *mere* increase in the number of properties assumed to imply others does not warrant a more probable conclusion, for the addition of wholly irrelevant properties cannot make a conclusion more probable, for instance, schools surrounded by iron railings are no more and no less likely to be successful at examinations than those surrounded with wooden fences This consideration brings us to the second condition upon which the force of an analogical argument depends, namely, the *importance* of the alleged implying property

---

[1] This term is taken from J M. Keynes' *Treatise on Probability.*

(*b*) We may begin by examining a false view According to Mill the force of an argument based on analogy depends, as he says, "on the extent of the ascertained resemblance, compared *first with the amount of ascertained difference*, and next with the extent of the unexplored region of unascertained properties," he continues, "it follows that where the resemblance is very great, the ascertained difference very small, and our knowledge of the subject-matter tolerably extensive, the argument from analogy may approach in strength very near to a valid induction If, after much observation of *B*, we find that it agrees with *A* in nine out of ten of its known properties, we may conclude with a probability of nine to one, that it will possess any given derivative property of *A*"[1]

An illustration from Dr Wallace's *Darwinism* makes clear how mistaken this view is Dr Wallace is speaking of the variations among plants which yet belong to the same family, he says—

"All the cucumbers and gourds vary immensely, but the melon (Cucumis melo) exceeds them all A French botanist, M Naudin, devoted six years to their study He found that previous botanists had described thirty distinct species, as they thought, which were really only varieties of melons They differ chiefly in their fruits, but also very much in foliage and mode of growth Some melons are only as large as small plums, others weigh as much as sixty-six pounds One variety has a scarlet fruit Another is not more than an inch in diameter, but sometimes more than a yard in length, twisting about in all directions like a serpent. Some melons are exactly like cucumbers, and an Algerian variety, when ripe, cracks and falls to pieces, just as occurs in a wild gourd"[1]

---

[1] *Logic*, III, xx, § 3.

If confronted with such a case Mill would have been forced, by his own criteria, to the conclusion that it was a very weak argument such as not to warrant the expectation of important resemblances, for the ascertained resemblance is small, while the ascertained difference is great What Mill failed to see was that mere number of points of agreement and difference is of little weight compared with the *quality* of the agreement and difference Those who, like Mill, have been misled by the number of differences between the instances have failed to see that essential points of agreement override differences, and that, on the contrary, if the differences are essential, then no amount of agreement in other points will make the inference a safe one

Yet, although Mill's criteria are thus wholly untrustworthy, the manner in which he has formulated them, nevertheless suggests the points requiring consideration He refers to "ascertained resemblance," 'ascertained difference," and "the extent of the unexplored region of unascertained properties," while he omits all reference to the *importance* of properties Each of these four points needs consideration

By ascertained resemblance Mill meant those properties which we know belong to all cases examined This has been conveniently called the *known positive analogy*[2] By ascertained difference he meant those properties in which we know that the instances differ This has been similarly called the *known negative analogy*[3]

When Mill refers to the "extent of the unexplored region of the unascertained properties," he obviously contradicts himself, for if the region is unexplored, we cannot know its extent. But Mill's contradictory phrase indicates an important point. The more an analogical argument can be relied upon the less likelihood is there that certain properties, about which we know nothing, belong to our instances, for, such properties might be highly relevant to our argument, and yet knowing nothing of them we could take no account of them.

---

[1] Pp 87-8

[2] J M Keynes, *A Treatise on Probability*, p. 223

[3] *Ibid*

But how, it will be asked, can such factors be dealt with? We may reply—decrease them as much as possible. This can be done by increasing the known negative analogy, and this is achieved by examining instances as different as possible; for, the more the instances differ, the less likelihood is there of the existence of an important unknown positive analogy Moreover, the more our instances differ, the less difficult does it become to discriminate essential from unessential properties in the positive analogy

We are thus brought to the consideration of the last and most important factor in determining the force of analogical arguments, namely, the quality of the positive analogy. We say that this must be important, but what is meant by *importance* here? The question is difficult, we may say that a property is important, in the sense required, if it is productive of, or implies, other properties We may refer to the postulate of limited variety,[1] *i e* that properties belong to groups such that one member of a group specifies another member of it Any property belonging to such a group would be important in the sense required for sound analogical arguments Such groups are, as we have seen, associated with natural kinds, but are not restricted to organic substances, they exist for instance, in chemical substances.

Lastly, we may refer to a special sense in which *important* has been used in explaining analogical arguments In this sense *important* means *relevant to some purpose* According to those who interpret important in this way analogical arguments which refer to some end or purpose are stronger than those which do not do so Thus, they say, that the analogical argument that certain flints found in the earth are remains of weapons, because they bear marks of artificial shaping of such a kind as to adapt them to be cutting or piercing instruments, and corresponding, moreover to those, of flint weapons made and used by savages at the present day, is strong, because the properties involved are teleological.

---

[1] See pp 287-8.

No doubt analogical arguments based on teleological properties are usually plausible, but not every plausible analogical argument is based on teleological properties, hence the sense of importance defined by reference to groups of properties, is in general, more useful than the restricted sense defined by reference to teleological properties.

We may briefly sum up our consideration of the conditions determining the force of arguments based on analogy, by showing how these conditions depend upon one another The factor of prime importance is the relevant or important character of the positive analogy this factor can be isolated from the irrelevant positive analogy by increasing the known negative analogy Having found the important positive analogy we should see that while the property we infer from it is not comprehensive, it itself is as comprehensive as possible

(iii) *Fallacies Incident to Analogy*.—There are two main sources of fallacy in analogical arguments There are accordingly two main classes of fallacies incident to analogy.

(*a*) Fallacies due to language

(*b*) Fallacies due to confusion between essential and unessential properties

(*a*) The use of metaphorical language is a frequent source of fallacious analogical arguments The fallacy is based on, and grows out of, a fallacy of Figure of Speech For instance, it is false analogy due to metaphorical language to condemn the metropolis because it is called the "heart" or the "head" of the body As abnormal increase of these members points to disease in the natural body it has been urged that analogous diseases will follow in the body politic if the capital of the country becomes very large

Thus Smollett in *Humphry Clinker* says of London "The capital is become an overgrown monster, which, like a dropsical head, will in time leave the body and extremities without nourishment and support What wonder that our villages are depopulated, and our farms in want of day-labourers?" Now, the abnormal influx of labour into the great towns from the country is, undoubtedly, a social evil of considerable magnitude But the growth of the towns is the effect of this influx, not its cause, and the consequent evils are not essentially analogous to "leaving the body and extremities without nourishment and support"

A favourite rhetorical form of the argument from analogy is to illustrate a great and complex relation by one familiar and simple That by a ladder one may climb upwards is evident So the enthusiastic platform 'educationist' has only to speak of "an educational ladder from the gutter to the university" to justify to most of those who hear or read his remarks the lavish expenditure of public money in scholarships Few ask what is meant by such rising in the world, or whether it is a public duty to help certain individuals so to rise above their fellows The metaphor with its play on words is taken as a reality with an identity in nature

Such metaphors are the stock in trade of the popular politician He assumes that general and abstract reasoning is "caviare to the vulgar," and so he dispenses both himself and them from the necessity of real thought, and, giving vein to his pictorial imagination, finds that he can 'prove' anything, so that when he changes his fundamental opinions he can support the new with equal sound and fury—and with equal want of conclusiveness—as he formerly upheld the old

Doubtless at times such analogical illustrations are pertinent and helpful But always they are open to the dangers that they may be superficial and therefore misleading, or that even if valid they may be pressed further than their nature really justifies That a wall is an obstacle to communication is a plain matter of fact So the orator has only to speak of a tariff "wall" to suggest that the imposition of customs duties hinders trade in the same way as a wall hinders free passage, and that the higher they are the more effectively they do so Neither he nor his hearers think it necessary to ask how far the analogy is a true one

(*b*) Apart from the metaphorical and rhetorical use of language false analogies are made because essential properties are confused with unessential The argument, humorously put into the mouth of Socrates by Plato in the *Republic*, "that if justice consists in keeping property safe, the just man must be a kind of thief, for the same kind of skill which enables a man to defend property, will also enable him to steal it"[1] is an instance of this species of false analogy The identity in skill is not important in reference to the question under consideration For "justice is not a kind of skill, but a kind of activity The just man is not merely one who *can*, but one who *does*, keep property safe Now, though the *capacity* of preserving property may be identical with the *capacity* of appropriating it, the *act* of preserving is certainly very different from the act of appropriating"[2]

Another example of a false analogy resting upon failure to distinguish essential from unessential resemblances is that between a community and an individual As the latter goes through successive periods of growth, maturity, and decay, so the hypothesis is formed that every nation must do the same, and it is assumed that after a longer or shorter period of vigour and prosperity the nation must gradually lose its place in the world The disastrous consequences of such a theory upon the energy of the nation in general and its leaders in particular are obvious and can scarcely be exaggerated And history lends some colour to the theory in recounting the rise and fall of great empires

Examination of the circumstances tends, however, to show that such decay is not a necessary consequence of the continued life of the state, it occurs at the end of periods more or less protracted, and may in every instance be explained by conditions independent of the mere duration of the community as an organised state On the other hand, in the case of the individual organism, senile decay is a direct result of the constitution of the body, which is such that after a certain interval decay exceeds recuperation and at last necessarily ends in death The fall of great empires is more analogous with death from disease than with death from old age Hence, there is no reason to regard such decay of power and prosperity as the necessary end of a lengthened existence

The falsity of the analogy is well shown in the following passage from Burke's *Letters on a Regicide Peace*: "I am not quite of the mind of those speculators who seem assured that necessarily, and by the constitution of things, all states have the same periods of infancy, manhood, and decrepitude, that are found in the individuals who compose them Parallels of this sort rather furnish similitudes to illustrate or to adorn, than supply analogies from whence to reason The objects which are attempted to be forced into an analogy are not found in the same classes of existence Individuals are physical beings, subject to laws universal and invariable. The immediate cause acting in these laws may be obscure the general results are subjects of certain calculation. But commonwealths are not physical but moral essences They are artificial combinations, and, in their proximate efficient cause, the arbitrary productions of the human mind. We are not yet acquainted with the laws which necessarily influence the stability of that kind of work made by that kind of agent "[1]

---

[1] Book I

[2] Mackenzie, *Manual of Ethics*, third ed., p. 15.

False analogies give rise to false hypotheses, but it must not be supposed that every inadequate hypothesis which has been based on a false analogy arises from a fallacy The failure to distinguish between essential and unessential features of resemblance is not always within our power, and even in those cases in which it is, lack of discrimination cannot usefully be termed a fallacy, yet it is sometimes called the fallacy of non-observation [2]

Analogy by itself is seldom ever capable of rendering an argument cogent, the strongest analogy only adds to the probability of a hypothesis, the proof of which must be sought in further enquiry

---

[1] *Works*, Vol viii, pp 78 9

[2] See pp 304-9.

CHAPTER XXX.

ESTABLISHMENT OF HYPOTHESES

1. Conditions of Establishment.—We have seen that neither simple enumeration nor analogy can do more than suggest a tenative hypothesis which can only be transmuted into an established truth by other and more exact processes of investigation The logical analysis of these is now to occupy us As a necessary preliminary, however, to our enquiry we must see clearly what is its aim, that is, we must decide what conditions a hypothesis must fulfil to entitle it to be regarded as established and proved

These requirements were succinctly stated by Clifford. "In order to make sure that your supposition is true, it is necessary to show not merely that that particular supposition will explain the facts, but also that no other one will "[1] To put it symbolically If our suggested hypothesis is *If* **A**, *then* **X**, it cannot be held to be proved until we also establish *If* **X**, *then* **A**. This we have already seen is the aim of experiment[2] Enumeration suggests **A** as the cause of **X**, analogy strengthens that suggestion by finding a ground for the relation But if the hypothesis states a real causal law it is reciprocal Not only does **A** secure **X**, but **X** can be secured in no other way

This is always a task of much difficulty, and before the law or theory can be regarded as absolutely established it will have passed through many successive stages of increasing probability The terms ' Law ' and ' Theory ' are not clearly differentiated, but the distinction, so far as it exists, is that a theory systematises a number of general relations or laws

---

[1] *Lectures and Essays*, p 137

[2] See p. 301.

2. Direct Development of Hypothesis.—When we seek evidence to establish the truth of a suggested causal relation we may or may not find it open to direct observation, with or without the aid of experiment If it is not we must work indirectly, and compare the facts we can observe, not with the hypothesis itself, but with consequences we can deduce from it This process we shall consider later If, however, the hypothesis itself can be directly brought to the test of comparison with fact, then the scientific worker adopts certain precautions in the selection and manipulation of the evidence; and these the logician is able to analyse The first clear exposition of these practical methods of direct enquiry was given by Herschel[1], the classical logical analysis was made by Mill,[2] who formulated five canons of inductive inquiry. Mill's canons have been accepted by many logicians, but it is recognised that they are subject to certain limitations

As analysed logically Mill s methods of course stand apart as separate and independent modes of enquiry This separation, however, is wholly the work of the logician, made for simplicity of exposition of their logical character In actual scientific work they no more exist apart than do the vital, physical, and chemical processes in the life of a plant or animal Nor can they ever be employed with that formal rigidity which would be necessary to enable them to be by themselves absolute grounds of proof

All the methods aim at elimination Causal connections are never found pure in nature they are always associated with conditions which are irrelevant to them To distinguish what is relevant from what is irrelevant, and so to isolate the real causal connection sought, is the only way in which that connection can be revealed This is a process of logical elimination which may or may not be aided by a physical separation It proceeds on two fundamental principles, first, that whatever can be absent when the phenomenon is present is not causally connected with it, and secondly, that whatever can be present in the absence of the phenomenon is no part of its cause These principles presuppose the principles of causation, they assume that every event must have a cause and that the same cause produces the same effect

---

[1] *Preliminary Discourse on the Study of Natural Philosophy.*

[2] *Logic*, III ix 3

The formal principle that if a definite set of conditions give rise to a definite set of phenomena, and if another set of conditions, partly like and partly unlike the former, give rise to another set of phenomena, also both like and unlike the former, then that a causal bond is indicated between the elements which remain stable in both sets, and negated between those that rest unchanged in one set and change in the other, may be symbolically expressed—

AB followed by xy
AC „ „ xz

∴ causal connection probable between A and x, but not between A and y, A and z, B and x, B and z, C and x, C and y. The possibility of such a connection between B and y, C and z is untouched

Such a formal statement obscures the complexity of the real work of thought It suggests that the letters symbolise elements which are so independent of each other that one can be added or removed without changing the other, so that whatever we do with B or C leaves A free to work, and to work always in the same way and with the same measurable result But in reality B or C may change the operation of A in any way and to any degree including complete neutralisation, as for example increase of pressure (B) may within limits prevent the expansion of water under heat (A). Moreover, nature does not present itself to us in so convenient or tidy a pattern

The symbolic statements suggest that the preliminary work of connecting conditions and result in thought has already been done. They assume that we know that it is in AB we are to look for the conditions of xy, and in xy for the consequences of AB Rarely, indeed, is this the case in actual scientific enquiry. That selection is the first work to be done and is liable to error To make an exhaustive enumeration of conditions would be impossible The relevant has to be separated from the irrelevant. At first we are helped by the fact that separate names are used for separate things. But this takes us but a little way. Soon it is found that these obvious distinctions due to more or less superficial observation are insufficient, and others have to be made But always it is assumed that in selecting and distinguishing we have not omitted relevant properties

From the whole mass of existence we select a little piece for examination, and in so selecting we isolate it in thought from the whole of which it is, and must always remain, really a part In isolating it we may omit relevant conditions. Whether, then, what we attend to is what we ought to attend to for the purpose in hand is not a matter that can be decided in the easy way the symbolic formula suggests The knowledge, insight, and tact of the enquirer are needed in their fullest power, and even so mistakes are frequent It may easily happen that relevant conditions are ignored Often it is only in the actual course of an enquiry that it is recognised that some condition is really operative Of course it *existed* at the beginning, but it was not thought worthy of consideration So it is seldom indeed that a hypothesis emerges from an enquiry in the form in which it entered that enquiry As the work proceeds the conditions really operative are more and more recognised, and the part they play more and more clearly apprehended It is only gradually that we reach anything like the simple connection A followed by x, and when we do A and x have always ceased to be the directly apprehended 'things' and 'events' which lie open to perception by the senses

Mill's canons thus assume that nature is much more conveniently arranged for the scientist than in fact it is, or else they assume, as J M Keynes says, that "experience can shape and analyse the evidence in a manner and to an extent which is not in fact possible "[1]

Mill believed that, with one exception, his methods would give certainty This exception was the method of agreement which Mill considered incapable of giving certainty because he believed there might be a plurality of causes We have seen[2] that if the terms of our causal relation are groups of specifically qualified events, plurality of causes is unlikely If the material with which the scientist is concerned was, or could be, arranged as Mill assumes, he is right in regarding his methods as cogent But the material of the scientist is not so arranged, and it is only with difficulty, if at all, that it can be Moreover, the methods by which this arrangement is achieved are inductive, hence Mill's canons presuppose as completed the very processes of induction of which they are the alleged methods

---

[1] *A Treatise on Probability*, p. 268

[2] See p. 285.

It is well to grasp these limitations of the methods, for they imply that Mill's canons are not adequately described as the *methods* of inductive inquiry Indeed, there is but one method of inductive inquiry -the method whose various steps we are progressively examining, *i e* the method of observing, of framing, and of testing hypotheses [1]

We will now examine the methods in detail, but it is well to point out that the examples by which we illustrate each of them are bound to wear an air of artificiality, since in no case are they more than fragments torn from their true context in real investigations, and in some cases they have no importance beyond their illustrative value In the next chapter an endeavour will be made to give specimens of actual scientific work directed to the discovery of truth, and it will then be seen that the methods are used to supplement one another in one and the same enquiry in a way which their separation for the purposes of exposition tends to obscure

(1) *Method of Agreement*—When we attempt to make enumeration more precise the obvious course to pursue is to seek the observed sequence in as varying surroundings as possible The logical generalisation of this is known as the **Method of Agreement.** If only the sequence $A - x$ is found constant while the concomitant circumstances change in many ways the probability that the relation of A to x is causal is enhanced by its persistency Repeating the general formula already given—

$$\begin{array}{lll} A\,B & \text{followed by} & x\,y, \\ A\,C & \text{,,}\qquad\text{,,} & x\,z - \end{array}$$

---

[1] See pp 274-277

the greater the divergence in the mass of concomitant circumstances summed up symbolically in B, C, y, z, the greater the probability that A necessitates x

For example, "A person might suppose that the peculiar colours of mother-of-pearl were due to the chemical qualities of the substance Much trouble might have been spent in following out that notion by comparing the chemical qualities of various iridescent substances But Brewster accidentally took an impression from a piece of mother-of-pearl in a cement of resin and bees'-wax, and finding the colours repeated upon the surface of the wax, he proceeded to take other impressions in balsam, fusible metal, lead, gum-arabic, isinglass, etc , and always found the iridescent colours the same He thus proved that the chemical nature of the substance is a matter of indifference, and that the form of the surface is the real condition of such colours "[1]

The method of agreement resembles simple enumeration in its reliance on number of instances, but it differs from it in the stress laid on variety in the accompanying circumstances. As far as possible the examples taken should be typical, and a mere repetition of instances of the same kind is avoided. Speaking of chlorophyll, the green colouring matter in plants, Hobhouse says "All buttercups are plants, and all buttercups contain chlorophyll , but I might examine a million buttercups, and on the question whether all plants contain chlorophyll, I should remain precisely where I was when I had examined half-a-dozen But if I examine a buttercup leaf, a blade of grass a fern, a moss, a volvox, and a protococcus, my six observations will give me a very fair right to generalise. Normally, plants contain chlorophyll "[2]

The strength of the generalisation depends on the agreement in one particular amid very wide divergencies in other respects To be formally cogent the method demands that there should be agreement in only one particular, and of that we can never be sure The uncertainty may be lessened by the knowledge that some circumstances which have not been excluded are irrelevant from the point of view of the enquiry which is being undertaken Moreover, certainty can only be assured if the instances taken are exhaustively representative. This, again, is a demand which in practice cannot be absolutely fulfilled.

---

[1] Jevons, *The Principles of Science*, p 419.

[2] *Theory of Knowledge*, p 368

As a matter of fact there are exceptions to the rule that plants contain chlorophyll, though probably the majority do. However, if the differences in the instances are very marked, a few examples are sufficient to suggest a connection Darwin observes in the *Voyage of the Beagle* . " There is one vegetable production deserving notice from its importance as an article of food to the Fuegians. It is a globular, bright-yellow fungus, which grows in vast numbers on the beech-trees. When young it is elastic and turgid with a smooth surface ; but when mature it shrinks, becomes tougher, and has its entire surface deeply pitted or honeycombed This fungus belongs to a new and curious genus , I found a second species on another species of beech in Chile , and Dr Hooker informs me, that just lately a third species has been discovered on a third species of beeches in Van Dieman's Land. How singular is this relationship between parasitical fungi and the trees on which they grow in distant parts of the world "[1] The expression of surprise is prompted by the thought that there is probably some reason for the growth of the fungus on one class of tree, but Darwin is far too cautious to state the connection more than tentatively

All that the method of agreement can do to confirm a suggested relation is by varying the circumstances to make less and less probable the irrelevance of any element which remains When so much else is changing we can in most cases suggest no sufficient reason for the continued presence of the element except that it is causally connected with the phenomenon

There are other reasons why the method of agreement does no more than strengthen a hypothesis of causal connection. It is mainly a method of observation, and is most appropriate in those cases where the phenomenon is not amenable to manipulation, but occurs in nature in a variety of forms

---

[1] *The Voyage of the Beagle,* Ch. xi.

Occasionally the variety may be partly produced by experiment None the less, analysis cannot on this method be pushed very far We may find, for example, that many bodies agree in the one fact that they are transparent to light. But obviously this is merely a suggestion for enquiry : it does not explain in any way the connection And if an examination be conducted into the relation of light-vibration and the molecular structure of these transparent bodies, the indirect method must be resorted to So the probable connection between the iridescent colours of mother-of-pearl and the form of the markings in each substance is an indication that the explanation probably depends on some relation of the light to this special form, but no direct method is adequate to determine what that relation is

Moreover, the method of agreement is peculiarly liable to be vitiated by that "plurality of causes" which no direct method can altogether escape To revert to our symbolism, $AB \quad xy$, $AC \quad xz$, $AD \quad xt$, $AE \quad xs \ldots$, etc. No doubt with each elimination the probability that x is due to anything present in the instances except A is decreased But it must be remembered that B, C, D, etc , symbolise the whole mass of possibly relevant concomitants and not merely such isolated elements as we attempt to secure under A Further, that all the constituents of a phenomenon are so inter-related that it is quite conceivable that if we could really isolate A we should find it inadequate to secure x Industry may be essential to success in life, but if we could conceive a person who had none of the auxiliary quality of intelligence and no favourable circumstances of life, we should not expect him to be successful We never get a real isolation of the working of A, and it may well be that by itself it is powerless , that is, that our isolation of A in thought as the cause of x has been only partially correct So that while the method of agreement gives a presumption in favour of a bond of causality between A and x it does little to support a hypothesis that in A we have the full and sufficient cause of x

The method is powerless, too, to discriminate between a causal connection and a case of co-existence Thus we may have at the end of our elimination the apparent sequence

$A - x$, but x may be a permanent fact in nature which remains as a residuum because of its permanency. The true test would be made if A were introduced: the consequent appearance of x would disprove the suggestion that x is permanent. "Wherever there is sea we find sky but we do not make sea the cause of sky, because we do not find the sky coming into being when or where the sea appears"[1] The fact that wherever animals are ruminants they are cloven-hoofed does not make ruminancy a cause of cloven feet Both may be directly connected with some further condition, or the connection may be so remote, as in the case of sea and sky, as to be considered purely casual

An example already given as an illustration of a non-causal sequence is also in point here However different the nights we experience may be in other respects they all agree in being preceded by day Here day and night are joint effects of a cause not open to sense-perception and theoretically there is always the chance that this may be the case in any conjunction of elements arrived at by the method of agreement

Enough has been said to show that the method of agreement cannot give certainty There is no need to exaggerate its defects It is frequently sufficiently cogent for practical purposes, and sometimes it is the only method of investigation which the nature of the material under consideration allows Its main function, however, is to suggest hypotheses which require further examination When Pasteur found in a large number of diseased silkworms placed in turn beneath the microscope in various stages of growth that certain corpuscles were always present, the connection between the corpuscles and the disease was a hypothesis worthy of closer examination when in many healthy worms no trace of corpuscles could be found the hypothesis was greatly strengthened

(ii) *Joint Method*—If, then, mere positive agreement in the presence of x with A is so inadequate as a means of theoretical *proof* we naturally turn next to seek negative confirmation by examining instances of the absence of A to see if they are all marked also by the absence of x. This gives rise to the **Joint Method of Agreement and Difference,** as Mill named it.

---

[1] Hobhouse, *Theory of Knowledge*, p. 367

Evidently our negative instances should resemble the positive ones as nearly as possible in every particular except the absence of *A*. They must, therefore, be the same kind of facts It would not do to take *any* example of the absence of the phenomenon Indeed, if the cases in which it occurs possess besides the supposed cause *A*, a number of other elements, say *B*, *C*, *D*, *E*, *F*, *G*, *the negative instances*, to be at all conclusive, should contain among them all these other circumstances, and thus show that each of them can be present when the phenomenon is absent This is in practice too stringent a requirement but the method adds little to the probability unless the resemblances between the two sets of phenomena are so marked that they are recognised as instances of the same type The only important difference should be the presence in *one case, and the absence* in the other of the suggested cause and effect

The force of the argument depends on the degree of probability with which we are assured that all the relevant conditions are under consideration The method does not necessarily require instances prepared by experiment, it may take such as are open to observation merely We search for examples as nearly alike as possible except for the one important difference *of presence and absence* of A — *x*, but it is rarely that nature presents instances exhibiting a complete elimination of all other differences The only way to minimise this objection is to make both positive and negative instances as varied and numerous as the given investigation seems to demand When the Joint Method is *experimental* it becomes an extension of the Method of Difference to be analysed below (p 360)

The consideration of negative instances makes the liability to error through the existence of "plurality of causes" practically negligible If we take a number of cases of agreement, we may find that they contain various elements in common in addition to the phenomena under investigation, but when we find that these elements can be present when the phenomenon does not occur, there is no motive for entertaining them as possible alternative causes unless we have reason to believe that any one of them is counteracted in its tendency to produce the result by an element with a tendency of opposite quality. If we were sure that each relevant circumstance had been included in the negative instances the argument from plurality of causes would have no weight in the absence of such a suggested counteraction

The method is frequently used in common life and in social investigations. Suppose a man to suffer from sleeplessness and to seek its cause The range within which the search must be made is wide, and the possible causes somewhat indefinite in character He will proceed to compare carefully the circumstances preceding his sleepless nights with those preceding nights of satisfactory rest He may find that among such conditions as late hours, prolonged study, varied drink and diet, worry, and so forth, followed by sleeplessness, all may be present in cases of normal slumber except, say, the nightly cup of strong coffee. The latter then is suggested as the recalcitrant habit which must be broken if insomnia is to be cured

The application of the method is here, as in most of the enquiries of ordinary life, of a loose description For example, there are many factors of temperament, constitution, and general habits of life, which are incapable of elimination An investigation into the effect of half-time employment on physical development avails itself of the same procedure. Height and weight are taken as trustworthy indications of physical condition Statistics are compiled in relation to children of the same average age and general home surroundings (1) in half-time attendance, (2) in full attendance at school In the first cases a physical deterioration is present which in the second series—that is, the negative instances—is absent. Here half-time attendance is a compendious description of a group of elements such as heavy physical strain, dust-laden atmosphere during toil, noise of machinery, excessive heat, whose separate effects in the whole, loosely termed 'physical deterioration' can be recognised, if not precisely determined, by a continued application of the same method.

An example from a scientific investigation is worked out in the next chapter. Darwin determined that the formation of vegetable mould was the result of the action of earthworms by an examination of positive and negative instances Where the vegetable mould was formed earthworms were active where it was not formed the earthworms were absent from the soil [1]

The use of the negative instance enables us to set aside definitely all the elements which are present in the absence of the phenomenon Thus, if the method of exclusions could be rigidly applied it would be a means of *proving* causal laws

(iii) *Method of Difference*—The desire to secure two instances differing only in the presence in the one, and the absence in the other, of the suspected cause naturally leads to experiment Nature does not present us with such instances But in experiment we can sometimes introduce our A into a set of conditions from which it was absent We can, for example, put some ground coffee into boiling water, and we are justified in attributing the change in colour, odour, taste, and effect as a beverage, to that infusion. Such an instance brings out an important point, which we have already considered under causation, that it is not the coffee by itself —*i e* as a separate element—but only in its union with the boiling water which produces the result [2] So when into a set of conditions B which have as a result y we introduce A, and find y becomes $x\ y$, we can only say that the introduction of A caused the change, not that A by itself would ever give x

To make one change at a time and to watch the result is the object of the **Method of Difference,** which is essentially the *Method of Experiment* How complex or how simple is the change made depends upon the minuteness of our mental analysis of the phenomenon in question and upon our power to isolate in reality elements we have already segregated in thought It is clear that if the elements are independent of one another, and can in fact be isolated, the hypothesis of a causal relation between A and x is verified

Formally the method may equally well start with $A\ B$—$x\ y$ and proceed by removing A in the hopes that x will then disappear, or with $B—y$ and proceed to add A in the expectation of securing x But practically the latter is generally the more convenient—it is easier to add coffee to hot water than to start with the coffee infusion and remove the coffee

---

[1] See pp. 381-5.

[2] See p. 284.

Examples abound in common life and in science A man attributes a bruised elbow to a fall, a sudden draught to the just-opened door, the blotting of a landscape from view to an uprolling mist When a current of electricity is passed through a galvanometer the resulting deflection of the needle is ascribed to the current, when sodium is added to dilute sulphuric acid it is regarded as causing the release of hydrogen when a lesion is made in the cerebrum of a frog there is no hesitation in connecting it with any consequent paralysis of movement

Now experiment involves the control and manipulation of some at least of the elements which are present Since the number of elements is indefinite, and we wish to add or subtract one only, we must ask on what grounds one is selected in preference to another Occasionally the elements may be chosen without any definite reason in order to see what happens when they are added or taken away But such random experiment is suited rather to complete ignorance than to any stage of knowledge Analogy will probably indicate what variations are promising, if no more definite suggestion is at hand As a rule, however, the investigator by one or other of the methods is in possession of a suggested causal relation which he desires to test There is some definite A which is thought to be the cause of the phenomenon, and it is his business by introducing or withdrawing A to watch for any corresponding change in the facts

The method, it will be noted, directly investigates the effects of a given cause It works forwards, from cause to effect. Regarded as a mode of discovering the cause of a given effect, it rests upon an hypothesis We assume the possibility of a given cause as sufficient to account for the phenomenon in question We then try to introduce that cause into a suitable set of conditions so as to see if it fulfils our expectation by securing the change which we believe it capable of producing

The method formally demands the inclusion or exclusion from a given set of conditions of one element at a time. This is necessary on the ground that if two or more elements were involved it would be impossible to tell in what way the effect was related to them It might be due to them in any conceivable combination, and the method would lose the precision it claims To obviate this and to make the experiment decisive there should be *one* circumstance added to or withdrawn from known conditions

But to lay down this requirement is to demand a much greater knowledge and manipulative skill than is usually available It may need many experiments extending over a longer or shorter period, it may even need a new discovery, before the desired single difference is obtained The conditions into which a new element is introduced may be imperfectly known, and thus give rise to an erroneous inference. It is well known that a current of electricity passed through water decomposes that substance into its component gases, hydrogen and oxygen In early experiments of this kind it was noticed that an acid and an alkali formed at the two opposite poles where the current entered the water Since the composition of water was known it was thought by some that the introduction into it of the electric current was the sole cause of the production of the new substances But unknown to them other conditions were present which accounted for the change. It was left to Davy to demonstrate their presence

Davy "conjectured that there might be some hidden cause of this portion of the effect the glass containing the water might suffer partial decomposition, or some foreign matter might be mingled with the water, and the acid and alkali be disengaged from it, so that the water would have no share in their production Assuming this, he proceeded to try whether the total removal of the cause would destroy the effect, or at least the diminution of it cause a corresponding change in the amount of the effect. By the substitution of gold vessels for the glass, without any change in the effect, he at once determined that the glass was not the cause. Employing distilled water, he found a marked diminution of the quantity of acid and alkali evolved, yet there was enough to show that the cause, whatever it was, was still in operation. The impurity of the water, then, was not the sole but a concurrent cause He now conceived that the perspiration from the hands touching the instruments might affect the case, as it would contain common salt, and an acid and an alkali would result from its decomposition under the agency of electricity. By carefully avoiding such contact, he reduced the quantity of the products still further until no more than slight traces of them were perceptible What remained of the effect might be traceable to impurities of the atmosphere decomposed by contact with the electrical apparatus. An experiment determined this the machine was put under an exhausted receiver, and when thus secured from atmospheric influence, it no longer evolved the acid and the alkali."[1] Thus by successive experiments the passage of the current through the water was seen to be the sufficient cause of its decomposition into hydrogen and oxygen.

It is equally easy to be under the impression that only one element is being added when in reality more than one are introduced. This was well illustrated in the controversy between Pouchet and Pasteur as to the existence of spontaneous generation Pouchet submitted that his experiments, conducted with extreme precautions, proved that "animals and plants could be generated in a medium absolutely free from atmospheric air, and in which, therefore, no germ of organic bodies could have been brought by air."[2] All germs in the material used were destroyed by heat, and chemically prepared oxygen was substituted for ordinary air in order to sustain the life generated.

Pasteur showed that in spite of his precautions Pouchet had deceived himself in thinking that germs from the air had been excluded He then went on to demonstrate by ingenious tests of his own devising that when air was purified from germs by being passed through cotton wool or asbestos it was powerless to generate life in an alterable liquid, itself deprived of germs by ebullition ; while the same liquid abounded in life when exposed to unfiltered air. Another experiment in which the germs in the air were destroyed by heat was objected to on the ground that the heat might conceivably affect other elements in the air which it was said might be necessary for the spontanoeous generation, *e g.* 'electricity, magnetism, ozone, unknown forces even' To change one circumstance and one only is a matter for great practical sagacity.

---

[1] Gore, *The Art of Scientific Discovery*, pp 432-3.

[2] Vallery-Radot, *Life of Pasteur*, Eng. trans., p 93.

We cannot assume that the introduction of a new element is the sole cause of any change which may ensue. It is always necessary to take account of the conditions on which it supervenes. In another context no such change might appear, and in such cases the new element is the occasion rather than the cause of the result The lighting of a fuse attached to a charge of blasting powder may be followed by the shattering of rock Although the only difference between the elements before and after is the lighting of the fuse we do not think of it as the cause of the explosion

Again, collateral but unobserved changes may be set up which are the real conditions of the observed effect. This is often so in physiology A certain brain area is stimulated by pressure, electricity, or some other means, and a reaction, say in the shape of a specific movement, follows. That reaction may be due, however, not to the excitement of the first area, but to the collateral and unobserved excitement of a second area with which the movement is directly connected

Too great an interval must not elapse between the introduction of the supposed cause and the noting of the effect For in the meantime other elements may creep in which may modify or be the true constituents of the cause. Quinine taken one day may or may not have allayed the fever which disappears a few days later It is not the mere interval but the difficulty of maintaining continued control of the conditions which gives importance to the element of time. Where the conditions throughout are not liable to outside interference great length of time may even be indispensable. Certain experiments of Sir William Thomson are of this type. He placed "small quantities of blue vitriol and other coloured soluble substances in the bottom of very tall vertical glass tubes, filled with water and hermitically sealed, in order to ascertain the amounts of diffusion, etc , and other effects after a great length of time . . It is calculated that several hundreds of years will be required to complete the diffusive process "[1]

It sometimes happens that certain forces are kept in equilibrium by the counteraction of their several tendencies to produce given effects A new factor introduced may simply liberate these forces so that they may have free play. A train at rest on a steep incline is set in motion by releasing the brakes but no one would assign such release as the true cause of the motion A closer analysis would reveal weight, incline, and comparative absence of friction, as elements in producing the acquired momentum, and that each is so operative could be shown by further applications of the method of difference

Such considerations emphasise the difficulties of applying the method of difference They do not imply that as a method it is not cogent If conditions were such that we could rigidly apply the method, it, like the method of exclusions, would be sufficient to verify hypotheses

(iv) *Method of Concomitant Variations* —The methods we have considered are lacking in quantitative precision, and in some cases cannot be applied They are usefully supplemented by the **Method of Concomitant Variations**, which does not differ essentially from them in principle Instead of an examination of instances in which cause and effect are present or absent as a whole, cases are considered in which there is a corresponding variation in the elements suspected of being causally connected Any kind of variation is not sufficient The argument rests on the assumption that cause and effect are equal in energy increase or decrease in the one must be followed by a proportionate change in the other For direct causal connection then we require a variation in simple proportion. Symbolically—

$$\begin{array}{cccc} A & 2A & 3A & \\ | & | & | & \cdot\ \cdot\ \cdot\ \cdot\ \cdot \\ x & 2x & 3x & \end{array}$$

---

[1] Gore, *Art of Scientific Discovery*, p 558.

Evidently if A is the whole cause of x each additional A must be followed by an additional x. If this is secured the probability of causation is strong But stated thus abstractly no account is taken of the other elements present. It is assumed that these remain the same, and that the sole difference in each case is the quantitative change in A. The assumption is justified if A can be varied at will, so that we may try the effect of the introduction or withdrawal of successive amounts of A We are then adopting a modified form of the method of difference the change in this case being purely quantitative and stopping short of the complete removal of the suspected cause

But experiment is not always possible, and then it is not likely that instances exhibiting change in simple proportion will be found open to observation Whether they are, or are not, a new difficulty arises Both changes may be due to a third element which remains undetected, because hidden from observation. If the connection is of the simple type that we have considered there may be no reason to suspect that it is dependent on unknown conditions If, however, the variation is in any other than simple proportion we know that we have not the whole cause of the phenomenon before us In such a case as $A - x$, $2A - 4x$, $3A - 9x$, etc., were A the sufficient cause of x we cannot see why the addition of A should be followed by a more than proportionate increase in x The evidence for some connection between them is strong, and since it is not directly that of cause and effect, we are led to assume that they are probably joint effects of some unknown cause

It is not necessary that the changes in amount should be measured in the same direction An increase in the cause may be followed by a numerical decrease in the effect, for example, an increase in pressure will at a constant temperature be followed by a diminution in the volume of a gas.

We have seen that the Method cannot always reveal the whole cause of the varying event before us; but sometimes it cannot reveal any causal connection This is especially so when the variation cannot be exactly measured Then we cannot tell whether the change is or is not fortuitous

In combination with other methods we may, however, determine the nature of the connection if any exists To take a simple illustration from Darwin—

He found that on Keeling Island "the wells are situated from which ships obtain water At first sight it appears not a little remarkable that the fresh water should regularly ebb and flow with the tides, and it has even been imagined that sand has the power of filtering the salt from the sea-water. These ebbing wells are common on some of the low islands in the West Indies. The compressed sand or porous coral rock is permeated like a sponge with the salt water, but the rain which falls on the surface must sink to the level of the surrounding sea, and must accumulate there, displacing an equal bulk of the salt water. As the water in the lower part of the great sponge-like coral mass rises and falls with the tides, so will the water near the surface, and this will keep fresh, if the mass be sufficiently compact to prevent much mechanical admixture, but where the land consists of great loose blocks of coral with open interstices, if a well be dug, the water, as I have seen, is brackish."[1]

Here we see a method of elimination resorted to in order to explain a concomitant variation, which in itself only suggested some kind of connection between wells and tides, but in that very suggestion presented the difficulty that the water in the former case differed from that in the latter. To establish a causal connection it was essential to account for this difference by showing how the salt of the sea-water was excluded[2]

The method of concomitant variations is of greatest value when the variations in amount or intensity can be exactly measured. Indeed in this respect it has the advantage over all the methods we have already considered. A relation which has been broadly established by the method of difference or the method of exclusions is at once rendered precise when it is determined as a relation of quantity That heat causes the expansion of metals is a sound enough conclusion from the method of difference, but it is vague When we know that a certain quantity of heat will produce in each case an increase in bulk exactly represented by the coefficient of expansion, we not only increase our power of effective manipulation in cases where the force is under control, but the understanding has a better grasp of the facts. Mathematics is the best means that science has at its command for attaining precision, and a law of nature is held to be most completely determined when it can be mathematically expressed

---

[1] *The Voyage of the Beagle*, Ch. xx.

[2] The complete logical analysis is left as an exercise to the student.

The corresponding changes in quantity between two elements which are supposed to be directly or indirectly in causal relation to each other may be graphically represented by means of a curve A horizontal line is drawn from a fixed point, and a series of points at equal distances from one another are taken to represent equal amounts of the one element, while on a vertical line drawn from the same fixed point are marked off in a similar way equal spaces to represent equal amounts of the other element. From each point on the horizontal line vertical lines are drawn to meet horizontal lines drawn from each of the corresponding points on the original vertical line The intersection of each pair of lines gives a series of points which when joined give the curve representing the relation This curve shows at a glance the degree of the variation and whether it takes place in a regular manner.

The newspaper weather charts represent in this manner the variation in the height of the barometer from day to day. Here, of course, there is no direct causal relation. Economists often use the same device. For example, it is usual to draw a curve representing the influence of successive doses of capital on the return got from land under cultivation. The horizontal divisions, or abscissae, represent the capital : the vertical divisions, or ordinates, the yield in crops The curve within certain limits is regular in form, and in the direction of a more than proportionate increase in the return. One might be tempted to expect that since the general direction of the curve indicates an increase it might be indefinitely continued, and so the conclusion be drawn that every increase in the amount of capital will be followed by a more than proportionate return. But when the increase goes beyond a certain point it is found that the yield diminishes in value, and the curve consequently undergoes a change in direction.

What the curve represents to the eye as a break in the continuity of the relation is merely a graphic representation of the truth that a variation which holds good within a definite range of experience may not hold when the range is extended. If then we extend the range of such variation simply as an inference without testing its truth by an appeal to fact we may be exposed to contradiction "Water contracts as it is cooling Suppose we begin to note this continued contracting of water from 100° F to 90°, we naturally expect to find it continuing through 90° to 80°. And as we observe, we find our expectations confirmed. And so on through to 40°, we find that water continues to contract It is, therefore, most natural for us to expect to find water contracting at 39°. But just at this point in the series, there is a break in the continuity of variation; at 39° water begins to expand and so continues until it passes into the solid form at the freezing-point "[1]

We must, then, be cautious in making or accepting such inferences The only safeguard is to submit them to experimental tests over a wide range of instances until the critical points at which the law is modified, if such exist, are discovered.

The *complete exclusion of a cause required by the method of difference* is not always practicable even where the cause allows to some extent of experimental control. There are permanent elements in nature such as the force of gravitation, heat, friction, of which we cannot get rid But though we cannot remove them we may by various devices make their action greater or less in amount, and note the changes which ensue In this way we can learn much of their nature, and often formulate the law of their action even though we only find it exemplified as a tendency which is always to some degree counteracted. This is a most useful application of the method of Concomitant Variations.

Mill instances the first law of motion—that all bodies in motion continue to move in a straight line with uniform velocity until acted on by some new force. No example of perpetual motion occurs in nature, but various obstacles to it such as friction and retardation of the atmosphere may account for this. If that be so a diminution in the resistance due to them should be followed by an increase in the time during which a given velocity is maintained Experiments showed that this was the case "The simple oscillation of a weight suspended from a fixed point, and moved a little out of the perpendicular, which in ordinary circumstances lasts but a few minutes, was prolonged in Borda's experiments to more than thirty hours, by diminishing as much as possible the friction at the point of suspension, and by making the body oscillate in a space exhausted as nearly as possible of its air. There could, therefore, be no hesitation in assigning the whole of the retardation of motion to the influence of the obstacles, and since, after subducting this retardation from the total phenomenon, the remainder was an uniform velocity, the result was the proposition known as the first Law of Motion."[1]

---

[1] Hibben, *Inductive Logic*, pp 142-3.

Perhaps the most important examples of variations due to a common but unobserved cause are those which occur in fixed periods The movements of the tides which change regularly in character according to the position in the heavens of the sun and moon are an often quoted example Another remarkable periodic coincidence is that between the occurrence of the Aurora Borealis, magnetic storms, and changes in the spots on the sun In the middle of the nineteenth century it was established that once in about ten years magnetic disturbances reach a maximum of violence and frequency, and that at about the same interval the activity of the sun spots is at its greatest Further, it was discovered that the Aurora Borealis is associated with a disturbed condition of the sun. "Subsequent detailed observation has exhibited the curve of auroral frequency as following with such fidelity the jagged lines figuring to the eye the fluctuations of solar and magnetic activity as to leave no reasonable doubt that all three rise and sink together under the influence of a common cause."[1] What that cause is has not yet been discovered.

---

[1] Mill, *System of Logic*, Bk III, Ch viii., § 7

(v) *Method of Residues*—We have considered the preceding methods in the simplest form by assuming that each investigation attempts to establish one causal connection in a series of complex phenomena. Of course, the advance of knowledge demands that such investigations should be made again and again with the same kind of sequence, in each case considering a fresh set of relations At first the residue denoted by $B - y$ in our general formula $AB \ldots xy$ is a great complex as yet unanalysed But as enquiry goes on this is more and more known and we are able to describe the sequence as—

$$A\,C\,D\,E \ldots Z \text{———} x\,o\,p\,q \ldots m$$

where

$$A - x,\ C - o,\ D - p,\ E - q\ .$$

are all known connections, so that the remainder, $Z - m$, is itself of a very simple nature There is then a strong presumption that $Z - m$ is a causal connection. This is known as the **Method of Residues,** and it is evident that it is only applicable to matter which has already been the subject of much investigation.

Now either Z can be withdrawn, in which case the hypothesis of its relation to m can be tested by the method of Difference; or it can be varied in amount, when the method of Concomitant Variations is available; or parallel instances can be found of its presence and absence, when the method of Exclusions comes into play, or none of these are possible, in which case it is necessary to resort to the indirect method of deducing the various forms in which the consequences of Z would appear in different sets of co-operative circumstances, and seeking verification by comparison of these expectations with actual facts

Obviously, the mere fact that $Z - m$ remains unexplained is only a negative kind of presumption that they are causally connected, and before it can be accepted as established it must have positive confirmation Certainly the more the whole phenomena have been analysed the greater presumption of truth this hypothesis has at the beginning—the simpler is the positive demonstration needed.

---

[1] Clerke, *History of Astronomy during the XIXth Century,* p. 161, cf. pp. 156-61.

In other cases the hypothesis may start, as it were, much further back. Only one side of the residual sequence is known to exist the other is supposed as a hypothesis. Such supposition, if it can be made at all, cannot be made with much likelihood of successs except by a mind well stored with pertinent knowledge, which in framing it applies at once the indirect method of seeking for a relation which on known laws would yield this unexplained result Put symbolically there is known—

$$A\,C\,D\,E \qquad - \;\text{——}\, x\,o\,p\,q \qquad .\,m.$$

The whole of $A\ C\ D\ E$ . . . as known is required to account for $x\ o\ p\ q$. Nothing in the known conditions remains as an explanation for the m which has just been discovered to exist in the result There is evidently a call for enquiry. There must be assumed some Z which on the analogy of all pertinent knowledge will account for just this m in just this form.

The history of astronomy offers many pertinent examples. Before it was observed through the telescope the planet Neptune was assumed as a hypothesis to account for deviations of the planet Uranus from the path which exact calculation of the effects of the known heavenly bodies laid down for it. The mathematical nature of the deductions involved from this assumption made it possible to be sure that if such a new planet was in existence it would be in a certain place in the heavens at a certain time The verification was then only dependent on the telescopes used being of sufficient power. Had the planet not been found increased power of lens would have been sought before the hypothesis was given up. On all known analogy the existence of the new planet was the *only* way of explaining the residual phenomena consistently with the theory of gravitation, so the hypothesis had an extremely high probability. Yet astronomy could not be satisfied without positive verification.

As another example we will take Romer's determination of the velocity of light from observations of the satellites of Jupiter These are five in number, and their motions are of such a nature that each satellite, once in every revolution, enters the shadow-cone thrown by Jupiter, and so becomes eclipsed. The time when any particular satellite should be eclipsed could be calculated exactly, but there was found to be a discrepancy between this calculated time and the observed time Here was a residual phenomenon which needed investigation Now the period of revolution for each satellite is comparatively short, and consequently the eclipses are frequent In each case the eclipse is calculated to take place at regular intervals so that the time between two eclipses remains the same But "astronomical observations of Jupiter's satellites show that while the earth in its orbital motion is receding from Jupiter the mean period between two successive eclipses of a particular satellite is longer than that which elapses when the earth in its orbital motion is approaching Jupiter"[1] The hypothesis was, therefore, advanced that the discrepancy between calculation and observation was due to the velocity of light Thus "when the earth is receding from Jupiter the light from a disappearing satellite has to travel a greater distance at each successive disappearance"[2] The interval, therefore, appears to lengthen On this supposition Romer obtained the first trustworthy value for the velocity of light

The residual phenomenon is usually of small dimensions It was a small discrepancy in weight which led to the discovery of argon So in the example already quoted of the irregularities of the motion of Uranus, "It may be stated as illustrative of the perfection to which astronomy had been brought that divergencies regarded as menacing the very foundation of its theories never entered the range of unaided vision In other words, if the theoretical and the real Uranus had been placed side by side in the sky, they would have seemed to the sharpest eye to form a single body."[3]

---

[1] Edser, *Light for Students*, p 219. [2] *Ibid*, pp 219-20

[3] Clerke, *op cit*, p 96.

3. Indirect Establishment of Hypotheses.—The work of each of the direct methods singly, and of all of them combined, is then to suggest laws connecting observable phenomena. Since these methods deal only with phenomena open to observation and manipulation they can never directly reach those hidden connections which physical science more and more seeks They cannot deal directly with atoms or gravitation, or any natural force They describe the visible results of a causal connection Some of them, as we have seen, would be sufficient to establish causal connections, but they cannot explain them

Such results stand apart in a kind of fictitious independence till they are shown to be expressions of a much smaller number of more fundamental relations "Friction, combustion, the liquefaction of a vapour, freezing, pressure, all produce heat What could be more apparently disparate than these agencies ? Yet all of them alike involve the liberation of molecular motion in accordance with mechanical laws common to all the cases"[1] The direct methods can establish that heat does result from each of these agencies To show them all as variants of a wider law of molecular motion can only be done indirectly For molecular motion does not lie open to direct observation

The whole of the construction of the physical world is for science a set of relations which cannot be perceived by the senses, and which are held to be established because the results which can be shown with mathematical certainty to follow from them in various combinations are found fulfilled in nature This unifying of the empirical laws as a necessary consequence of a very small number of theories as to the nature of the world is the only form of explanation science can reach Why that nature is what it is science cannot say Its task is to know that nature, and there can be no other proof that it has attained that knowledge than that its assumptions yield a system consistent both with itself and with the results of continued careful and accurate observation

The direct methods, therefore, lead up to the formation of these wider hypotheses which can only be tested indirectly. Only indirect enquiry is possible in cases in which the facts cannot be got at directly, but in which our reasoning has to start from some record of them

---

[1] Hobhouse, *op cit*, p 366.

The causes of historical and social phenomena are largely hidden, and can only be recovered by a hypothetical reconstruction. Geology and Biology are also in a broad sense historical. No record remains of the causal sequences by which the earth has reached its present state, and living species of plants and animals their present characteristics The history of development in either sphere is reconstructed by framing hypotheses in the light of analogies drawn from experience, and by testing whether the consequences they entail would result in the facts which prior and subsequent enquiry make known For a small range of fact is sufficient to suggest a supposition which, through the inference it logically supports, becomes the revealer of facts which otherwise had remained unobserved

The theory of Gravitation illustrates the use of the indirect method. The story of Newton's development of the theory of gravitation is well known. Observation of the motion of falling bodies by Galileo had led to the empirical law that bodies, irrespective of size or material, fall through the same distances in equal times Newton by experiments with the pendulum established the same law with greater exactness. Moreover Kepler, improving on the earlier labours of Tycho Brahé, had by incessant observation of the heavens and much conjecture reached the conclusion that the motion of the planets can be described in three laws—that each planet revolves round the sun in an elliptical path with the sun in one of the foci, that it revolves with such a velocity that a straight line drawn from it to the sun passes over equal areas in equal times, and that the squares of the number of days taken by the planets to complete a revolution are proportional to the cubes of their mean distances from the sun.

But so far no reason had been given why the empirical laws of falling bodies and of planetary motion should be as they had been determined. Newton supplied a reason by his hypothesis that they were due to the attraction of bodies by one another directly in proportion to their mass and inversely as the square of the distance between them Taking the moon as his first example he showed by mathematical reasoning that if the hypothesis were true its motion would be in a certain path. After some years this was confirmed by observation. He then extended his reasoning to the case of other planets, and ultimately to all particles of matter. His deductions were verified by an examination of the actual motion of the planets, and in astronomy his principles have been verified many times by subsequent observations and discoveries. The fact that Einstein's general theory of relativity necessitates a certain modification in Newton's theory only illustrates the fact that as knowledge advances even those theories which appear to be most firmly established may require modification.

As an example in Geology we may indicate the kind of reasoning by which the transport of boulders often of great size has been attributed to glacial action The existence of these rocks in valleys and on hills of a different geological structure from that of the rocks themselves gives rise to the problem as to how they have arrived at their present position. For instance, " such 'erratics' not only abound in the Swiss valleys, but cross the great plain of Switzerland, and appear in numbers high upon the flanks of the Jura. Since the latter mountains consist chiefly of limestone, and the blocks are of various crystalline rocks belonging to the higher parts of the Alps, the proof of transport is irrefragable."[1]

But how has the transport been effected? There is no visible agency at work with which the movement of the rocks is obviously connected Recourse must be had to hypothesis. Various agencies have been suggested, but it is now generally accepted that they have been transported to their present position by means of ice. It follows at once that ice (1) must be capable of doing the work, and (2) must have extended at one time over areas from which in many cases it is now remote.

Glaciers are the most conspicuous examples of the action of ice on land. It is found that though to a casual glance they seem to be at rest they are in reality moving On their surface they bear earth, stones, and rubbish, weathered from the cliffs and slopes of the valley down which they are descending The masses of rock are sometimes "as big as a large cottage" The detritus is liable to slip into crevasses, and may descend to the bottom of the ice to be moved with it along the rocky floor, so that "whether on the ice, in the ice, or under the ice, a vast quantity of detritus is continually travelling with a glacier down towards lower ground."[1] If the action of ice, then, be admitted as a cause it would be sufficient to explain the transport of rocks as far as the movement of the ice can be traced By what signs can we support the hypothesis that masses of ice have at one time passed over any given surface ?

---

[1] Geikie, *Textbook of Geography*, fourth ed., Vol. I, p. 554.

"Beneath the ice of the Swiss glaciers lies a thin inconstant layer of fine wet mud, sand, and stones, derived partly from the descent of materials from the surface down the crevasses, partly from the rocks of the sides and bottom of the glacier bed These materials may be seen fixed sometimes in the ice itself. Though it may locally accumulate, this layer is apt to be removed by the ice or by the water that flows under the glacier."[2] This deposit constitutes the so-called boulder clay. If, then, we find boulder clay, that will be one indication of glacial action

Again, the erosion caused by glaciers is of an easily distinguishable kind It is effected not so much by the contact and pressure of the ice on the rocks as by means of the fine sand, stones, and blocks of rock that fall between the ice and the rocks on which it moves, or between the ice and the side of the valley in which it lies "Under the slow, continuous, and enormously erosive power of a glacier, the most compact resisting rocks are ground down, smoothed, polished, and striated. The striae vary from such fine lines as may be made by the smallest grains of quartz up to deep ruts and grooves"[3] The stones effecting the erosion are polished and marked in the same way, the striae or parallel lines running generally in a longitudinal direction. If the hypothesis of ice action be true such marks will probably be found on the erratic boulders and in their neighbourhood. We must search for them and so apply the test of fact.

---

[1] *Ibid*, p. 546. [2] *Ibid.* [3] *Ibid*, p 550.

Various other indications may be present, such as the smooth undulating "hummocky bosses of rock" left behind on the retirement of a glacier or the huge hollows worn away where the rock was softer and which may now be filled with water, forming tarns or lakes. The process of investigation and reasoning which led to the theory of an ice age extended over many years, required many workers, and presented many difficulties. We have merely given in bare outline illustrations of the type of inference involved.

Evidently the conclusions of history can only be reached by the indirect method. The phenomena which the historian seeks to explain are extremely complex. There is no clear sequence open to observation, nor is it possible to isolate a causal connection by any of the direct methods. The explanation of the state of a nation at any given period involves the consideration of its knowledge, morals, industry, institutions, race characteristics, geographical conditions, and numerous other factors each complex in itself. And if we single out one aspect for study and endeavour to trace, say, political, religious, or economic progress there is the same complexity. The conditions modify one another in countless ways, and it is difficult to determine their relative importance. Even a single event often presents a similar difficulty of interpretation. The play of human motive and of circumstances but imperfectly realised produces effects for which it is difficult to find grounds at once adequate and indisputable. Indeed, motives can only be conjectured from words and actions the influence of dominant interests on men can at best be assigned with some reserve. When we add to this the necessary scantiness and imperfection of the data in many instances, and that such facts as we have are based on testimony with its many liabilities to error, we see that the work of the historian is one both of criticism and of construction.

Having determined the facts by criticism, he desires to weld them together so far as may be in causal sequence. The only procedure open to him is to choose one of the known conditions, or it may be one conjectured to be present, which on analogy with what is known of human nature in similar circumstances is likely to have produced or to have helped in producing the given effect Taking this hypothetical condition as true he will then seek to establish that, in accordance with recognised principles of human nature, it would lead to consequences of a certain kind under which all the relevant facts may be embraced At the same time he will try to prove that rival suggestions involve principles leading to results incompatible with the established data. In actual investigation it will be found that, as a rule, not one but many conditions contribute to produce an event or series of events, and the emphasis to be laid on the different factors will vary

It may be possible to show that the different conditions flow from one root cause of wider generality. For example, let us take the causes of the decline of the American Confederation. As usually given they are as follows: "1 The Confederation had no executive or judicial department. 2. Congress could not raise an army. 3. No power of direct or indirect taxation was given to the Confederation. 4. Congress had no control over domestic commerce 5 Congress could not enforce treaties with other nations. 6. The Confederation operated on states and not on individuals 7 The Articles of Confederation recognised the sovereigny of the state. 8. Voting in Congress was by states 9 The people owed allegiance to the state only "[1] The first eight can be shown on examination to be closely related to the last, which embodies the fundamental principle that " wherever primary allegiance is placed there sovereignty will reside."[2]

Such principles should be used with caution It is so easy to support them 'from the nature of the case' without bringing them to the touchstone of facts History may err by reaching out to either of two extremes. It may content itself with a collection of facts, or it may develop principles without sufficient regard to the results of experience. Even when the facts are carefully considered it often happens that they are well explained on one hypothesis without being so exactly determined or so decisive as to exclude another In the last resort there is frequently a balance of probability, which men of different temperaments and training will strike in different ways

---

[1] Mace, *Method in History*, p 30.

[2] *Ibid*, p. 31.

A similar uncertainty attaches itself to the use of the indirect method in ordinary life. The teacher perplexed by an epidemic of disorder, or the merchant anxious to gauge the stability of his markets, casts about for probable causes which in their combination would produce results apparent or to be predicted. The certainty they reach is problematical in theory but sufficient for practical action The circumstances of the case point sufficiently clearly in a given direction.

The circumstantial evidence in our law courts, upon which criminals are often convicted, is of this kind It is to the interest of the criminal to commit his crime unobserved · it is the duty of the prosecution to show, in the absence of the evidence of eye-witnesses, that no one but the prisoner could have committed it Many circumstances may point to guilt · there may be obvious motives to the crime, apparent preparations to commit it, possession of its fruits, unsatisfactory explanations of suspicious appearances, suppression, destruction, or fabrication of evidence, failure to account for movements at the time the crime was committed in the face of testimony to presence in the neighbourhood

Not one of these is sufficient in itself to prove guilt , each is susceptible of an innocent explanation It is the combination and convergence of the separate strands of evidence which makes innocence improbable On the hypothesis that the crime has been committed by the accused the facts fall into their place and form a conclusive whole, though each part may be inconclusive in itself. If no other hypothesis can be devised which explains the circumstances as well or better, the prisoner will probably be condemned.

" A man is found dead with his throat cut. A knife is found in a ditch close by. There are footprints in the mud. X was known to be in the neighbourhood on the day ; evidence is given that he purchased the knife a week before ; his boots fit the footprints. All these facts might be due to a collocation of separate causes, but all are explicable by a single cause, namely, that X planned and carried out the murder The single assumption is so much more probable than the multiple combination of circumstances that it is likely to go hard with X, and his business is to produce some fact incompatible with the above explanation Failing this, one or two more such combinations of circumstances, and our conviction of the strength of the hypothetical argument will be evinced in a very practical manner "[1]

---

[1] Hobhouse, *The Theory of Knowledge*, p 422

CHAPTER XXXI.

EXAMPLES OF INDUCTION.

We will in this chapter examine from a logical standpoint some actual pieces of scientific enquiry It is only by careful study and analysis of such examples that one appreciates how intensely difficult is the search for knowledge, how many opportunities there are for error, how far removed from the simplicity of a formal statement of the methods employed is the actual employment of those methods A process whose abstract nature can be described by the logician in a few minutes may take months or years to carry to a successful issue in the actual work of the discovery of truth The successful questioner of nature needs infinite patience, infinite resource, as well as great imagination and constructive power, a keen critical faculty, and a sound well-balanced judgment

1. Formation of Vegetable Mould.—As an example of a very careful and thorough enquiry conducted nearly entirely by simple observation, and yet reaching a very high degree of probability in its conclusion, we will take Darwin's investigations into the formation of vegetable mould The hypothesis suggested was that this is due to the action of earth-worms.

If this is true, that is, if earth "is brought up by worms from beneath the surface, and is afterwards spread out more or less completely by the rain and wind," then small objects left on the surface will gradually become buried Mr. Darwin records many observations to establish this proposition For instance "In the spring of 1835, a field, which had long existed as poor pasture, and was so swampy that it trembled slightly when stamped on, was thickly covered with red sand so that the whole surface appeared at first bright red.

When holes were dug in this field after an interval of about two and a half years, the sand formed a layer at a depth of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. beneath the surface. In 1842 (that is, seven years after the sand had been laid on) fresh holes were dug, and now the red sand formed a distinct layer, 2 in. beneath the surface. . . . Immediately beneath the layer of red sand, the original substratum of black sandy peat extended "[1]

But may the character of the land be disregarded, or is that an essential element? This point was settled by observing that in cases of land differing widely from that on which the first observations were made, whenever worms were present the result was the same. This, of course, was an application of the Method of Agreement To take an unpromising instance Darwin records that " The chalk formation extends all round my house in Kent, and its surface, from having been exposed during an immense period to the dissolving action of rain-water, is extremely irregular, being abruptly festooned and penetrated by many deep well-like cavities During the dissolution of the chalk, the insoluble matter, including a vast number of unrolled flints of all sizes, has been left on the surface, and forms a bed of stiff red clay, full of flints, and generally from 6 to 14 feet in thickness. Over the red clay, wherever the land has long remained as pasture, there is a layer a few inches in thickness, of dark-coloured vegetable mould "[2]

In some instances, the observations partook of the nature of experiment, as when chalk was spread on a pasture " for the sake of observing at some future period to what depth it would become buried," and it was found that after twenty-nine years, the chalk was 7 inches below the surface. Even a steeply sloping field " thickly covered with small and large flints," was after thirty years so completely covered that " a horse could gallop over the compact turf from one end of the field to the other, and not strike a single stone with his shoes. . . This was certainly the work of the worms, for though castings were not frequent for several years, yet some were thrown up month after month, and these gradually increased in numbers as the pasture improved."[1] Moreover, "the specific gravity of the objects does not affect their rate of sinking, as could be seen by porous cinders, burnt marl, chalk, and quartz pebbles, having all sunk to the same depth within the same time"[2]

---

[1] Darwin, *Vegetable Mould and Earth Worms*, pp 134-5.

[2] *Ibid*, pp 137-9

We have, necessarily, only cited a very few of the observations made, but the total evidence goes to support a connection between the existence of earth-worms and the formation of mould.

However, there are apparent exceptions—large boulders do not sink. All the hollow spaces between such a boulder and the earth will be filled up, and the surface of the ground will be raised to a height of several inches all round the edge of the stone But further examination shows that the exceptions are only apparent, and really prove the rule "If . . . a boulder is of such huge dimensions, that the earth beneath is kept dry, such earth will not be inhabited by worms, and the boulder will not sink into the ground."[3] In one case in which a large stone "67 inches in length, 39 in breadth, and 15 in thickness" . had only "sunk about two inches into the ground" in thirty-five years, "on digging a large hole to a depth of 18 inches where the stone had lain, only two worms and a few burrows were seen, although the soil was damp and seemed favourable for worms There were some large colonies of ants beneath the stone, and possibly since their establishment the worms had decreased in number."[4]

Thus, the apparent exceptions turn out upon closer examination to be negative instances—where there are no worms, there is no sinking of objects A negative instance on a larger scale is recorded "I examined in Knole Park a dense forest of lofty beech-trees beneath which nothing grew Here the ground was thickly strewed with large naked stones, and worm-castings were almost wholly absent. Obscure lines and irregularities on the surface indicated that the land had been cultivated some centuries ago It is probable that a thick wood of young beech-trees sprung up so quickly, that time enough was not allowed for worms to cover up the stones with their castings, before the site became unfitted for their existence."[1] Both positive and negative instances, then, go to support the universal propositions "If there are worms, there is vegetable mould" and "If there is vegetable mould, there are worms." Here the methods applied are the Joint Method and Concomitant Variations

---

[1] *Ibid.*, pp. 143-4.

[2] *Ibid*, p. 157.

[3] *Ibid*, p. 149

[4] *Ibid*, pp. 152-3.

But certain objections must be met as to the inadequacy of the suggested agency to produce the results. Investigations were, therefore, made as to the number of worms existing in a measured space Hensen, from counting those found in a piece of garden, calculated the number at 53,767 in an acre, though he "believes that worms are here twice as numerous as in cornfields"[2] But more definite results were obtained in estimating the weight of the castings The results of four carefully examined cases give that in a year castings calculated to yield from seven and a half to over eighteen tons per acre are ejected[3] By carefully breaking up the dried castings, and pressing them down in a measure, the cubical content was found, and allowance being made for the lesser degree of compactness of the triturated castings as compared with mould, it was calculated that the above-mentioned results would yield a layer of mould from an inch to an inch and a half in thickness in ten years This was found to be rather less than the observed depth to which objects had sunk in that time But allowance must be made for "the loss which the weighed castings had previously undergone through being washed by rain, by the adhesion of particles to the blades of the surrounding grass, and by their crumbling when dry," and also for the lesser agency of burrowing larvae and insects, especially ants, and of moles. "But," says Darwin, "in our county these latter several agencies appear to be of quite subordinate importance in comparison with the action of worms."[4] Here we see the force

[1] *Ibid.*, pp 144-5

[2] *Ibid*, pp 158-9.

[3] Cf. *ibid*, pp. 168-9.

[4] *Ibid*, pp. 172-3.

added to a probability even by a somewhat rough application of measurement and mathematical calculation.

2. The Silkworm Disease.[1]—The investigation into the nature and origin of the disease which in the middle of the last century threatened to destroy the silkworm industry is an admirable example of actual inductive work, and of the value of the trained mind to the general community. It brings out clearly how only to such a mind does the fruitful hypothesis occur; it only has the pertinent knowledge without which the true analogy is unseen The hypothesis once formed the consequences which must follow from it are inferred. and then tested. It is in this testing that the direct methods are available Here appeal was mainly to the Joint Method, though in the experiments the greater rigidity of the Method of Difference was approached We see, too, how one enquiry grows out of another till there is established a system sufficient to explain all the phenomena under examination

Louis Pasteur was induced to take up the enquiry in 1865. "Amidst the labyrinth of facts and opinions, it was not hypotheses which were wanting For seventeen years they had been rising up on all sides"—atmospheric conditions, degeneration of the race of silkworms, disease of the mulberry tree, etc., were suggested But none so far had proved fruitful

The disease was called pébrine[2] It appeared in all stages. "Some worms languished on the frames in their earliest days, others in the second stage only, some passed through the third and fourth moultings, climbed the twig and spun the cocoon. The chrysalis became a moth, but that diseased moth had deformed antennae and withered legs, the wings seemed singed. Eggs (technically called seed) from those moths were inevitably unsuccessful the following year. Thus, in the same nursery, in the course of the two months that a larva takes to become a moth, the pébrine disease was alternately sudden or insidious : it burst out or disappeared, it hid itself within the chrysalis and reappeared in the moth or the eggs of a moth which had seemed sound."[1] This was the problem Pasteur had to solve.

---

[1] *Louis Pasteur*, by his Son-in-law, pp. 127-63.

[2] From the patois word *pébré* (pepper).

In a memoir on the epidemic M. de Quatrefages related that certain naturalists " had discovered in the worms and moths of the silkworm minute corpuscles visible only with the microscope " ; that another declared these corpuscles to be present in diseased silkworms, and that they had been perceived in silkworms' eggs He " only mentioned this matter of the corpuscles as a passing remark, being doubtful of its importance and perhaps of its accuracy." But it was sufficient to suggest to Pasteur the hypothesis that these corpuscles, if existent, were causally connected with the disease, and it was this hypothesis which he decided to test.

He conducted his investigation at Alais, where the disease was rife. By means of the microscope he soon detected the presence of corpuscles in the worms Their existence was, then, a fact

He resolved to submit them to careful microscopic study. " Two series of worms were being cultivated. The first set was full grown , it came from some Japanese seed guaranteed as sound, and had produced very fine cocoons . . The worms of [the] second series were sickly and did not feed properly. And yet these worms, seen through the microscope, only exceptionally presented corpuscles whilst Pasteur was surprised to find some in almost every moth or chrysalis from the prosperous nursery "[2]

" Faced by the contradictory facts that one successful set of cocoons had produced corpuscled moths, while an apparently unsuccessful set of worms showed neither corpuscles nor spots, he had awaited the last period of these worms with an impatient curiosity. He saw amongst those which had started spinning, some which as yet showed no spots and no corpuscles. But corpuscles were abundant in the chrysalides, those especially which were in full maturity, on the eve of becoming moths, and none of the moths were free from them."[1] The remains of many other backward cultures were examined, and these results were confirmed He tentatively formulated his conclusions at this stage. "It was a mistake," he wrote, "to look for the symptom, the corpuscle, exclusively in the eggs or worms, either might carry in themselves the germ of the disease, without presenting distinct and microscopically visible corpuscles The evil developed itself chiefly in the chrysalides and the moths, it was there that it should chiefly be sought"[2]

---

[1] Vallery-Radot, *The Life of Pasteur*, Eng. trans,, p. 117.

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 118.

So far he had not proved that the corpuscles were the cause of the disease. He came to the conclusion that if his hypothesis were true "the only infallible method of procuring healthy eggs must be by having recourse to moths free from corpuscles"[3] To test this he selected certain eggs of moths from which corpuscles were absent, and others from moths in which corpuscles were numerous These were hatched in the following year with the result anticipated, that the culture in the one case was healthy and in the other diseased The experiment was repeated subsequently, and it was found that the pébrine disease did not appear in cultures from the eggs of healthy moths

In the meantime the question was raised whether the disease was contagious "Some considered that contagion was certain; the majority, however, either doubted or denied its existence, some considered it as accidental."[4] Pasteur resorted to experiment "One of the first experiments was as follows: After their first moulting, he took some very sound worms free from corpuscles, and fed them with corpusculous matter, which he prepared in the following simple manner. He pounded up a silkworm in a little water, and passed a paint-brush dipped in this liquid over the whole surface of the leaves During several days there was not the least appearance of disease in the worms fed on those leaves; they reached their second moulting at the same time as the standard worms which had not been infected. The second moulting was accomplished without any drawback. This was a proof that all the worms, those infected as well as the standard lot, had taken the same amount of nourishment. The parasite was apparently not present

---

[1] *Ibid.*, p. 120.

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 120.

[3] *Louis Pasteur*, Eng. trans., p. 138.

[4] *Ibid.*, p. 141.

"Matters remained in this state for some days longer. Even the third moulting was got through without any marked difference between the two groups of worms. But soon important changes set in The corpuscles which had hitherto only showed themselves in the integuments of the intestines began to appear in the other organs From the second day following the third moulting—that is to say, the twelfth after the infection—a visible inequality distinguished the infected from the non-infected worms. Those of the standard lot were clearly in much the best health On examining the infected worms through a magnifying glass, a multitude of little spots were discovered on their heads, and on the rings of their bodies which had not before shown themselves These spots appeared on the exterior skin when the interior skin of the intestinal canal contained a considerable number of corpuscles It was these corpuscles that impeded digestive functions and interfered with the assimilation of the food Hence arose the inequality of size of the worms After the fourth moulting, the same type of disease was noticed as that which was breaking out everywhere in the silkworm nurseries, especially the symptom of spots on the skin, which had led to the disease being called *pébrine* The peasants said that the worms were peppered. The majority of the worms were full of corpuscles. Those which spun their cocoons produced chrysalides which were nothing but corpusculous pulp, if such a term be allowed."[1]

This comparison of cases in which the disease was introduced with those in which it was not seemed decisive in favour of the hypothesis that pébrine was contagious. But to allow for the influence of conditions in which the two cases differed, and which had been disregarded as unimportant or because they were unknown, "Pasteur was never tired of repeating this curious experiment, or of varying its conditions. Sometimes he introduced the corpusculous food into healthy worms at their birth, sometimes at the second or third moulting. Occasionally, when the worms were about to spin their cocoons, the corpusculous food was given them. All the disasters that were known to have happened in the silkworm nurseries, their extent and their varied forms, were faithfully reproduced Pasteur created at will any required manifestation of pébrine "[1] In each case, " Pasteur was careful to reproduce these same experiments with the worms of the standard lot, from which all infected worms had been selected," but taking care that the matter introduced should be free from corpuscles The worms, unlike the others, continued healthy

---

[1] *Ibid.*, pp. 142-3.

A difficulty now arose Contagion by experiment was proved, but it remained to show how contagion was possible under industrial conditions Pasteur established that there were three causes of natural contagion (1) The excreta of the worms may be more or less filled with corpuscles . the worms by the weight of their bodies press this against the leaves : and the leaves when eaten introduce the disease. " By the excreta of corpusculous worms which he crushed, mixed with water and spread with a paint-brush over the mulberry leaves intended for a single meal, Pasteur was able to communicate the contagion to as many worms as he liked "[2] (2) " The six fore-feet of the worm have sharp hooks at their ends, by means of which the worms prick each other's skins " :[3] in doing so they may be soiled with corpuscles which they in turn introduce into another body by pricking it. Disease was induced in this way by experiment. (3) " Infection at a distance, through the medium of the air and dust it carries is a fact equally well established."[4] Sweeping the breeding-houses may be sufficient " When very healthy worms were placed in a breeding nursery at a considerable distance from unhealthy worms, they, in their turn, became infected."[5]

Lastly, an apparent exception had to be explained. The above experiments seemed decisive " Nevertheless, among facts invoked in favour of non-contagion there was one which it was difficult to explain. There existed several examples of successful cultivations conducted in nurseries which had totally failed from the effects of *pébrine* the year before. The explanation is, as shown by Pasteur, that the dust can only act as a contagion when it is fresh Corpusculous matter, when thoroughly dried, loses its virulence. A few weeks suffice to render such matter inoffensive : hence the dust of one year is not injurious to the cultivations of the next year. The corpuscles contained in the eggs intended for future cultivation alone causes the transmission of the disease to future generations."[1]

---

[1] *Ibid*, p 144

[2] *Ibid*, p 147

[3] *Ibid*

[4] *Ibid*

[5] *Ibid*, p 148

3. Source of Power in a Voltaic Pile.—As an example of essentially experimental investigation, we will take Faraday's experimental proof of the theory that the source of power in a voltaic pile is due to chemical action At the time he entered upon this investigation there were several hypotheses, " but by far the most important are the two which respectively find the source of power in contact, and in chemical force."[2] It is impossible to enumerate the enormous number of experiments Faraday made to settle this question But the logical ground of them all was the same—to establish the hypothetical : 'If chemical action, then an electric current,' and its reciprocal 'If a current, then chemical action,' that is, 'If there is no chemical action, there is no current.'

This he did by examining both positive and negative instances, that is, by applying the Joint Method supported by Concomitant Variations By numerous experiments he established the positive connection, and showed that chemical action is both efficacious in producing a current, and sufficient by itself, and without any contact, to do so. For example: " When tin was associated with platinum, gold, or, I may say, any other metal which is chemically inactive in the solution of the sulphuret [of potassium], a strong electric current was produced," and as the chemical action decreased and finally ceased in consequence of the formation on the tin of an "insoluble, investing, non-conducting sulphuret of that metal," the electric current diminished and finally ceased also.[1] Further, "when the chemical action changes, the current changes also.—This is shown by the cases of two pieces of the same active metal in the same fluid. Thus if two pieces of silver be associated in strong muriatic acid, first the one will be positive and then the other; and the changes in the direction of the current will not be slow as if by a gradual action, but exceedingly sharp and sudden."[2]

---

[1] *Ibid* , p. 148

[2] *Experimental Researches in Electricity,* Vol. II , § 1796.

The negative experiments establishing the reciprocal proposition were also numerous—"Where no chemical action occurs no current is produced.—This in regard to ordinary solid conductors, is well known to be the case, as with metals and other bodies. It has also been shown to be true when fluid conductors (electrolytes) are used, in every case where they exert no chemical action, though such different substances as acids, alkalies, and sulphurets have been employed. . . . But a current will occur the moment chemical action commences.—This proposition may be well established by the following experiment. . . . Two plates of iron and platinum are placed parallel, but separated by a drop of strong nitric acid at each extremity. Whilst in this state no current is produced . . .; but if a drop of water be added . . . chemical action commences, and a powerful current is produced, though without metallic or other additional contact"[3] Here we have appeal to the Method of Difference.

Faraday thus sums up "With such a mass of evidence for the efficacy and sufficiency of chemical action . . ., with so many current circuits without metallic contact and so many non-current circuits with, what reason can there be for referring the effect in the joint cases where both chemical action and contact occur, to contact, or to anything but the chemical force alone? Such a reference appears to me most unphilosophical, it is dismissing a proved and active cause to receive in its place one which is merely hypothetical."[4]

---

[1] *Ibid.*, § 1882, cf. § 2031.

[2] *Ibid*, § 2036.

[3] *Ibid.*, §§ 2038-39.

[4] *Ibid*, § 2053.

Such a brief sketch gives but a faint idea of the thoroughness with which Faraday tested the two rival hypotheses, or of the wealth of evidence in favour of the theory of chemical activity which he brought forward; but it is, perhaps, sufficient to illustrate the fundamental point that the logical character of the method is throughout an appeal to both positive and negative instances.

4. Argon.—We will next examine the researches of Lord Rayleigh and Sir William Ramsay in connection with the element argon, a constituent of the atmosphere, as given in the Abstract of their Paper read before the Royal Society on January 31st, 1895, published in *Nature*,[1] from which our quotations are taken This furnishes us with a very complete and beautiful illustration of the logical inductive method.

The investigation started from the detection of an unexplained residual phenomenon Careful determination of density had shown that nitrogen obtained from various chemical compounds is of a uniform density, but that 'atmospheric' nitrogen is about ½ per cent heavier Two hypotheses —each of which placed the explanation in the character of the lighter 'chemical' nitrogen, and were suggested by analogy drawn from experience in the chemical laboratory—were successively conceived to account for this phenomenon, and were rejected after being tested "When the discrepancy of weights was first encountered, attempts were naturally made to explain it by contamination with known impurities. Of these the most likely appeared to be hydrogen, present in the lighter gas in spite of the passage over red-hot cupric oxide. But inasmuch as the intentional introduction of hydrogen into the heavier gas, afterwards treated in the same way with cupric oxide, had no effect upon its weight, this explanation had to be abandoned, and finally it became clear that the difference could not be accounted for by the presence of any known impurity.

At this stage it seemed not improbable that the lightness of the gas extracted from chemical compounds was to be explained by partial dissociation of nitrogen molecules N_2 into detached atoms In order to test this suggestion both kinds of gas were submitted to the action of the silent electric discharge, with the result that both retained their weights unaltered. This was discouraging, and a further experiment pointed still more markedly in the negative direction The chemical behaviour of nitrogen is such as to suggest the dissociated atoms would possess a high degree of activity, and that even though they might be formed in the first instance their life would probably be short. On standing they might be expected to disappear, in partial analogy with the known behaviour of ozone. With this idea in view, a sample of chemically prepared nitrogen was stored for eight months But at the end of this time the density showed no sign of increase, remaining exactly as at first "[1]

---

[1] Vol. LI, pp 347-56.

Another hypothesis had, therefore, to be sought on the established ground that " one or other of the gases must be a mixture " But as, " except upon the already discredited hypothesis of dissociation, it was difficult to see how the gas of chemical origin could be a mixture the simplest explanation in many respects was to admit the existence of a second ingredient in air from which oxygen, moisture, and carbonic anhydride had already been removed "[2]

This hypothesis, however, is immediately met by an objection which partially takes the form of a logical exception. " In accepting this explanation, even provisionally, we had to face the improbability that a gas surrounding us on all sides, and present in enormous quantities, could have remained so long unsuspected "[3] The answer to this objection was only fully found at a much later period of the investigation, when it was shown to be only an apparent objection, as the inert character of the newly discovered gas sufficiently accounts for its having so long escaped observation

It was necessary, however, to examine at once " the evidence in favour of the prevalent doctrine that the inert residue from air after withdrawal of oxygen, water, and carbonic anhydride, is all of one kind," as such evidence was logically an exception to the new hypothesis, and, therefore, if sustained, must prove fatal to it. This evidence rested upon the experiments of Cavendish, "whose method consisted in operating with electric sparks upon a short column of gas confined with potash over mercury at the upper end of an inverted U-tube."[1] But it appears that these very experiments are evidence in favour of, instead of in opposition to, the hypothesis of an additional constituent in the atmosphere, for Cavendish records that "a small bubble of air remained unabsorbed" at the end of his experiments. The exception is, therefore, only apparent, and when exactly stated, helps to 'prove the rule'

---

[1] P 348 *b* [2] P 349 *a* [3] *Ibid*

The ground being thus cleared, experiments were instituted to establish the new hypothesis. These were, of course, both positive and negative, the former being directed to establish the existence of a new constituent in 'atmospheric' nitrogen, and the latter to prove that this constituent is absent from 'chemical' nitrogen The positive experiments, in other words, were directed to establishing the proposition "If the excess of density of 'atmospheric' over 'chemical' nitrogen is due to the presence in the former of another gas besides nitrogen, then this other gas will remain after the nitrogen is withdrawn," and the negative experiments to showing that this residue cannot be nitrogen, as it is not found when 'chemical' nitrogen is the gas operated upon

The first mode of positive experiment was sparking air to which oxygen was gradually added in the presence of an alkali—that is, the method of Cavendish mentioned above. In every case there was a small residue, and "that this small residue could not be nitrogen was argued from the fact that it had withstood the prolonged action of the spark, although mixed with oxygen in nearly the most favourable proportion."[2]

The next step illustrates the function of number of instances in experiment—to ensure that extraneous elements have not crept in, that is, that only known conditions are present. It is thus described: "Although it seemed almost impossible that these residues could be either nitrogen or hydrogen, some anxiety was not unnatural, seeing that the final sparking took place under somewhat abnormal conditions. The space was very restricted, and the temperature (and with it the proportion of aqueous vapour) was unduly high. But any doubts that were felt upon this score were removed by comparison experiments in which the whole quantity of gas operated on was very small. . . . Several repetitions having given similar results, it became clear that the final residue did not depend upon anything that might happen when sparks passed through a greatly reduced volume, *but was in proportion to the amount of air operated upon.*"[1]

---

[1] *Ibid.*

[2] P 349 *b*.

The second mode of positive experiment was to pass 'atmospheric' nitrogen over red-hot magnesium A residue was left, and "on passing sparks for several hours through a mixture of a small quantity of this gas with oxygen, its volume was still further reduced Assuming that this reduction was due to the further elimination of nitrogen, the density of the remaining gas was calculated to be 20·0."[2]

The third mode of positive experiment was by atmolysis, or the transmission of 'atmospheric' nitrogen through a porous substance in order to determine whether it is a mixture of gases of different densities. When such a mixture is thus treated the lighter gas passes through the porous substance first. When air had, therefore, undergone atmolysis, and the oxygen, ammonia, moisture, and carbonic anhydride had been removed from that portion which had not passed through the porous substance, the remaining 'atmospheric' nitrogen should—on the hypothesis adopted for investigation—be of a greater density than ordinary 'atmospheric' nitrogen, as it should contain a larger proportion of the denser gas, and this was found to be the case in each of three such experiments. The positive experiments, therefore, appear to yield overwhelming evidence that 'atmospheric' nitrogen is a mixture of 'chemical' nitrogen and a gas of greater density, hitherto unknown, and to which the discoverers gave the name *Argon.*

A series of negative experiments was then entered upon, in which each of the first two series of positive experiments was performed upon 'chemical' instead of 'atmospheric' nitrogen In each case a very small residue of argon was found, from one-ninth to one-fortieth of the amount that would have remained had 'atmospheric' nitrogen been used. Even this small residue could be accounted for. In the cases in which it was largest there had been leakage and air had entered, and in the others "the source of the residual argon is to be sought in the water used for the manipulation of the large quantities of gas employed." This is supported by analogy: "When carbonic acid was collected in a similar manner, and subsequently absorbed by potash, it was found to have acquired a contamination consistent with this explanation."[1]

---

[1] Pp 349 *b*–350 *a*

[2] P. 350 *a*.

The negative experiments thus corroborate the positive ones, and the existence of argon is proved, thus the hypothesis is established and the first induction is completed.

The next object was to examine the nature of argon, and such an examination yielded many confirmations of the results already obtained, by showing that argon differs radically from nitrogen.

The first problem was to determine its density. This was first reached by deductive reasoning "on the assumption that the accurately known densities of atmospheric and of chemical nitrogen differ on account of the presence of argon in the former, and that during the treatment with oxygen nothing is oxidised except nitrogen."[2] This assumption was known to be justified because experiment had proved that 'chemical' nitrogen obtained from magnesium nitride, which had been prepared by passing 'atmospheric' nitrogen over ignited magnesium, was of the density usual to chemical nitrogen. "It is therefore seen that 'chemical' nitrogen, derived from 'atmospheric' nitrogen, without any exposure to red-hot copper, possesses the usual density."[3] The density thus obtained was 20·6.

Here again we have the suggestion of a hypothesis by the quantitative computation of a residual phenomenon This hypothesis was then to be tested experimentally. This could not be done by direct weighing, as it was not found possible to collect by the oxygen method enough of the gas to fill the large globe employed for other gases So a mixture of about 400 c.c of argon with pure oxygen was weighed, and the density of argon calculated from the result, and found to be 19·7. The argon derived from the second series of positive experiments was found to have a density of 19 9. As the density of argon is thus proved to be different from that of nitrogen, this determination supports the conclusion already reached that argon is a distinct constituent of atmospheric nitrogen.

---

[1] P. 350 *b* [2] P 351 *b*. [3] P. 348

A careful examination of the spectrum of argon by Mr. W. Crookes disclosed the fact that argon " gives two distinct spectra according to the strength of the induction current employed " Nitrogen does the same, " but while the two spectra of nitrogen are different in character, one showing fluted bands and the other sharp lines, the argon spectra both consist of sharp lines "[1] Additional confirmation of the existence of argon was thus furnished. But further, Mr Crookes says . " I have found no other spectrum-giving gas or vapour yield spectra at all like those of argon,"[2] and this is a proof that argon is a gas previously unknown. But the fact that it yields two spectra suggested the hypothesis that argon is really a mixture of two gases. This is an instance of how the solution of one problem opens up others by bringing to light new phenomena requiring explanation. Other considerations bearing on this point will be noticed later on.

The solubility of argon in water was next determined, and was found to be approximately that of oxygen and about two and a half times that of nitrogen This conclusion was proved by testing the deductive inference that, if so, argon would be found in increased proportion in the dissolved gases of rain water, the test experiment showed that the argon in ' water ' nitrogen is in the ratio of 24 : 11 to that in ' atmospheric ' nitrogen.

Experiments were conducted by Professor Olszewski on the liquefaction and solidification of argon. " Four series of experiments in all were carried out, two with the object of determining the critical temperature and pressure of argon, as well as measuring its vapour pressure at several other low temperatures, while two other series served to determine its boiling and freezing points under atmospheric pressure, as well as its density at its boiling point."[1] It was found that the critical temperature is − 121°·0 (that of nitrogen being − 146°·0), its critical pressure 50·6 atmospheres (that of nitrogen being 35·0), its boiling point − 187°·0 (that of nitrogen being − 194°·4), and its freezing point − 189°·6, at which temperature it solidifies into white crystals (that of nitrogen being − 214°·0).

---

[1] P. 354 *a*.

[2] *Ibid*.

It further appears from experiments made on the velocity of sound in argon "that argon gives practically the ratio of specific heats, viz. 1·66, proper to a gas in which all the energy is translational The only other gas which has been found to behave similarly is mercury gas, at a high temperature."[2] "In the case of mercury the absence of interatomic energy is regarded as a proof of the monatomic character of the vapour, and the conclusion holds equally good for argon. . . . Now a monatomic gas can only be an element, or a mixture of elements, and hence it follows that argon is not of a compound nature"[3]

But whether it is an element or a mixture of elements was *still doubtful.* "The behaviour on liquefaction, however, seemed to prove that in the latter case either the proportion of the subordinate constituents was small, or else that the various constituents were but little contrasted An attempt, somewhat later, by Ramsay and J. Norman Collie to separate argon by diffusion into two parts, which should have different densities or refractivities, led to no distinct effect. More recently Ramsay and M. W. Travers have obtained evidence of the existence in the atmosphere of three new gases, besides helium, to which have been assigned the names of neon, krypton, and xenon. These gases agree with argon in respect of the ratio of the specific heats and in being non-oxidisable under the electric spark. As originally defined, argon included small proportions of these gases, but it is now preferable to limit the name to the principal constituent and to regard the newer gases as 'companions of argon' The physical constants associated with the name will scarcely be changed, since the proportion of the 'companions' is so small Sir William Ramsay considers that probably the volume of all of them taken together does not exceed 1/400th part of that of the argon."[1]

---

[1] P. 355 *a.*

[2] P. 352 *b.*

[3] P. 353.

If argon is an element its atomic weight is 40, for its molecule is identical with its atom, and the molecular weight of a gas is double its density, which in the case of argon is approximately 20

"From the manner of its preparation it was clear at an early stage that argon would not combine with magnesium or calcium at a red heat, nor under the influence of the electric discharge with oxygen, hydrogen or nitrogen Numerous other attempts to induce combination also failed Nor does it appear that any well-defined compound of argon has yet been prepared It was found, however, by M P E Berthelot that under the influence of the silent electric discharge, a mixture of benzine vapour and argon underwent contraction, with formation of a gummy product from which the argon could be recovered."[2]

The determination of the inert nature of argon—to which it owes its name—answered all objections to the hypothesis of its existence based on the fact of previous non-observation. "For more than a hundred years before 1894 it had been supposed that the composition of the atmosphere was thoroughly known Beyond variable quantities of moisture and traces of carbonic acid, hydrogen, ammonia, etc, the only constituents recognised were nitrogen and oxygen The analysis of air was conducted by determining the amount of oxygen present and assuming the remainder to be nitrogen. Since the time of Henry Cavendish no one seemed even to have asked the question whether the residue was, in truth, all capable of conversion into nitric acid."[3]

---

[1] Lord Rayleigh: Article on Argon, *Ency. Brit*, eleventh ed., p. 478 *a*.

[2] *Ibid.*, pp. 477 *b*–478 *a*.

[3] *Ibid.*, p. 475 *a*.

Even such an imperfect outline as the above makes abundantly manifest that induction is by no means an easy process, or one that can be reduced to mechanical rules; that the procedure starts from, and is guided throughout by hypothesis; that number of experiments is appealed to only as a guarantee that only known conditions are operative, that the procedure of perceptual analysis is to establish a positive connection, to purge this of exceptions and to limit and corroborate it by negative instances, and that one inductive enquiry gives rise to others.

5. Henry VIII. and the Parliament of 1529.—It will be fruitful to compare the exactness of experiment and the certainty of conclusion possible in such a research as that just considered, in which experiment can be used throughout to verify or to disprove hypotheses, with the uncertainty of speculation and the balancing of probabilities which are the sole resources of the labourer in social or historical science As an example of historical reasoning we will take Mr. A. F. Pollard's examination of the assertion that at the election of 1529 the House of Commons was packed with royal nominees.[1] Only the salient feature of the argument are indicated.

Mr. Pollard contends that the House was not packed, but that the elections were free This is the hypothesis he sets out to establish. He points out that " the election of county members was marked by unmistakeable signs of genuine popular liberty. There was often a riot, and sometimes a secret canvass among freeholders to promote or defeat a particular candidate "[2] Two illustrations are given, one of " secret labour among the freeholders of Warwickshire," and the other of a " hotly contested election between the candidate of the gentry of Shropshire and the candidate of the townsfolk of Shrewsbury." The first is of date 1534, and only on the assumption that it is typical of the times can it be used as evidence for 1529; the second is not dated. There is also the assumption, based on analogy, that a " riot " and a " secret canvass " are " signs of genuine popular liberty " of election.

---

[1] Pollard, *Henry VIII*, p. 252

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 252.

The next instance taken has also only the force of an analogy. "In 1547 the council ventured to recommend a minister to the freeholders of Kent."[1] The electors objected, and in spite of the council's protest that they had no wish to deprive the shire of its "liberty of election," the government candidate had to find another seat. Since this incident took place presumably after the death of Henry VIII. it has no probative value and again assumes that the conditions in 1529 were sufficiently similar to make such instances possible, though there is an absence of direct testimony to them.

But phrases like 'popular liberty,' 'freedom of election' may mislead owing to analogies from modern times It is, therefore, pointed out that the boroughs were often close corporations of few electors They were on account of their numbers especially susceptible to external influence, and therefore to that of the king To this it is replied that there was every variety of franchise In some it was almost democratic This is supported by the example of London. The election to the Parliament of 1529 took place in the presence of a large company in the Guildhall with "no hint of royal interference, the election being conducted in the customary way, namely, two candidates were nominated by the mayor and aldermen, and two by the citizens."[2] The argument is here from silence · the absence of any hint of royal interference is not in itself conclusive since we are not certain that if there had been interference, the record of it would have remained The fact, however, that the election took place in the presence of a throng of citizen electors makes the theory of interference improbable.

However, "in many boroughs, elections were largely determined by recommendations from neighbouring magnates, territorial or official" It is suggested that the latter would be subservient to the king. But it is clear that the nominations were not royal, and there is no evidence to show that such classes were necessarily supporters of the king. Royal ministers, of course, would be Apart from them members would represent the views of their patrons, and these might be opposed to the Court. That there was opposition is supported by the fact that "in 1539 Cromwell's agents were considering the advisability of setting up Crown candidates against those of Gardiner, Bishop of Winchester"[1]

---

[1] *Ibid*, p 252.

[2] *Ibid*, p. 253

A letter to Cromwell, written in 1529, is quoted in support of the theory that the House of Commons consisted of Royal Nominees. On examination this is shown to be inconclusive. Cromwell sought Henry's permission to serve in parliament in order to be useful to the king If Henry accepted his offer he was to be nominated for Oxford. But his election there was not regarded as certain—an obvious limitation of the royal power If not elected for Oxford he was to put up for a constituency in the diocese of Winchester. As a matter of fact he sat for Taunton. This is not conclusive against royal nomination. It does show, however, that there were difficulties in the way of its exercise It is admitted that there was a small number of royal boroughs in which the king had only the same influence as an ordinary patron.

The next hypothesis to be refuted is that constituencies were created in order to further royal influence Returns show that as a matter of fact there were six boroughs in 1529 which had never returned members before Two explanations are suggested : (1) Almost all the six had increased in population or importance, and it is suggested that their representation was due to that. On the general principle relating to the creation of constituencies the reasons given are adequate. (2) But there is an alternative suggestion—that they were created to pack the House of Commons This is negatived by considering the futility of creating half-a-dozen boroughs. For "so small a number of votes was useless, except in the case of a close division of well-drilled parties, of which there is no trace in the Parliaments of Henry VIII. The House of Commons acted as a whole, and not in two sections. 'The sense of the House' was more apparent in its decisions then than it is to-day. Actual divisions were rare : either a proposal commended itself to the House, or it did not, and in both cases the question was usually determined without a vote."[1] The analogies drawn from present-day procedure are rejected because there were fundamental differences of conditions. The rejection of the second explanation does not prove the first, but it strengthens it. In the absence of further alternative suggestions, the first has considerable probability from 'the nature of the case,' that is, as a deduction from general principles.

---

[1] *Ibid.*, p. 254.

Further, the creation of boroughs to serve the king's interest must be shown to be motived by the king's political needs The only reasonable ground would be an opposition of interests between king and parliament But there was no need to pack the parliament on this score, since both were averse from war and both had grievances against the Church. Their secular and ecclesiastical interests were identical The creation of boroughs also is shown to be unnecessary on the ground that Parliament could not be a centre of discontent The members were chiefly from the landed gentry and the prosperous commercial classes Now the grievances of the time were social and economic, and not as a rule political For example, complaints were rife as to the enclosing of lands and trading monopolies Assuming that Henry was averse to measures for redress, he had no need to fear that parliament would propose them, for members were themselves the chief offenders in these matters. Thus Henry had no adequate motive for packing his parliament.

Lastly, there *was* systematic interference in elections during Henry VIII.'s reign, why not then in 1529? This is met by the hypothesis that systematic interference was a later expedient due to Cromwell As for the facts "it was apparently tried during the bye-elections of 1534, and at the general elections of 1536 and 1539."[2] The motive is found in the necessity which Cromwell was under of finding support in his struggle with "the reactionary party in the council." (Notice the question-begging epithet 'reactionary') The fact that shortly after the policy of interference was adopted Cromwell was executed is noted as significant, and is alleged to support the author's contention on the ground of a tentative generalisation which is illustrated from later times.

---

[1] *Ibid*, p 255.

[2] *Ibid*, pp. 260-1.

"The packing of Parliaments has in fact been generally the death-bed expedient of a moribund Government The Stuarts had their 'Undertakers,' and the only Parliament of Tudor times which consisted mainly of government nominees was that gathered by Northumberland on the eve of his fall in March, 1553, and that that body was exceptionally constituted is obvious from Renard's enquiry in August, 1553, as to whether Charles V. would advise his cousin, Queen Mary, to summon a general parliament or merely an assembly of 'notables' after the manner introduced by Northumberland"[1]

The above example illustrates the difficulty of coming to definite and convincing conclusions in the absence of full and adequate testimony The facts on which the argument is based represent a selection made from contemporary documents. In his condensed narrative the historian does not analyse the general value of his sources, nor test the sincerity and accuracy of separate statements, probably because they are of such a kind that there is no motive for calling their genuineness in question Taking the facts as they are reported, he shows how they support his hypothesis, and the conclusions drawn from it. The whole narrative is avowedly a construction which the author believes to represent the truth His attitude to history can be best expressed in his own words

Referring to numerous sources for the facts of Henry VIII's reign made accessible in recent years, he says, "These sources probably contain at least a million definite facts relating to the reign of Henry VIII, and it is obvious that the task of selection has become heavy as well as invidious . . . Yet selection is inevitable, and arrangement essential. The historian has no option if he wishes to be intelligible. He will naturally arrange his facts so that they spell what he believes to be the truth, and he must of necessity suppress those facts which he judges to be immaterial or inconsistent with the scale on which he is writing And if the superabundance of facts compels both selection and suppression, it counsels no less a restraint of judgment . . . Dogmatism is merely the result of ignorance; and no honest historian will pretend to have mastered all the facts, accurately, weighed all the evidence, or pronounced a final judgment."[1]

---

[1] *Ibid*, p. 261

6. Wave Theory of Light.—As a last example we will take the case of wider generalisations embracing many empirical laws, and give in outline the steps by which the wave theory of light gradually won general acceptance until the first decade of this century, when once again the rivalry between this theory and Newton's corpuscular theory came into prominence. The steps cannot be given in detail because of the somewhat difficult mathematical reasoning involved

The wave theory assumes the existence of a medium called the luminiferous ether through which light is propagated in waves It was suggested by analogy with the theory of sound. Both light and sound were known to be reflected according to the same law, and it was further known that sound is propagated in waves through a medium such as air or wood Hence the suggestion that light is propagated in a similar way. But wave-motion from its very nature cannot be conceived except in some continuous medium which transmits the motion Now light reaches us from the stars Consequently in order to account for the arrival at the earth of light from the stars we must assume, if we adopt the wave-theory, the presence in the intervening space of a continuous medium capable of transmitting waves Since the properties of the medium cannot be directly apprehended by the senses we can only arrive at them by the indirect method of enquiry.[2]

Huygens, in his *Traité de la Lumière*, published in 1678, gave the earliest important exposition of the Wave Theory of light That theory in its present form assumes that a candle or gas flame, the incandescent filament of an electric glow lamp, a glowworm, or any other material body generating light, does so by the propagation of vibrations through the luminiferous ether The vibrations are propagated in the form of waves in every direction in such fashion that the wave-front has the form of a sphere Moreover, around each particle of a vibrating medium as a centre other spherical waves are formed The ether is assumed to fill all space and to permeate all matter, to have a definite density, and to possess elasticity

---

[1] *Ibid*, Preface, pp viii-ix

[2] See Edser, *Light for Students*, p 286

When Huygens wrote, two important empirical laws in relation to reflection and refraction had been established. If a ray of light is reflected from a perfectly smooth surface, the angle between the ray of light and the perpendicular drawn to the surface at the point where the ray reaches it, is equal to the angle between the reflected ray and the same perpendicular. Both reflected ray and incident ray lie in the same plane. On the other hand, if the smooth surface is that of a transparent medium, a second ray starts from the point of incidence and traverses the transparent medium This is termed the refracted ray, and makes an angle with the perpendicular as before defined which bears a constant ratio to the angle of incidence The value of the ratio in any particular case depends on the nature of the two media through which the light passes Huygens showed that these laws of reflection and refraction follow at once if light is assumed to be a wave motion with a speed of propagation that is the same for each medium, but different for different media.

So far the theory was capable of explaining important phenomena of light, but as Huygens formulated it, there were other phenomena which it did not explain. It did not account for the fact that light travels in straight lines. On analogy with sound it seemed as though light should be seen, as sound is heard, when a material obstacle intervenes. On this ground Newton rejected the theory. "If light consisted in vibrations it would, like sound, 'bend into the shadow'"[1] He preferred, therefore, the rival corpuscular theory that light consists of a great number of material particles travelling at a great speed and emitted by luminous bodies

This corpuscular theory easily explained the rectilinear propagation of light since the particles themselves were conceived to move in straight lines It also accounted for the laws of reflection and refraction, though it did not explain as well as did the wave theory how there could be both reflection and refraction in the case of a transparent medium. Two assumptions were made · first, that the luminiferous particles are perfectly elastic ; second, that they travel faster in a denser medium. Granted the perfect elasticity, the laws of reflection could be easily deduced : granted the more rapid propagation in a denser medium, the laws of refraction at once followed Thus the corpuscular hypothesis was moulded to fit the facts

---

[1] Cajori, *A History of Physics*, p 87.

But neither hypothesis gave a satisfactory explanation of all the facts. After considerable hesitation Newton pronounced in favour of the corpuscular theory, and his great authority caused the wave theory to fall into disrepute until it was revived at the beginning of the nineteenth century by Young, in England, and Fresnel in France.

To these men was due the first statement and development of the *principle of interference.* When any medium is set independently vibrating at two points very near together, the wave-motion with its centre at one point will overlap and interfere with the wave-motion which has its centre at the other. When the crests or the hollows of the waves from each source coincide they accentuate the separate effect of each, but where the crests from one meet the hollows from the other the separate effects are neutralised. In the first case the vibrations differ in phase by a wave length or some multiple of a wave length · in the second, they differ by a half wave length or some odd multiple of it.

Now if light be due to wave-motion there should be cases in which waves from two sources of light interfere with one another so as to give increased brightness where the waves help one another, and to produce darkness where they act in opposite directions Fresnel produced the phenomena by experiment A beam of sunlight was introduced into a darkened room and focussed at a particular point. This point was reflected from two mirrors arranged at such an angle that the two streams of light followed a slightly different path, but near enough together to produce the phenomena of interference if the wave theory were true in fact. It was found that alternate bright and dark bands of colour were produced as the theory had led him to expect.

The experiment was varied by passing the white light through glass of different colours, but the results only serve to confirm the principle of interference. With red light, for example, the bands were alternately red and black. Newton had been familiar with the phenomena in another form and had explained it by means of the corpuscular theory with the aid of one or two further assumptions as to the mode of action of his light particles. His explanation was "reasonable and ingenious," but one of his assumptions has been shown experimentally to be unwarranted "Fresnel's experiment gives decisive evidence in favour of the wave theory of light. That light when added to light should produce darkness is incomprehensible on any theory of the material nature of light."[1]

But the difficulties of the wave theory were so great in themselves that it did not appear decisive at the time Fresnel had, however, lessened them by showing that the approximate rectilinear propagation of light could be explained by wave-motion. Mathematical considerations prove that on the assumption that the length of a light wave is very small in comparison with ordinary magnitudes the path of a ray of light would not differ appreciably from a straight line It can be shown by independent methods "that, as a matter of fact, the wave length of light varies between $0{\cdot}4 \times 10^{-3}$ mm and $0{\cdot}8 \times 10^{-3}$ mm., according to its colour,"[2] and this length is of the requisite degree of smallness

But in strict theory "waves of such lengths should exhibit a slight tendency to bend round corners, and the effects of this should be observable under appropriate conditions."[3] If light travelled in straight lines the shadows cast by objects not illuminated by other sources of light should have clear cut outlines, and be of definite geometrical shape. Grimaldi, in the seventeenth century, had observed phenomena at variance with this deduction. He introduced a pencil of light into a dark room through a small hole "The shadow cast by a rod held in the cone of light was allowed to fall upon a white surface To his surprise he found the shadow wider than the computed geometrical shadow, moreover, it was bordered by one, two, and sometimes three coloured bands. When the light was very strong, he saw, in addition, coloured bands inside the shadow itself On replacing the rod by an opaque plate with a small hole in it, the illuminated circle was found larger than it should have been on the supposition that the rays travelled past the edges of the hole in exactly straight lines.

---

[1] Edser, *Light for Students*, p. 323.

[2] Edser, *ibid*, p. 427

[3] *Ibid*, p 427.

This and other experiments established the fact that light bends very slightly round a corner He called the new phenomenon 'diffraction'[1] Diffraction was explained on the emission theory "by means of hypothetical law of attraction and repulsion between the light corpuscles and the edges of the object causing diffraction"[2] At a later date the phenomenon was studied experimentally, and the facts were found to be in accordance with deductions from the assumed propagation of light in waves through ether as a medium. Again, both hypotheses explained the phenomenon.

A further difficulty in the way of accepting the wave theory arose from the polarisation of light If a ray of light be passed through a rhomb of Iceland spar it will take two different paths One of the two rays is called the *ordinary* ray, the other the *extraordinary* It is the latter which is said to be polarised. Malus discovered that similar phenomena are produced by reflection.

"At this time no explanation of polarisation had been given by the wave theory, which was in great danger of being overthrown by the new mass of evidence furnished by Malus. Thomas Young wrote in 1811 to Malus, who was a pronounced partisan of the emission theory: 'Your experiments demonstrate the *insufficiency* of a theory (that of interferences), which I had adopted, but they do not prove its falsity.'"[3] In other words, he did not feel called upon to abandon his hypothesis, but felt that he must seek some modification of it which would explain the new facts brought to light. As the wave theory then stood, the wave-motion of light was conceived as similar to that of sound, and therefore the vibrations were thought to be only longitudinal, that is, in the direction of the ray. This assumption did not account for the direction of the polarised ray.

---

[1] Cajori, *History of Physics*, p 88. [2] *Ibid*, p 143

[3] Cajori, *op cit*, p. 146.

But Fresnel assumed that in this case the vibration was in a direction transverse to the ray, and then showed that the consequences of this assumption were borne out by the facts as experimentally determined Thus with a slight modification the wave theory was proved to explain adequately all the phenomena of polarisation

But the corpuscular hypothesis was not disproved. For example, when the rich colours produced by polarised light were discovered by Arago in 1811, "partisans of the two rival optical theories hastened to find explanations of this phenomenon . On the undulatory theory explanations were given first by Young, then more fully by Arago and Fresnel On the corpuscular theory, the facts were accounted for by Biot in a complicated research of great mathematical elegance."[1] Moreover Brewster, who did much to further the study of polarisation in crystals, asserted that "his chief objection to the undulatory theory of light was that he could not think the Creator guilty of so clumsy a contrivance as the filling of space with ether in order to produce light "[2]

In 1850 Foucault carried out an experiment which pointed definitely to the rejection of Newton's theory. "Newton had deduced the laws of refraction from his corpuscular theory of light by assuming that the luminiferous particles travelled faster in a denser medium. . . . The wave theory reverses this. It also explains the phenomenon of refraction as depending on the different velocities in the two media ; but it requires that the velocity should be less in the denser medium."[3] Foucault devised an apparatus by means of which the velocity of light in air and in water was directly measured. He found that the velocity was greater in air than in water But water is the denser medium, and on the corpuscular hypothesis light should travel faster through it The experiment, therefore was definitely in favour of the wave theory, and for some time, during the nineteenth century in fact, Huygens' theory was regarded as established.

---

[1] *Ibid* , p. 147.

[2] Tyndall, *Six Lectures on Light*, p 49, *cit* Cajori, *op cit.*, p. 148.

[3] Eggar, *Wave Motion, Sound, Light*, p 530

But since then the discovery of certain new facts has seriously threatened the supremacy of Huygens' theory. These new facts are multifarious, but reference to one only is sufficient to show the difficulty confronting this theory. Early in the controversy between the two theories it was made clear that light and heat rays are essentially the same, while Clerk Maxwell's prophecy in the middle of the nineteenth century that light was electo-magnetic was verified a generation later by Heinrich Hertz Thus a theory explanatory of light should also explain ultra-violet rays, which are one form of electro-magnetic rays, and if there is a difficulty about these rays there is likewise a difficulty about light rays.

Now an apparently insuperable difficulty from the view of Huygens' wave theory exists in connection with an experiment with ultra-violet rays. When these rays " fall on a piece of metal in a vacuum, a large number of electrons are shot off from the metal at a high velocity, and since the magnitude of this velocity does not essentially depend on the state of the metal, certainly not on its temperature, it is concluded that the energy of the electrons is not derived from the metal, but from the light rays which fall on the metal This would not be strange in itself, it would even be assumed that the electro-magnetic energy of light waves is transformed into the kinetic energy of electronic movements."[1] However, it was discovered that the velocity of the electrons does not depend on the intensity of the beam, but only on the wave-length, *i e.* on the colour of the light used On Huygens' theory, this is an insuperable difficulty. " The velocity increases as the wave-length diminishes. If the distance between the metal and the source of light is continuously increased, using, for example, an electric spark as the source of light, the electrons continue to be flung off with the same velocity, in spite of the weakening of the illumination; the only difference is that the number of electrons thrown off per second decreases with the intensity of the light

---

[1] Max Planck, *A Survey of Physics*, p 150.

The difficulty is to state whence the electron obtains its energy, when the distance of the source of light becomes ultimately so great that the intensity of the light almost vanishes, and yet the electrons show no sign of a diminution in their velocity This must evidently be a case of a kind of accumulation of light energy at the spot from which the electron is flung out—an accumulation which is quite contrary to the uniform spreading out in all directions of electromagnetic energy according to Huygens' wave theory. . . . The only possible explanation for these peculiar facts appears to be that the energy radiated from the source of light remains, not only for all time, but also throughout all space, concentrated in certain bundles, or, in other words, that light energy does not spread out quite uniformly in all directions, becoming continuously less intense, but always remains concentrated in certain definite quanta, depending only on the colour and that these quanta move in all directions with the velocity of light. Such a light-quantum, striking the metal, communicates its energy to an electron, and the energy always remains the same, however great the distance from the source of light.

Here we have Newton's emanation theory resurrected in another and modified form But interference, which was a bar to the further development of Newton's emanation theory, is also an enormous difficulty in the quantum theory of light, for it is difficult at present to see how two exactly similar light quanta, moving independently in space, and meeting on a common path, can neutralise each other, without violating the principle of energy."[1]

We may sum up the present position with regard to the two theories of Newton and Huygens' in the words of Professor Whitehead, who says· "To-day there is one large group of phenomena which can only be explained on the wave theory, and another which can only be explained on the corpuscular theory. Scientists have to leave it at that, and wait for the future, in the hope of attaining some wider vision which reconciles both."[1]

---

[1] Max Planck, *A Survey of Physics*, pp 151-3.

---

[1] *Science and the Modern World*, p 257.

CHAPTER XXXII.

QUANTITATIVE DETERMINATION

1. Measurement.—We have considered in the preceding chapters how the existence of a universal relation between phenomena can be established. Now some perceptible properties are measurable, and, consequently, a relation between them is stated with perfect definiteness and exactness only when it is expressed in quantitative form In these cases our aim is to establish quantitative laws, we not only want to be able to say generally that *If S is A it is X*, but that for every definite value a_1 of A, there is a corresponding definite value x_1 of X

No doubt the attainment of precise mathematical statement of law is only possible in the most advanced branches of science. Every branch of knowledge is at first merely qualitative, or at best very roughly quantitative The ancient Chaldean astronomers, for example, were satisfied to record an eclipse to the nearest hour, but now the time is fixed to a very small fraction of a second As the power of exact measurement is increased, science advances, and thus the invention of a new and more exact instrument of measurement has, as Jevons remarks, " usually marked, if it has not made, an epoch " in the branch of science to which it is applicable.

This dependence of the advance of science on progress in the power of measurement is forcibly illustrated by De Morgan. " Had it not been," he remarks, " for the simple contrivance of the balance, which we are well assured (how, it matters not here), enables us to poise equal weights against one another, that is, to detect equality and inequality, and thence to ascertain how many times the greater contains the less, we might not to this day have had much clearer ideas on the subject of weight, as a magnitude, than we have on those of talent, prudence, or self-denial, looked at in the same light."[1] Indeed, as scientific thought is exact thought, physical science cannot strictly be said to exist except in a quantitative form. "Numerical precision . . . is the very soul of science, and its attainment affords the only criterion, or at least the best, of the truth of theories, and the correctness of experiments . . . Indeed, it is a character of all the higher laws of nature to assume the form of precise *quantitative* statement."[2]

The laws of nature are, however, expressions of the relations between phenomena. Now, every concrete fact is complex; that is to say, it is due to the co-operation of several conditions, it is the embodiment of a plurality of relations Its whole nature, therefore, can never be expressed by one law, for each law is the statement of only one of these relations. Hence, each law is highly abstract, and is hypothetical in essence, even when expressed in a categorical form, as it states not what does happen, but what would and must happen under certain defined conditions But it is frequently impossible to secure these conditions unmixed with other and interfering conditions For the relations which meet in a concrete fact may not be independent, and they frequently modify or counteract each other. Thus, it happens, that many quantitative laws—as, *e g* the law of inertia—are never exactly realised in fact Such a law obviously cannot be simply read off from the facts which more or less fail to fulfil it. It is a hypothesis of the quantitative relation which would hold did it exist alone, and its truth is established indirectly by showing that the actual deviations from it can themselves be calculated as the effect of the interference of other conditions.

This becomes more evident, however, when we remember that facts are known to us only as they are observed by us, and that all observation is determined not only by the fact but by the observer. All observation, whether made with or without instruments, rests at bottom upon the accurate interpretation of sense impressions ; for instruments and other artificial means of improving observation can do nothing but bring the observed object, by breaking it up, magnifying it, and so on, within that range of moderate quantities which can be gauged by our senses. But how erroneous our interpretation of sense impressions may be is evident to anyone who considers, for instance, how much larger the moon appears to us when it is just above the horizon than when it is in its zenith, or again how the shape or size of the same object seems to vary with its distance from, and relative position to, the observer.

---

[1] *Formal Logic*, p. 175.

[2] Herschel, *Discourse on Natural Philosophy*, §§ 115-16.

It is true we never attempt to estimate absolute, but only relative, magnitude ; in other words, all measurement is comparison with a standard unit. What character of unit should be employed for the measurement of any kind of quantity is a matter of the greatest practical importance, but it is one which concerns the particular branches of knowledge, not general logical theory. The recognition of this comparative character of measurement, however, makes clear that its accuracy is relative to our power to distinguish differences by our senses And this power is limited, even with the most delicate instruments

" Few measurements of any kind," say Jevons, " are exact to more than six significant figures, but it is seldom that such accuracy can be hoped for."[1] When, then, it is said that two magnitudes are equal, all that is meant is that our most exact instruments fail to make apparent any difference between them ; but it does not follow that with more delicate instruments some difference would not appear Thus a rough balance would indicate equality between two weights which a more delicate instrument would show to differ. A medical prescription could not be satisfactorily made up with a pair of grocer's scales.

Further, the actual correctness of measurements even within this limit of possible accuracy cannot be assumed. This is evident from the fact that two careful measurements of the same magnitude never exactly agree, and, therefore, one or both are erroneous. Indeed, " we may," as Jevons says, " look upon the existence of error in all measurements as the normal state of things "[1]

---

[1] *Principles of Science*, p 303.

Now 'error' means a discrepancy between the magnitude given by actual measurement, and that estimated as the application of the law to this particular case. It might seem, at first sight, that the law was, therefore, shown to need modification and restatement. But this is not necessarily the case. If, as the experiment is repeated more and more carefully, the results approximate more and more to the law, then the law is confirmed · exact coincidence must never be expected For instance, a student " learns that two pints of steam at a temperature of 150° Centigrade will always make two pints of hydrogen and one pint of oxygen at the same temperature, all of them being pressed as much as the atmosphere is pressed If he makes the experiment and gets rather more or less than a pint of oxygen, is the law disproved ? No, the steam was impure, or there was some mistake. Myriads of analyses attest the law of combining volumes; the more carefully they are made, the more nearly they coincide with it "

Or again, " The place of a planet at a given time is calculated by the law of gravitation, if it is half a second wrong, the fault is in the instrument, the observer, the clock, or the law, now, the more observations are made, the more of this fault is brought home to the instrument, the observer, and the clock."[2]

It thus follows that our laws are more exact than our observations and experiments can ever be, and that, consequently, they cannot be derived from mere comparison of the results of these observations, but are hypotheses which are more or less exactly verified by those experiments Indeed, even were our measurements exact, yet they are only of isolated quantities, while the law gives the general formula of relation which claims to be applicable to all other degrees of magnitude of the same phenomenon. The law is thus seen to be a result of the synthesising activity of mind, an activity which leads us to think of all nature as constituted by universal and definite laws.

---

[1] *Op cit.*, p. 357. [2] Clifford, *Lectures and Essays*, pp. 91-2.

As, then, every measurement is more or less inaccurate, the question next arises as to whether, and how far, such error can be explained. In some cases it can ; allowance may be made for the influence of modifying conditions when they are known to exist ; *e g.* for friction in any experiment dealing with the law of inertia , for temperature in experiments with the pendulum, or in measuring with metal rods. In other cases, there is a known and constant source of error in the instrument by means of which the observation is made—*e g.* a clock may be known to be a second too fast or too slow. Again, there is with all observers a 'personal equation' which is practically constant, as it is always in the same direction and of the same average amount , that is, one observer will always note the time of an observation a little earlier than another Thus, "the difference between the judgment of observers at the Greenwich Observatory usually varies from $\frac{1}{100}$ to $\frac{1}{3}$ of a second, and remains pretty constant for the same observers."[1] The average amount of this personal error may then be calculated and allowed for.

But there are other errors which cannot be explained They are due to causes which are unknown, or whose influence is so inconsistent that it cannot be calculated They may result from the operation of some law not known to the observer, or to the imperfection of man's powers of observation and of his instruments. On this we will quote an excellent passage from De Morgan's *Essay on Probability* —

"To note a measurable phenomenon without any error at all, would require sight and touch by which every magnitude, however small, could be perceived and correctly estimated. Such senses belong to no one, and the degree of approach towards perfection not only varies with the observer, but is different at different times with the same observer. Many errors to which instruments are subject ought in strictness to be classed under the first head , if, for instance, an astronomical circle gradually change its form, or undergo daily expansion and contraction by variations of temperature, the diversity of results which such a piece of brass will show are certainly subject to laws, and might be predicted, if we possessed sufficient knowledge of the constitution of the metal, and the laws which regulate the effect of pressure, temperature, moisture, etc., upon it. But so long as such laws are unknown, and the variations do not follow any distinguishable rule, their effect upon general results differs in nothing perceptible from that of the observer's own errors, with which they are mixed up in the particular results of observation."[1]

---

[1] Jevons, *op. cit* , pp. 347-8.

When, therefore, allowance has been made for all known sources of error, there yet remain discrepancies whose causes, character, and magnitude are unknown. We must, then, consider briefly how the scientific enquirer seeks to eliminate such chance errors.

There are two broad cases: first, when the effective conditions of a phenomenon are unknown; secondly, when measurements actually made differ slightly from each other. In the former, appeal is made to the Theory of Probability; in the latter, to methods of eliminating the influence of sources of error in measurements.

2. Probability. (i) BASIS OF THE THEORY.—As used in ordinary speech and writing, "probability" is not a clear conception; it merely indicates lack of entire conviction that something will, or will not, happen. But the Theory of Probability, when carried out systematically and exactly, is a branch of mathematics, and entirely beyond the range of an introductory book on Logic. Nevertheless we may show what is meant by the Calculation of Probabilities.

If in ordinary discussion we use the word, not in the vague way referred to above, but with greater definiteness,—if, for example, we say that the event E will "probably" happen, we mean that there are stronger reasons for supposing that it will happen than for supposing that it will not. "We recognise that an occurrence may be more, or less, probable.

---

[1] Pp. 130, 131.

There are all *degrees of probability* between the certainty that *E* will not happen and the certainty that it will. If we want to state exactly *how* probable an occurrence is, we must count the number of reasons favourable to the production of *E*, and the number of reasons that are unfavourable and can therefore be offered against the occurrence of *E* . . . It is natural to represent the probability of the occurrence of *E* as the ratio of the favourable factors to the unfavourable together with the favourable factors,"—*i.e.* to the total number of possibilities in the case.[1]

The estimation of such rational expectation is the province of the Theory of Probability. This is what is meant by saying that the estimation of probability is "subjective" The event itself will happen in some one way, determined by causation, the probability does not determine that, but only our subjective expectation of it. Indeed, without the assumption of the certainty of the actual event in some one of the various possible ways, there would be no basis for the calculation of probability. The very foundation of the theory is that possibilities can be limited to a definite finite number. We know, in other words, that the general relation *If S is A it is X* holds, but we do not know what particular form —x_1 *or* x_2 *or* . . x_n—*X* will take, because we do not know in what exact form—a_1 *or* a_2 *or* . . a_n—the general condition *A* will be realised, though we are bound to assume that every definite form a_n necessitates one perfectly definite form x_n.

It is from this combination of knowledge and ignorance that the calculation of probability starts A number of alternatives are possible, but we do not know which of these will be actual. The alternatives must satisfy certain conditions. They must first, as has been said already, be exhaustive of the whole range of possibility Secondly, they must be definite. Thirdly, they must be mutually exclusive. Lastly, the alternatives must be of equal value, *i e.* if they are given—as they always may be—as alternative consequents in a hypothetical proposition, those consequents must be equally likely.

---

[1] See Stebbing, *A Modern Introduction to Logic*, Ch xviii, pp 364 5

If the alternatives are expressed in a categorical disjunctive proposition, this condition postulates that the alternative predicates either shall be equal and co-ordinate specifications of the common genus, or shall refer to equal extents of denotation. Thus, if an urn contains one black and six white balls, the disjunction that a ball drawn will be either white or black is doubtless correct, but it is not a basis for the calculation of probability, for black and white are not specifications of equal value of the genus ball Or, stating the proposition in hypothetical form—If a ball is drawn, it is either white or black—the consequents are not equally likely, owing to the preponderance in number of the white balls. And generally, this condition of equivalence can never be fulfilled when one of the alternatives simply negatives the other, owing to the indefinite range of reference of the negative term Indeed, such a disjunction would not fulfil the second condition given above, which requires that each alternative shall be definite

But it is necessary to enquire into the justification for regarding the alternatives as equally likely This justification must be found in our ignorance as to what precise conditions will be operative For example, if a penny is tossed, it will fall with either head or tail uppermost Now, which will be uppermost in any particular throw will be exactly determined by such conditions as the position of the coin at starting, how it is grasped in the fingers, the force and direction of the twist, etc But what special form these conditions will take we are totally ignorant We know that if *S* (the coin) is tossed (*A*), it will fall with one side uppermost (*X*), but as we do not know the form a_n which *A* will take, we do not know whether *X* will appear as x_1 (heads up) or x_2 (tails up).

There is, thus, in every such calculation a basis of knowledge. We know the coin will lie on one of its sides and not on its edge, but we have no reason to expect one side rather than the other to be uppermost, that is, we have no reason to believe the chances to be unequal. But further, we also know that in a long series of throws the sides which come upwards will succeed each other very irregularly, and yet with an approximation to equality in frequency. We have thus, in addition, objective and positive reason to believe that the chances for head and tail are at any rate approximately equal.

Experience thus tends to verify the hypothesis of equal probability to which we are led on the subjective ground that we know no reason to expect one result rather than the other. For when this is the case, we expect that these unknown conditions will in the long run make as often for one result as for the other, and, therefore, that the possible results will be realised with equal frequency Of course this can never be exactly verified, as that would involve the examination of an infinite series of occurrences, which is impossible. To stop in a series of observations—*e g.* of the throws of a penny—when the possible events have all happened an equal number of times, would obviously be to beg the question , for a continuance of the series would, in all likelihood, show a divergence from equality But as, in a long series, the approximation to equality is always fairly close, experience may be said to give as full confirmation of the theory as the case permits.

The calculation of probability is, nevertheless, not dependent upon the actual experience of any series. It is possible, not only when we have grounds for believing the chances to be equal, but when we have no reason for assuming them to be unequal. In fact, our whole data is knowledge of the number of equivalent possible cases, and the absolute absence of any ground for preferring one rather than the others We may calculate the probability just as well when only one of the possible cases can be actually realised—*e g one* throw of a penny—as when we are dealing with a series in which all the alternatives will be actually realised an approximately equal number of times.

It is said sometimes that the idea of equally likely alternatives is based upon equality of belief in their occurrence. This is to make the question too entirely and individually subjective. The belief of any individual is influenced by many conditions, some of which are generally more or less irrational and independent of any valid justification. Thus, belief in the possible occurrence of any event would vary with different individuals. But the probability does not vary with it. It is not, therefore, actual belief, but what ought to be believed, that is defined by probability. And what ought to be believed is but another name for rational expectation, that is, expectation based upon the proportion of available knowledge to ignorance. Probability is, therefore, a measure of knowledge, and so defines what ought to be believed, instead of being based upon what actually is believed

From what has been said, it is evident that the amount of probability is not affected by considerations of time. Whether the calculation refers to an event in the past or in the future, or to the truth of a universal proposition, is immaterial, it is in every case based on the same principles No doubt most illustrations of the doctrine are drawn from games of chance, as such games exemplify the conditions in the simplest way, and these have generally a reference to future expectation. But our knowledge and ignorance may be combined with reference to a past event in the same way as to one in the future, and we must calculate the probability of the reality of that event on the same principles Thus, the theory of probability is applicable to the credibility of testimony, as well as to the prediction of a future occurrence. No doubt, when an event has occurred, we can frequently get more exact knowledge of it, and then, of course, the need for the calculation of its probability is, to that extent, removed, but so long as we do not know exactly what has happened, but only that one out of a certain number of alternatives has occurred, the appeal to probability remains

The distinction so frequently drawn between probability before and after the event is due partly to the neglect of this consideration and partly to failure to make the alternatives equal in value. Thus, for example, it is extremely improbable that a hand at whist should consist entirely of trumps. Yet the improbability of this is no greater than that of any other one definite hand. It is its interesting character which draws special attention to it, and causes us to recognise how enormous are the odds against it. This we do not recognise in the case of other hands, but the odds against any one of them are the same. If, then, a person told us he had held a hand of thirteen trumps the previous evening, we should probably feel more hesitation in believing him than if he told us he had held a hand consisting of certain definitely named cards. Yet the antecedent improbability would be no greater in the one case than in the other Were the person, however, to claim that he had, previously to playing, written down the contents of a certain hand, and that he had actually been dealt that hand, we should probably hesitate to receive his statement just as much as if he told us he had been dealt thirteen trumps, for the previous defining of the hand would have made the odds against it as apparent as in the other case

When we hesitate to believe the statement of such coincidences it is because we feel that the odds against the occurrence were antecedently very great, and we balance that with the odds in favour of the credibility of the witness If we do not doubt his credibility, we receive the statement in spite of its antecedent improbability, for to assume that the extremely improbable is impossible is to fall into a dangerous fallacy The way in which we use our terms in discussing such a case shows that probability and improbability are not opposed terms in the theory of probability, improbability only means a very low degree of probability. It is, however, very vague in its reference, so, in all calculations, the probability only is spoken of, and this may, of course, be very high or extremely low.

The foregoing account of the Theory of Probability may be accepted as satisfactory for the purposes of an introductory book on Logic. But it is only provisionally satisfactory, because it rests on assumptions which require further investigation and analysis in particular, the assumption that events may be "independent," and that there is such a thing as "equal probability." The analysis of these and certain other related assumptions does not lead to their rejection, but to the formulation of certain limitations and qualifications required in them. These matters, however, belong to the advanced study of the subject. For the student who desires to enter on such advanced study, the most authoritative modern work is *A Treatise on Probability* by Mr. J M. Keynes.[1]

---

[1] Discussion of the assumptions referred to above will be found in Pt. V., Ch xxix and xxx of this book.

For our present purpose, the statement of the methods of calculating probability which follows may be taken as sufficient. The "limitations and qualifications" to which we have referred are matters for the advanced student.

(ii) ESTIMATION OF PROBABILITY.—The full exposition of the applications of the theory of probability would take us far beyond our province into the region of mathematics. We are here concerned only with the logical character of the theory, and we will pursue its developments only so far as is necessary to show how it is based upon various modes of combining disjunctive judgments, and deductive reasoning from those combinations. The primary difficulty always is to secure in each case a full statement of exhaustive, definite, exclusive, and equally likely, alternatives; and it is in the determination of this that the mathematical doctrine of combinations and permutations is mainly appealed to.

(*a*) *Probability of Simple Events.* If we have to consider simply one set of alternative and co-ordinate possibilities, our data may be expressed in the single disjunctive proposition *A is* a_1 *or* a_2 *or* . . a_n, where we have n alternatives fulfilling the four conditions enumerated above. As there is no reason for preferring any one of these alternatives, the probability of each is equal. But as the alternatives are assumed to exhaust all possibilities, it is obvious that their sum must be equivalent to certainty, for we know A will be realised and are only ignorant as to which of the forms a_1 a_2 . . . a_n that realisation will take. This certainty is most appropriately represented by unity. The probability of each of the n co-ordinate alternatives a_1 a_2 . . . a_n is, therefore, represented by the fraction $1/n$. On the same lines, impossibility, *i.e.* the absence of any chance of realising A in any form, would be represented by o/n, *i.e.* by zero.

Now, if there are n possibilities, the chances against the realisation of any particular one are obviously $n - 1$; for the sum of the chances for and against must be the total number of chances as $n/n = 1$. This is expressed by saying the *odds* against any one particular case are $n - 1$ to 1. Now, if a number of similar but distinct possibilities are massed together as one alternative, that alternative must be given its true value. For example, if there are n balls in an urn, of which one is white and the rest black, then the chance of drawing black is $(n - 1)$ times that of drawing white, and the probabilities are not equal, but are represented by $1/n$ for white, and $(n - 1)/n$ for black

(*b*) *Probability of Compound Events.* By a compound event is meant one in which two or more simple events occur in connection with each other. The logical basis of the probability of such an event will, therefore, be found in the combination of two or more disjunctive judgments, fulfilling the conditions enumerated above The greatest care must be taken in the statement of the alternatives to make them both exclusive and exhaustive

(1) *Independent Events* If we have two independent disjunctive judgments, *i e* judgments whose predicates are neither necessarily connected, nor necessarily incompatible, with each other—

A is either u or w,
A is either x or y or z,

then by combining them we get the judgment

A is either ux or uy or uz or wx or wy or wz

Similarly, if the disjunctive propositions are also hypothetical—

If S is a, it is either u or w.
If S is b, it is either x or y or z,

then the combination will give

If S is both a and b, it is either ux or uy or uz or wx or wy or wz.

In each case the number of alternatives in the joint proposition is the product of the number of those in the single propositions, and as a result, the probability of the joint event is equal to the product of the probabilities of the simple events which it embraces. Thus, in the above symbolic examples, the probability of u is $1/2$, and that of x is $1/3$, whilst the probability of ux is $1/6$. Generally, if the probability of an event, A, is $1/m$, and the probability of another event, B, is $1/n$, then the probability that A and B will both occur is $1/mn$. But, as the direct basis of the joint probability is a single disjunctive proposition, the distinction between single and compound events is seen to be somewhat arbitrary, and to be nothing more than a distinction between two ways of regarding an occurrence.

As an example we will take the following simple case. Let there be two urns each containing three balls, of which two are white and one is black What is the probability of drawing a black ball from each ? It might seem at first sight as if the two drawings give only four alternatives, viz. *ww*, *wb*, *bw*, *bb*, where w and b denote white and black respectively. But this is to neglect the fact that there are twice as many white as there are black balls , in other words, the alternatives are not of equal value. If we symbolise the contents of the first box as w_1, w_2, b_1, and that of the second as w_3, w_4, b_2 we then have the separate disjunctives, in which this objection is removed—

A is either w_1 *or* w_2 *or* b_1,
B is either w_3 *or* w_4 *or* b_2.

Then the combined disjunctive is

A B is either w_1w_3 *or* w_1w_4 *or* w_1b_2 *or* w_2w_3 *or* w_2w_4 *or* w_2b_2 *or* b_1w_3 *or* b_1w_4 *or* b_1b_2,

where the number of alternatives is seen to be nine, only one of which is *bb*, and, consequently, the probability of drawing two black balls is 1/9, which is in accordance with the general rule given above.

If we examine the other alternatives in the final proposition we see that there are four cases of two white balls ; therefore, the probability of drawing a white ball both times is 4/9. This is also in accordance with the general formula , for the probability of white in each case separately is 2/3, and, therefore, the probability of white in both cases is $2/3 \times 2/3 = 4/9$. Lastly, as the probability of white is in each case 2/3, and that of black is 1/3, so 2/9 is the probability both that the drawings will give first white and then black, and that they will yield first black and then white ; this is shown to be true by the fact that the final proposition yields two cases in which white is followed by black and two cases in which black is followed by white. The sum of these probabilities is, of course, unity, as one of the alternatives must occur. The general principle is thus illustrated at every point

A similar example is found in the throwing of dice. If one die is thrown the probability that it will fall with the side bearing six pips uppermost is 1/6, as the die has six sides, and the probability of being uppermost is equal for them all. If a second die is thrown, the probability that in that throw six will be uppermost is also 1/6; consequently, the probability that six will be thrown in each of two throws is $1/6 \times 1/6 = 1/36$. In this case, it is obviously immaterial whether two dice are thrown simultaneously or whether the same die is thrown twice successively. So in the former example, whether the two drawings are made from two urns each of which contains two white balls and one black one, or successively from one of those urns, makes no difference, so long as the constitution of the one urn is kept constant by returning after the first drawing the ball which had been drawn. This again illustrates the fact that the distinction between simple and compound events is an artificial one

(2) *Dependent Events* This leads us to the case in which the events are not independent. This, however, in no way differs in principle from the one we have just considered, though still greater care is required in stating the alternatives. The case, stated generally, is when the second event depends in some way on the first, so that the probability of the realisation of the second is modified by the occurrence or non-occurrence of the first

Perhaps, this will be best understood if we begin with the examination of an example. Starting, then, with the same supposition as before, of an urn containing three balls, two of which are white and one is black, we will ask what is the probability of drawing white twice in succession, if the ball extracted at the first drawing is not returned? In this case the constitution of the box is obviously different at the second drawing from what it was at the first, and the probability of the second drawing yielding white depends upon the result of the first drawing. If black is drawn the first time, for example, nothing but white balls remain in the urn, and the second drawing must, therefore, certainly yield white. Whilst, if white is drawn the first time, there remain only one white and one black ball in the urn, and the chance of drawing white at the second draw is, in that case, 1/2. This last case is the only one which concerns us, as in the former, the first drawing yielding black obviously makes it impossible to get white at both the first two drawings

The two consecutive drawings from the same urn are, therefore, identical with a simultaneous drawing from two urns, one of which contains two white balls and one black ball, and the other contains one white and one black ball. The disjunctions may, therefore, be written—

A is either w_1 *or* w_2 *or* b_1,
B is either w_3 *or* b_2,

where w_3 represents in the case of the single urn whichever of the white balls, w_1 *or* w_2, is not extracted at the first drawing. Combining these we have

A B is either w_1w_3 *or* w_1b_2 *or* w_2w_3 *or* w_2b_2 *or* b_1w_3 *or* b_1b_2,

and there are seen to be six alternatives, including two cases in which two white balls are drawn The probability of this drawing is, therefore, $2/6 = 1/3$. Similarly the probability of drawing two black balls is seen to be 1/6.

The same result is reached if we reason in this way. the chance of drawing white the first time is 2/3. But only if white is drawn the first time is the second drawing proceeded with. Hence the probability of the second drawing taking place at all is 2/3, and the probability of that drawing yielding white is 1/2, as it is made when the urn contains only one white and one black ball. Hence, the probability of a second white ball being drawn is $2/3 \times 1/2 = 1/3$

A similar example is the enquiry into the probability that if a penny is tossed up three times, head will fall uppermost each time The probability that head will appear at the first throw is 1/2, as head and tail are the only two alternatives The probability of the second toss taking place is, therefore, 1/2, and the probability of its yielding head is 1/2 The probability of two consecutive heads is, therefore, 1/4. But only when this is secured does the third throw take place, the probability of there being a third throw is, therefore, 1/4, and the probability that it will give heads is 1/2. Therefore, the probability of three consecutive heads is 1/8. The original disjunctions are—

A is either h_1 *or* t_1,
B is either h_2 *or* t_2,
C is either h_3 *or* t_3,

and the combination is

A B C is either $h_1h_2h_3$ *or* $h_1h_2t_3$ *or* $h_1t_2h_3$ *or* $h_1t_2t_3$ *or* $t_1h_2h_3$ *or* $t_1h_2t_3$ *or* $t_1t_2h_3$ *or* $t_1t_2t_3$,
where it is seen that only one case out of eight secures three heads.

Thus, the probability of the conjoined event is seen to be in this, as in the former case, the product of the probabilities of the separate events, and this is found to hold both when one event is contingent upon the occurrence of another, and when the separate events are independent. The results are different in the two cases, because in the former the number of possibilities of the second event is changed by the occurrence of the first event. But the general formula given in the last section (page 426)—If the probability of A is $1/m$ and the probability of B is $1/n$, then the probability AB is $1/mn$—holds in every case

(3) *Events which can happen in a Plurality of Ways.* When we have obtained a correct statement of alternatives fulfilling the conditions of exhaustiveness, definiteness, exclusiveness, and equal likelihood, we sometimes find that several of them are followed by the same consequent For example

S is either a or b or c,
If S is a it is x,
If S is b it is x,
If S is c it is y

Here it is obvious that the result is that *S is either x or y*, but that the probability of x is twice as great as that of y, as x will occur both when a is realised and when b is realised, and the probability of both a and b is seen, from the original proposition, to be 1/3. Hence, the probability of x is 2/3. If in the original disjunction the probability of a had been 1/2—*i.e.* if the proposition when accurately stated ran *S is* *either a or a or b or c*—then the probability of *s* would, on the conditions given in the hypothetical propositions above, be 3/4.

Thus to put the matter generally: When several distinct and exclusive conditions have the same consequence, the probability of that consequence is the sum of the probabilities of those conditions. This, it will be seen, is not a new principle, but a simple deduction from the conditions which a set of alternatives must satisfy in order to form a basis for the calculation of probability

As a simple example, we will ask what is the probability that head will come uppermost in one or other of two throws of a penny. Here there are four alternatives in the original disjunctive proposition The throws are either *hh or ht or th or tt*, and any one of three of these secures a head. Of course in the first case, when head is once secured the second throw would not be made, but the case must not be omitted, as there are two possible sequences in which head comes first This is seen quite clearly when it is remembered that two consecutive throws of the same coin and the simultaneous tossing of two coins are identical as a basis for computing probability. We reach the same result by a line of reasoning similar to that we appealed to in the last case [*see* (2)] The chance of getting head at each toss is 1/2; but the second toss is contingent on the failure of the first to give heads, the probability of the toss itself is, therefore, 1/2, and consequently the probability of its giving heads is $1/2 \times 1/2 = 1/4$ Hence, the total probability of getting heads in one or other of two tosses is $1/2 + 1/4 = 3/4$

For another illustration we will take the probability that a throw of two dice will yield a certain definite number of pips, say seven, irrespective of how that number is divided between the faces of the two dice. Our original disjunction here consists of thirty-six alternatives, each of which is a condition fulfilled in one throw, and yielding a particular consequence. Upon examining them, we find that the number seven results from six of these alternatives, as it may be composed of $4 + 3$, $5 + 2$, or $6 + 1$, and each of these may occur in two ways, according as the larger number appears on the first or the second die. The probability of seven being thrown is, therefore, $6/36 = 1/6$. Similarly, the probability that each die will throw the same number of pips is 1/6, as there are obviously six possible cases in which a pair of numbers can be shown.

(c) *Probability of Alternative Conditions.* We will now consider what is often called "inverse" probability, which stands in the like relation to the direct probability we have been hitherto dealing with as induction does to deduction. As the same principles of reasoning govern both those methods of inference, so here we shall find no new principles. The problem is—given that a certain event has happened, to which of a certain number of alternative causes or essential conditions is it probably due, each being conceived possible? This is the problem that has to be solved in endeavouring to reach the true magnitude of a phenomenon from more or less inaccurate measurements

The problem, obviously, presents more practical difficulties in its solution than do those we have already dealt with, as we have often no certainty that we have correctly stated the alternatives But the principle on which we proceed is the simple one that the condition from which the actual event would most probably follow is most probably the condition from which it actually did follow, provided that the condition from which the event would most probably follow is not itself very improbable. We have, then, to take account of two probabilities—(1) that the assumed condition was actually existent, and (2) that the event would follow from it if it were present, the probability of the condition is then the product of these two probabilities This is seen to be only the inverse mode of stating the direct probability of a compound event.

To take a simple example An urn is known to contain three balls but we are ignorant of their colour, and after each drawing the ball drawn is returned to the urn. If one white ball is drawn we have no reason to conclude anything about the possibility of drawing or not drawing a ball of another colour If the next drawing gives a black ball we have two alternatives, but we are not certain that they are exhaustive of all the possibilities If, however, we continue drawing and get nothing but white and black balls, the probability that there are no balls of any other colour present becomes rapidly stronger. If, for instance, the urn contains one, and only one, red ball, the probability that the ball would not be drawn at any one drawing is 2/3 The probability, therefore, that it would not emerge in four drawings is only 2/3 × 2/3 × 2/3 × 2/3 = 16/81, whilst that it should not appear in eight drawings is only $2^8/3^8$, which is less than 1/25, and with every drawing this probability decreases On the other hand, if the urn contains only white and black balls, the result obtained would be a necessity. This assumption is, consequently, by far the more likely

As a slightly more complex example, we will assume it known that the urn contains three balls which are known to be either white or black, and we will estimate the probability of the various possible proportions of white and black balls in the urn Before the drawings commence there are four possible alternatives—*www*, *wwb*, *wbb*, *bbb*. The probability of each alternative is, therefore, 1/4, and that of any one particular ball is 1/3 × 1/4 = 1/12 The case is, indeed, the same as having twelve balls—six white and six black—to draw from. The first drawing, however, giving a white ball, the alternatives are reduced to three, *bbb* being put out of court. We then consider the relative probability of the remaining alternatives

As there are six ways in which *w* can be drawn, the probability for each individual white ball is 1/6. The probability, therefore, that the white ball actually drawn came from *www* is 3/6 = 1/2 , that it came from *wwb* is 2/6 = 1/3, and that it came from *wbb* is 1/6. The most probable alternative, therefore, at the end of the first drawing is *www*. If, however, the second drawing gives a black ball, *www* is proved to be impossible, and the alternatives are reduced to *wwb*, and *wbb*. And so far, there is no reason to prefer one to the other. If, however, the next drawing is *w*, so that in three drawings *w* appears twice and *b* only once, the alternative *wwb* is the more probable. For assuming *wwb* to be real, the probability of *w* is at each drawing 2/3 and that of *b* is 1/3. Hence, the probability of getting a single combination giving *w* twice and *b* once is 2/3 × 2/3 × 1/3 = 4/27. But this combination may be drawn in three different orders, viz *wwb, wbw, bww*. Therefore the total probability of getting one of these three orders is the sum of them all, and as each is 4/27 the sum is 3(4/27) = 4/9. On the other hand, on the supposition of *wbb*, the probability of getting *w* twice and *b* once is 2/3 × 1/3 × 1/3 = 2/27. This may also happen in three ways, and, therefore, its total probability is 3(2/27) = 2/9. Thus the odds in favour of the first hypothesis are 2 to 1, and its probability is, therefore, 2/3

As another example we will take a case of the probability of testimony Suppose that two witnesses, the probability of whose accuracy is 3/4 and 2/3 respectively, agree in affirming the occurrence of an event which in itself is as likely to have happened as not to have happened; *i e* whose antecedent probability is 1/2. What is the probability that the event really did happen? There are two possible and equally likely antecedents—that the event did happen, and that it did not happen. On the hypothesis that it did happen the probability of both witnesses stating that it did is the probability of their both telling the truth, *i.e* 3/4 × 2/3 = 6/12 On the hypothesis that it did not happen, the probability that both witnesses should assert that it did is that of their both speaking falsely, *i.e.* 1/4 × 1/3 = 1/12 The odds are, therefore, 6 to 1 that the event did happen, *i.e* the probability that it really occurred is 6/7.

(*d*) *Probability of the Recurrence of an Event*[1] If we know nothing whatever of the conditions of an event, but only that it has occurred, we may estimate the probability that it will occur again. At first sight it might seem that the chance of its occurring again under the same conditions is exactly equal to that of its not recurring; *i.e.* that for every occurrence the probability would be 1/2. But this would lead to the paradoxical result that continued repetition of an event gives us no grounds for expecting it to occur again, and so that even infinite uncontradicted experience of the occurrence would not increase our rational expectation that it should occur again. It is, however, a miscalculation, as it overlooks the fact that continued occurrence testifies to the persistence of the conditions which produce the event, and even though we do not know what those conditions are, yet as evidence of their existence increases, we are justified in expecting more and more strongly their continued existence

---

[1] The solution of this problem is that given by Lotze, *Logic*, § 282 (5).

We must, therefore, take account of all the times the event has occurred, and in stating our original alternatives each of these must count as one For instance, if an event has happened once, that is one reason for expecting its recurrence. But if we put that on one side for the moment, the chances for its occurrence again would be equal There are, therefore, two reasons to expect its recurrence and only one for expecting it not to happen again. The odds for its recurrence are, consequently, 2 to 1 and the probability of the event happening again is 2/3 So, generally, if an event has happened m times, that gives m alternatives in the original disjunction; the possibilities that it may occur again and that it may not do so, add 2 more. Consequently, the total number of alternatives is $m + 2$ of which $m + 1$ are favourable. The probability that the event will occur once more is, therefore $(m + 1)/(m + 2)$. For instance, if the sun has risen daily for five thousand years, the probability that it will do so once more is 1,826,214/1,826,215

It is thus evident that with continued uncontradicted experience, the probability of a single repetition of the event rises very high indeed, and that it increases with the growth of such experience, the larger the value of m, the nearer the probability approaches to certainty. But this probability rests on the assumption that continued experience testifies to the persistence of the conditions which produce the event, and this assumption is itself only probable The formula, therefore, measures the probability of the recurrence of the event only indirectly. it directly measures the probability of this probability.

It will be seen that this calculation of probability is the true basis of induction by simple enumeration. The formula shows that with wide and uncontradicted experience the probability that an empirical law which summarises that experience will hold good in one more case is very high. But it also shows that extension of it beyond the realm of actual experience becomes increasingly uncertain with increase in the width of that extension. For, if the formula is written to show the probability that an event which has occurred m times will happen n times more, it becomes $(m + 1)/(m + n + 1)$; for $m + 2$ in the original formula $= m + 1 + 1$, where 1 is the number of new cases, *i e.* n—which obviously decreases in value as n is increased

Again, another modification of it shows how the actual experience of the failure of the event weakens the probability of its recurrence. For if an event has occurred m times and failed to occur n times under circumstances where it might have been expected to happen, then there are already $m + n$ cases; the possibilities that it may or may not occur again add 2 more, and thus, the probability for its recurrence is $(m + 1)/(m + n + 2)$, which decreases as n increases. In this case, the extension to p more cases becomes still more hazardous, as its formula is $(m + 1)/(m + n + p + 1)$, where $(m + n)$ in the denominator corresponds to m in the original formula, as it expresses the total number of observed cases. and p corresponds to n as expressing the number of unobserved cases, the probability of whose occurrence it is desired to estimate [1]

3. Methods of Determining Magnitude.—As different measurements of the same phenomenon vary, the ascertainment of the true magnitude is an inductive problem which can only be solved with a high degree of probable approximation We have to decide what assumption as to the true magnitude will lead with the greatest probability to the values actually obtained, on certain hypotheses as to the character and mode of action of the unknown conditions to which the errors are due. We have the permanent cause which yields the true magnitude, and in addition an indefinite number of interfering conditions, more or less insignificant in amount, of whose number and influence we are ignorant.

---

[1] The above account assumes the validity of the "Law of Succession" formulated by Laplace Its limitations are discussed by J M Keynes, *op cit*, Pt V, Ch. xxx

The question is—What assumptions are we justified in making with regard to these conditions; and, as a consequence of those assumptions, what practical methods are open to us of correcting our observations of magnitude?

(i) *The Method of Means*.—When we have different results from several measurements of the same phenomenon, we know that all but one *must* be, and all *may* be, erroneous. As the number of measurements is increased, the probability of any particular one being exactly right gets less and less, and may, in our discussion, be left out of account.

If, then, we have two different measurements, four alternatives are open to us—either both are too large, or both are too small, or either one is too large and the other one too small. If we are really entirely ignorant of any conditions likely to influence the result one way or the other, these alternatives are equally probable. If, however, the measurements are made with different instruments which have not the same degree of precision, or if one is made by a method more likely to yield accurate results than that used in the other case, we should prefer the measurement made under the conditions most likely to yield an accurate result. "Any method of measurement which we know to avoid a source of error is far to be preferred to others which trust to probabilities for the elimination of the error. As Flamsteed says: 'One good instrument is of as much worth as a hundred indifferent ones.'"[1] But no methods or instruments give invariable and absolutely truthful results, though in all scientific work the methods are so well considered and so carefully employed, and the instruments are so delicate and precise, that we may regard the occurrence of any considerable error as a practical impossibility, and may assume that the larger a possible error is, the less is its chance of occurrence.

If, then, we assume that the two measurements, *A* and *B*, were made by methods and with instruments equally likely to give an accurate result, and if we are absolutely ignorant of any ground for preferring one measurement to the other—that is, for expecting one kind of error rather than another—

---

[1] Jevons, *Principles of Science*, p. 391.

we are justified in assuming that in *each* measurement it is equally probable that the result obtained is too large or too small. From this it follows that the probability either that *both* measurements are too large or that both are too small is 1/4, while the probability that one is too large and one too small is 1/2. Thus the true magnitude most probably lies within the limits of A and B.

The same result is obtained from the hypothesis that small errors are more probable than large, for it would follow from this that the most probable magnitude is that which gives the least sum of errors. But if the true magnitude is between A and B the sum of the errors is $A - B$, while if it exceeds A, or is less than B, by n, the sum of the errors of the two measurements is $A - B + 2n$. As the number of measurements is increased, the probability that the true magnitude lies within the extremes rapidly increases. For example, if we have six measurements, the probability either that all of them are too large or that all of them are too small may be calculated by the mathematical theory of probability to be only 1/64, while the probability that the true magnitude lies between the extreme measurements is 62/64. The odds are, therefore, 31 to 1 in favour of that hypothesis

The question now arises as to *what* intermediate value is the most probable. The mathematical assumption is that the number of causes of error is indefinitely large, while the influence of each is indefinitely small, and that each is equally likely to be operative in increasing or in decreasing the result Under these conditions, the arithmetical mean—*i e.* $(a + b + \ldots . n)/n$—of a number of measurements of the same phenomenon is most probably the true magnitude; for the errors so caused will balance each other, the sum of the positive and that of the negative deviations being equal.

It sometimes happens that the geometrical mean between two quantities is more useful than the arithmetical mean. If a and b are the two quantities the geometrical mean is $\sqrt{ab}$. But for reasons of simplicity the arithmetical mean is more often used.

The arithmetical mean of the actual results of measurements is, then, the true magnitude—or the most probable approximation to that magnitude—in the great majority of cases when we are dealing with a single phenomenon. The errors in such measurements are related to each other as simply more or less in one fixed direction, and may be graphically represented by setting off on a straight line, on the two sides of a zero point which indicates the true magnitude—that is, no error—divisions which are proportional respectively to the positive and negative errors involved in the actual measurements.

(ii) *Method of Least Squares.* But when we are dealing with compound magnitudes, in which two or more quantities are dependent on each other, the method of taking the arithmetical mean is no longer available This case may be spatially represented by the deviations from the bull's eye of the shots on a target The deviations are in all directions, but each can be resolved into a vertical deviation and a horizontal deviation The graphic representation of each such resolution is a right-angled triangle, in which the actual deviation is the hypotenuse; and the square on this equals the sum of the squares on the lines which represent its resolution into vertical and horizontal deviations. When the total deviations are measured, the sum of their squares—on the supposition that the sum of the horizontal variations on the one side cancel those on the other, and that the vertical deviations neutralise each other in like manner—is easily shown by a geometrical construction to be the least possible.

The proof of the method of least squares involves an appeal to mathematics which would be out of place here. Its principle is: That magnitude is the most probable, whose assumption makes the sum of the squares of the errors of the actual measurements the least possible It is an extension of the method of means, in that it indicates the most probable mean in cases which involve a plurality of arithmetical means When we are dealing with only one magnitude the finding of the arithmetical mean gives the same result as the application of the method of least squares, of which it is but a particular case. And it will be seen that this method shows the real agreement of the result obtained with the assumption that, as large errors are less probable than small, that result is most probable which gives the least possible sum of errors.

If we take three measurements of a single phenomenon and obtain three values, the intermediate one will always give the least sum of simple errors, whether it is the arithmetical mean or not. For if a, b, c be the three results the sum of errors involved in assuming b to be the true magnitude is—supposing them to be given in descending magnitude—$(a - b) + (b - c) = a - c$. But if the arithmetical average does not coincide with b but deviates from it by, say, n, then the sum of errors is $a - c + n$. For example, if our measurements are 15, 11, 10, then assuming 11 to be the true magnitude, the sum of errors is $4 + 1 = 5$; while 12, which is the arithmetical mean, gives $3 + 1 + 2 = 6$ as the sum of errors

The same thing holds generally—the least sum of errors is obtained when the middle one of a series of measurements is taken as the true magnitude, if the series consists of an odd number of measurements, while if it consists of an even number, either of the two middle results, or a result intermediate between them, will yield the same, and that the least, sum of errors But if we assume that the sum of the squares of the errors is to be the least possible, we find that this condition is fulfilled by the arithmetical mean alone For example, on the supposition taken above, where the measurements were 15, 11, 10, if we assume 11 as the true magnitude, the sum of the squares of the errors is 17, but if we assume 12, the arithmetical mean, as the true magnitude the sum of the squares of the errors is only 14; and every other supposition will necessarily give a larger sum of squares of errors

The method of least squares is, then, the most general mode of finding the true magnitude from a number of divergent measurements, but when these measurements involve one magnitude only, the simplest mode of applying the method is to take the arithmetical mean.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

SCIENTIFIC EXPLANATION.

1. Nature of Explanation.—*Explanation is called for* as frequently in common life as in science. In both it consists essentially in showing how the fact to be explained follows from some other fact or principle admitted to be true It has, therefore, many degrees The extent of the explanation offered in any given case will depend partly upon the knowledge of the individual to whom it is addressed, and partly upon the progress of knowledge as a whole at any particular time. For the kind of dependence which will suffice to account for a fact to one mind will be rejected as futile or inadequate by another. The plain man attributes a chill on the liver to the cold winds that have blown, and offers as the *only explanation within his reach the observation* "*they* always do affect me in that way." This is not enough for the doctor, who seeks for reasons why the cold should affect the liver at all, and finds them in his general knowledge of the functions of that organ in relation to the rest of the body and in the effect of cold upon them His explanation takes a wider range, but he too may come to a point where he is stopped by the demand for a reason which has not yet been found.

Now almost any kind of explanation may be of use to this or that individual, but logic is concerned only with the general nature of explanation, and this consists in assigning any given fact a place in the system of knowledge by establishing its relations with other facts within the system.

We must, then, distinguish between logical explanation and explanation which is merely popular. The latter looks at the individual mind, and seeks to bring the new phenomenon into relation with something already there. In many cases such explanation will be utterly inadequate from the scientific point of view. It may be merely a rough analogy or illustration, as is constantly the case with the only explanations which can be given to children. Logical explanation, on the other hand, does not regard the individual mind as such, though, of course, it is reached and expressed by some individual mind. It expresses the explanation in terms of the most advanced knowledge on the subject, and is itself when first grasped, an addition to knowledge. Thus the moon's motion is logically explained by the theory of gravitation: it is popularly explained by saying that "she is a falling body, only she is going so fast and is so far off that she falls quite round to the other side of the earth, instead of hitting it; and so goes on for ever"[1]

Scientific explanation is only possible on the assumption that every fact is determined by certain conditions, so that if the conditions were otherwise the fact would be different. Explanation is the full and explicit statement of those conditions. Logically, the whole fact needs explanation, and obtains it to the extent to which its place can be assigned in a system of knowledge Practically, when any particular point needs explanation it is one aspect of the whole complex phenomenon. The chemist, for example, seeks chemical explanations: the physicist aims at determining the physical conditions. The rest of the phenomena are passed over as having no bearing on the purpose in hand.

The problem is approached through classification[2]: but classification is not explanation though it may be nearly related to it. Suppose that the attempt to classify on the principle of modification through descent has been successful, we have still to ask why the course of descent has been of one kind rather than of another. There must be some ground for the development of diverse species from one genus. Classification reveals the fact by carefully noting important resemblances and differences, and then leaves it.

But the very resemblances and differences revealed may suggest the directions in which the reasons for them should be sought. Resemblance suggests further resemblance, *i.e.* it suggests a law connecting two properties; while difference suggests that there is some wider law which would explain it. Classification is thus the first step towards explanation. Classification distinguishes things because of their properties, explanation relates things because of relations between their properties. The end we have in view in explaining is to discover necessary relations. Explanation is not final unless the facts to be explained are proved to be absolutely dependent on certain definite conditions The form in which such dependence is ideally best expressed is that of the reciprocal hypothetical propositions—*If S is M it is P*, *If S is P it is M*. These it is the business of induction to establish, so that the ideal of explanation is the same as that of induction

---

[1] Clifford, *Lectures and Essays*, p. 102.

[2] Cf. pp. 75-7; and 85-6.

Indeed all induction is progressive explanation. It may be incomplete, as when we resort to analogy or a hypothesis as yet unconfirmed, or rest content with an unanalysed causal connection. Nevertheless in each case we have a partial explanation, through which alone science can advance to more perfect knowledge But not every explanation is inductive in form. When the relations to which we appeal as the necessary conditions of the phenomenon to be explained are axiomatic, or have already been established as true, we may often show deductively the dependence of the one on the other This is so in mathematics and in sciences, such as astronomy, which are largely mathematical Moreover, the statement of an explanation arrived at inductively may be expressed in deductive form. With these distinctions we are already familiar.

But whether the principles on which scientific explanation rests are already established or not is logically immaterial. They may become known in the very process of explanation. This is exemplified again and again in induction.

The atomic theory of matter began as an unproved assumption. By means of it particular facts were explained; for instance, that the proportionate weights of elements in chemical compounds are always fixed The explanation constitutes evidence for the theory. Here is a further difference from popular explanation "Nothing is popularly accepted as an explanation in the way of analysis or interposition, unless the laws thus introduced are already known and accepted. The scientific man, however, does not much care whether these laws are already known or not · if they are, so much the better : if not, they must become known. For speculative purposes they equally in either case help him on towards that simplification of nature and reduction of all things to the fewest generalisations, which is his one great aim."[1]

2. Generalisation.—All explanation involves generalisation : it seeks to detect the universal in the particular. The particular may be a particular fact or an empirical law. A particular fact can be shown to be dependent on some other facts, and by the direct methods of induction it is often possible to establish the mode of dependence and to express it in an empirical law So far there is partial explanation. But an empirical law only describes the phenomenon, and is itself in need of explanation. Now an empirical law is already a generalisation, and any further explanation must be sought in the establishment, by the indirect methods of induction, of its connection with other laws of wider generality.

Thus the explanation of an empirical law frequently consists in relating it to one of those far-reaching generalisations such as the law of gravitation, the principle of the conservation of energy, or the atomic theory of matter, by which we seek to relate a multitude of facts. To explain, in short, in the fullest sense of the word is to think the matter explained as part of a system [2]

Whether we are explaining a particular fact or an empirical law there is no real difference in aim. In each case we endeavour to assign the essential and invariable conditions which account for the fact or law in question. When this has been accomplished we have passed beyond the particular; for in stating the essential conditions we imply that wherever they are fulfilled the fact or law will be exemplified, though no particular instance is indicated The fact or law has been generalised.

---

[1] Venn, *Empirical Logic,* p. 509

[2] Cf. Ch XXI, §2.

Generalisation, then, consists in the establishment of identity of conditions The phenomena generalised will exhibit differences which may be great or small, but they must be exactly similar in other respects if they are to rank as instances of the same thing. But there may be similarity which is of no importance for scientific explanation, as when two things diverse in other respects resemble each other in colour.[1] Resemblances and conditions are terms of different import. The former may or may not serve as a basis for scientific generalisation it depends on whether they do, or do not, stand in a necessary relation to the phenomena compared. If they do, then the resemblances are also conditions, and it is on a precise similarity between them that generalisation is based.

Such generalisation is not an inference from a number of instances as such "There is all the difference in the world between the judgment, 'An indefinite number of cases of $A - B$ exist' and 'The relation $A - B$ is universal' In the first case, we may also have $A - C$, $A - D$, $A - N$. In the second, we may have none of those, but always $A - B$, and nothing but $A - B$."[2] The mere repetition of instances does not justify the passage from 'many' to 'all' The transition can never be made with certainty · the conclusion always remains one of greater or less probability.

But as soon as the instances are analysed and the essential conditions ascertained, the generalisation that these conditions universally determine the result is made, and is expressed in the hypothetical judgment, *If S is M it is P*. Subsequent confirmatory experience may strengthen our belief that the analysis has been correctly made, but it does not add to the necessary conditions known. Indeed knowledge of them may, in very favourable cases, be attained by the careful examination of a single instance, though as a rule a plurality of instances facilitates the difficult task of analysis, not in virtue of the plurality, but by aiding the effectual isolation of the conditions sought. The validity of the generalisation rests, then, not on the number of instances examined, but upon the character of the single instance, and, as we have seen, ultimately upon the postulates of induction.[1] Without these assumptions generalisation would be unjustified.

---

[1] Cf below, p 447.

[2] Hobhouse, *Theory of Knowledge*, p. 241.

In all valid generalisation, then, we attempt to set forth a necessary relation between a phenomenon and its conditions; and by necessary we simply mean that given the conditions the phenomenon will exist whatever the circumstances may be. But this is a purely abstract statement. We desire to know, not only that under certain conditions a given result will follow, but whether in fact those conditions are exemplified in reality. It is not enough to know that *If S is M it is P*; for the advance of real knowledge we must ascertain *when* *S* is *M*.

In both these steps of generalisation there is room for error. In the former error may exist in that *S is M* may be an imperfect statement of the essential conditions of *P*. Either some elements may be omitted or other elements than the essential conditions may be introduced. The conditions are obscured by surrounding circumstances, and it is on their exact determination that the justification of the generalisation rests. Hence it is not sufficient that *S is M* should *contain* the ground of *P* . for extraneous elements may also be present. The circumstances must be analysed, and all that is unessential eliminated until we can assert that *S* being *M is* the ground of *P*. We have already examined the inductive methods by which such an elimination is effected.

In the latter step of the generalisation there is also room for error. The point here is whether the essential conditions in this new case *are* exactly those expressed by *S is M*. We are apt to be misled by outward resemblance. No doubt phenomena which are determined by the same essential conditions do frequently resemble one another in an external way. But however strong the outward resemblance may be, in scientific thought we can never trust to it.

---

[1] See Chap. XXV.

A reliance on resemblance, for example, would class the sea-anemones in the vegetable rather than in the animal kingdom, and indeed for many years biology contained several instances of such false generalisation.[1] On the other hand, the outward resemblance may be of the slightest, and yet the essential conditions be identical. "Between the brilliant explosive discharge of a thundercloud and the gentle continuous current produced by two pieces of metal and some dilute acid there is no apparent analogy whatever. It was therefore a work of great importance when Faraday demonstrated the identity of the forces in action"[2] Obviously the determination of identity of conditions depends on insight in the particular branch of science concerned, it is not a part of logical theory but of experimental practice.

The aim of science is to reach a full knowledge of essential conditions. But this aim is only being progressively realised. The general process by which truth is attained through induction reveals a more exact determination of conditions from simple enumeration of instances on the ground of a general resemblance, through analogy, to complete scientific induction, and at all stages the hypothesis is a tentative generalisation Enumerative induction suggests an empirical generalisation that *Every S may be P.* But that the resemblance on which it is grounded is felt to be due to an underlying identity is shown by the attempt made in analogy to reach this identity, and to find a possible ground for the empirical generalisation The further inductive process is but the testing, moulding, and limiting of this suggested ground until the ideal is reached of a statement of conditions so exact that for every variation in the phenomenon an explanation can be found in a modification of the conditions.

Now it is not always possible to complete the process by reaching a full statement of the essential conditions. If we are confined, for example, to the direct methods alone we have to stop short at empirical generalisations: and in many sciences this is as far as explanation has yet gone in regard to the bulk of the phenomena which they investigate. Even then an empirical generalisation is only regarded as a step towards some more comprehensive principle from which it may be derived. Astronomy found a principle which appeared to be ultimate in the law of gravitation, but even this principle has been shown to be a particular case of a yet wider generalisation : medicine is still largely empirical. The characteristic of an empirical generalisation is that it describes exactly what has to be explained by formulating the law of its occurrence. This is itself a partial explanation of it, but for scientific explanation we must know *why* that law and no other gives an exact description of the phenomena. The answer, if found, will be a wider generalisation giving the conditions which strictly determine the empirical generalisation, and hence the particular facts on which it is based.

---

[1] Cf. pp. 83-4.

[2] Jevons, *Principles of Science*, p. 612.

We have, then, two degrees of generalisation, (i) empirical generalisations, (ii) generalisations of wider scope and surer foundation, which, for convenience, we may call " established truths," though we realise that they too may be subject to modification as knowledge advances.

(i) *Empirical Generalisations.* An empirical generalisation is one which is descriptive, and not in any real sense explanatory. It is itself in need of explanation For example, take the generalisation that the pébrine disease in silkworms is due to the presence of certain corpuscles at various stages of the silkworms' growth. This answers the question to what is the disease due, and suffices for the devising of practical measures to prevent it But it throws no light on the problem why corpuscles of that particular kind should be associated with the appearance of a special disease. It has been reached by observation and experimental investigation, and is a succinct description of the essential fact in relation to the mode in which the disease is caused. Nevertheless it stands in relative isolation from other knowledge. It is not seen to be derived from some more general principle of disease : in other words, it is unexplained.

Empirical generalisations result from observation and experiment. They arise, therefore, in the earlier stages of scientific enquiry and furnish the material for wider theories. When they are seen to be derived from principles of greater generality they are no longer merely empirical Hence it will often happen that a generalisation which was at first empirical will cease to be so classed Thus Galileo determined the law of falling bodies empirically, and it remained an empirical generalisation until Newton showed the reason for it as a necessary consequence of the principle of gravitation. While a generalisation remains empirical its grounds are wholly or partially unknown

Contemporary knowledge furnishes numerous examples of such unexplained uniformities, but explanation is always regarded as ultimately attainable For where there is observed uniformity of occurrence there is always a presumption that the conditions determining the phenomenon are constant, and we may expect in time to discover what they are, so that the uniformity ceases to be isolated from the rest of knowledge That there must be definite determining conditions is the basis of all expectation of the recurrence of an event when the determining conditions are unknown, and this expectation rationally increases with the extension of uncontradicted experience of the event In other words, the oftener an empirical generalisation is exemplified, the greater is the probability that there is a necessary and universal relation underlying it

But while the generalisation remains empirical, it must never be assumed to be universally and necessarily true. Its statement can never be more than categorical, we can at most say *Every S is P*, not *If S is M it is P* Hence the logical rule that empirical generalisation can only be safely extended to adjacent cases If we pass to cases which vary widely from those observed, or exceed the limits of time and space within which the observation has been made, we lessen considerably our assurance that the unknown conditions remain the same It is an empirical generalisation that the expectation of life in certain dangerous trades is small . it would not do to apply the same generalisation to healthier occupations Nor should we be justified in extending generalisations, for example, as to the food and clothing of northern peoples to natives of the tropics To provide flannel waistcoats for them shows more charity than knowledge Indeed, the wider the scope over which we try to extend an empirical generalisation the less is our confidence that it will hold true, for the less ground have we for assuming that the essential determining conditions will remain unchanged.

An interesting class of empirical generalisations is composed of what are often called "Statistical Laws," but which are better termed *Statements of Statistical Uniformity*. Many problems are so complex that as a preliminary to closer analysis it is found advantageous to procure statistics of the phenomena under investigation This is especially the case in sociological and political enquiries. We may in this way gather statistics of trade, education, population, and so forth The mere counting of units would not be profitable. In the selection of the kind of unit and the nature of the statistics a definite question or series of questions is as a rule implied

"It might seem that in taking the average rate of mortality on the basis of the returns of local officials, etc , the figures of themselves disclosed the fact that the rate was higher for infants under two years of age than in later periods of life But the total average of deaths would never have shown this. It is only because the average for infants has been separately calculated, in the expectation that there might be a difference, that the difference has been found "[1]

Now when statistics are gathered in this purposive way they often reveal uniformities which point to the fact that there are at the back of the phenomena constant conditions which it would be well to seek It is well known, for example, that the number of persons who commit certain crimes, who are born, or who die, in the course of a year, bears a remarkably uniform proportion to the total number of the inhabitants of any given country; there is, as we say, a pretty constant *average* preserved in many of the phenomena of social life.

Again, the number of people in England and Wales who commit suicide is found to remain very uniform from year to year. Moreover, the averages are found to vary with great regularity according to the months of the year, being highest in June, falling regularly to December, and then gradually rising again Further, the proportion who commit suicide at different ages remains fairly constant All this indicates that social and material conditions have remained largely unchanged

---

[1] Creighton, *An Introductory Logic*, pp. 224-5.

It would be an error, however, to assume that such a statistical uniformity must necessarily continue If it does we may conclude that the same general conditions have been in operation. But it would be rash to think that the conditions will necessarily remain unchanged in the future and, since that is so, there is no more necessity in a statistical uniformity than in any other empirical generalisation Yet from the constancy of such averages an inference as to their necessity has sometimes been drawn Thus Buckle says :—

"In a given state of society a certain number of persons (about 250 each year) must put an end to their own life This is the general law, and the special question as to who shall commit the crime depends of course upon special laws : which, however, in their total action, must obey the large social law to which they are all subordinate And the power of the larger law is so irresistible, that neither the love of life, nor the fear of another world can avail anything towards even checking its operation "[1] Such a conception can only be true if the changes in society leave untouched the forces and motives which determine men to self-destruction

The monotonous record of a statistical uniformity after it had once been established would serve no useful purpose unless there was liability to change. It is the deviations from the law which bring nearer that analysis of the conditions which we desire If a particular crime is found to be on the increase, if suicide becomes more common, if the birth rate shows a proportional decline, we at once search for some variation in existing social and economic conditions which may account for the change In this way we may be put on the track of a generalisation which will explain, and not merely register, the phenomenon For we use statistics as an aid to explanation. The principle which would make the facts intelligible is hidden from us. As soon as it is discovered our interest in the collection of statistics, at any rate as a method of gaining knowledge, vanishes The facts counted and averaged are each one determined exactly, and if a uniformity appears that too has its exact conditions But what they are it does not tell us The average, for instance, neglects all the particular characteristics of the individual instances, and there is no means of showing that it is necessary without examination of those characteristics which it discards

---

[1] *History of Civilisation*, Vol. I., p. 25.

"Such uniformities of numbers and averages are primarily mere descriptions of facts, which need explanation as much as the uniformity of the alternation between day and night, and the explanation can be found only where the actual conditions, the efficient causes, are forthcoming But these are the concrete conditions of the particular instances counted, they are not directly causes of the numbers, it is only the nature of the concrete causes which can show it to be necessary for the effects to appear in certain numbers and numerical relations"[1]

(ii) *Established Truths*—When the conditions of an empirical generalisation have been as exactly determined as is within our power the generalisation is regarded as an established truth It is not a summary of particular propositions, for it is not arrived at by summarising the records of events which have been often observed to occur Such a process as we have more than once urged can yield nothing more than a greater or less degree of expectation General truths are the result of such an analysis of facts as enables us to state the relation which holds between a phenomenon and its conditions And when this relation is ascertained the postulates of induction justify us in regarding the generalisation as universally and necessarily true

Of course, if our analysis is inaccurate, if what we assume to be the conditions of the phenomenon are not really its conditions, then our general propositions are not true Or again, if our analysis is inadequate, if what we take for the essential conditions includes other elements, or if we omit some essential elements of the conditions, then our judgment has not universal validity, it is, we may say, nearly true.

Now the propositions of mathematics are regarded as certainly true The generalisations established by induction are thus contrasted with the truths of mathematics In Chapter XXII where we discussed the chief characteristics of mathematical propositions we saw that such propositions are about highly abstract concepts, and belong to deductive systems which are essentially hypothetical The generalisations of induction are not about such abstract concepts, and they form part of the existing system of knowledge which is neither deductive nor hypothetical The system of mathematical knowledge is deductive because of the highly abstract character of its concepts The mathematician can control the material about which he makes his deductions as the scientist cannot control his material Indeed, in mathematical constructions the ideal aimed at in science is realised No unknown conditions are present to introduce an element of uncertainty into the conclusion

---

[1] Sigwart, *Logic*, Eng trans, Vol II, p 490.

The superior certainty of the conclusions of mathematics has been denied on the ground that its concepts and axioms are merely generalisations from sensuous experience It is said that we know that $2 + 2 = 4$, that a triangle is a plane figure bounded by three straight lines, that things equal to the same thing are equal to one another, because we have found these relations exemplified again and again in experience. For example whatever the objects counted, whether plums, chairs, or people, the uniform result is obtained, $2 + 2 = 4$: and that is the sole warrant for the generalisation If this were true the necessity of mathematical truths could not be maintained "For you have no ground for supposing that if $2 + 2$ could sometimes make 5, cases of its occurrence would have occurred in your experience. Everything becomes problematical, the frequency of any particular sum of $2 + 2$ is quite indeterminate, if the sum is indeterminate, and your experience may assure you that you have never found them making anything else than 4, but cannot assure you that you are never likely to do so "[1]

And so it is with geometrical principles The generalisation is a precarious induction by simple enumeration, and cannot survive a contradictory instance. The criticism of Professor James, for instance, that two plus two does not always make four in sense experience, since two drops added to two drops make one drop, is a sufficient logical refutation of the generalisation

---

[1] Joseph *An Introduction to Logic*, p 510

Nor is the case improved if for simple enumeration we substitute the direct methods of induction. Suppose that we vary methodically all the circumstances as far as possible and still find our geometrical or numerical relation constant, we shall still be left with an empirical generalisation The truth is that the relations dealt with in mathematics are not such generalisations from observation, but are constructions of thought to explain the mathematical aspects of experience. Moreover the constructions are only possible because of the abstract character of the concepts This abstractness implies the hypothetical nature of mathematics, for in nature the abstract concepts of the mathematician may not exist. The mathematician asserts only that if certain of his abstract concepts are related in certain ways, they will be related in other ways It is such hypothetical propositions which are necessarily true, for it is such propositions only which follow from his axioms and definitions

The scientist, on the other hand, is concerned with matters of fact, and cannot by the nature of the case restrict himself to deductions from sets of axioms which may not be about existing things His conclusions are useless unless applicable to actual phenomena, and it is because they must be applicable to actual phenomena that they are unlikely to form part of a deductive system. Our knowledge is not sufficiently complete for this

The applied mathematician is restricted in the same way as the scientist, hence the contrast between mathematics and scientific knowledge exists between pure mathematics and science, not between the latter and applied mathematics, since this is itself but one section of science.

There is no logical reason why scientific laws should not be as certain as the laws of pure mathematics That is to say that, if we knew that our assumptions were true, and if we could establish by means of these, and if necessary by other legitimate means, generalisations of wide scope from which particular facts could be deduced, the propositions established by science would be as necessary as those of pure mathematics. Moreover, they would be true, while those of pure mathematics remain only hypothetically true. But in practice nothing like such a completely deductive system of knowledge can be achieved by the scientist. The contrast between the laws of pure mathematics and those of science has been summed up by Green, who says "any proposition about a natural phenomenon is true of it only under conditions of which we do not know all, while a proposition about a geometrical figure, if true at all, is true of it under conditions which we completely know "[1]

The true ground of the necessity of a generalisation must be sought in its relations to the whole system of knowledge available. If the facts can be explained in no other way consistent with the unity of that system, the general proposition must be regarded as objectively true and logically necessary No doubt the imperfection of knowledge leaves here a possibility of error. Modifications of the unity of the system follow every development of knowledge But there is a growing body of truth which remains undisturbed It is very improbable that any new discovery will completely overthrow the achievements of any well-established science such as that of heat or chemistry, however profoundly it may alter its outlook or widen its scope The probability that any judgment received as true by experts in any branch of knowledge will ultimately be proved to be false decreases Uncertainty attaches to the accuracy and adequacy with which our analysis in any case has ascertained the essential conditions, and it is diminished when we have assigned to the phenomenon an integral place in the system of knowledge so far as it has been already constituted. For systematisation is the last step in explanation

3. Systematisation.—Systematisation is then the stage at which laws are explained by their relations to laws of yet wider generality. An object or event is isolated until we can assign its cause in an empirical law, an empirical law is isolated until we can derive it from a wider generalisation. This derivation can only be accomplished by discovering between the two generalisations some element of identity which is seen to condition the laws of less generality By detecting this element in a number of empirical laws it is often possible to show that all of them are dependent on one principle This is the most important manner in which systems of knowledge are developed The empirical laws are said to be *subsumed* under the principle from which they are derived Thus the laws of falling bodies and of the movements of the tides are special cases of the law of gravitation

---

[1] *Philosophical Works*, Vol. II, pp 249-50

The wider the scope of such a principle, the more satisfactory is the explanation When Clerk Maxwell's equations for electro-magnetic phenomena were seen to be the equations for light phenomena, a great simplification was achieved, whose truth no one doubted Indeed, it has become almost an axiom of explanation that the fewer and simpler the fundamental laws which form as it were the pivots of the system of knowledge, the better The few theories that occupy this position, such as the theory of gravitation, the principle of evolution, the atomic theory, and the theory of electro-magnetism cover between them a wide range of natural phenomena The desire for unity compels us to seek a single system of knowledge in which the complex is resolved into the simple, and the main theories are few and comprehensive

Other modes of systematisation that have been distinguished are subordinate to that of subsumption. We may, for example, explain a particular phenomenon of which we have found the empirical law as the resultant of two or more independent causes acting simultaneously, as when the rise of a balloon is explained by the laws of fluid pressure and of gravitation [1] or we may trace the laws of causes acting successively and show how a series of events arise out of one another The latter type of explanation will be frequent when we are determining the course of historical development. But in neither case need we be fulfilling the ideal of explanation, though we are making our knowledge more systematic The laws by which an empirical law is explained may themselves be derivative, and to trace a historical sequence and to reveal it as causal is only a part of explanation. Aspects of the sequence are compared, and historical knowledge becomes more systematic as these aspects are embodied in wider generalisations

---

[1] Cf Venn, *Empirical Logic*, p. 505.

To systematise knowledge is to make a distinct advance Empirical laws which separately rest on evidence that is not conclusive are strengthened by forming an indispensable link in a system Results obtained in one branch of science often corroborate, or throw strong light on, similar conclusions in another The independent evidence on which they are based gives them mutual strength All laws cannot at present be shown to be derivative from established principles, and while our knowledge of the system is imperfect it is a gain to discover that laws which have not yet been derived from a common principle, not only do not conflict with one another, but afford positive support to their respective conclusions [1]

The distinction between the ideal and the actual system of knowledge is well expressed by Mr Hobhouse. After summing up the essentials of inductive process, he writes "The resulting system, worked out ideally for all experience, and with all its points of interconnection clear and certain would be the ideal knowledge, worked out clearly and definitely in this or that body of truth (such, perhaps, as mathematics and physics), less coherently and definitely in others (such, perhaps, as physiology), and strongly but indistinctly felt rather than pointed out in the great bulk of our 'commonsense,' every-day beliefs, it constitutes the knowledge which we actually possess "[2]

The theoretical limit of explanation is a complete and exhaustive knowledge of the system of the universe itself. If the universe is a unity of the kind postulated by monistic theories then everything within the system admits of explanation, since with full knowledge we should see it in its proper connections in the system both with all other of its elements and with the whole, and that is all that explanation implies. Of such a systematic unity there can be no explanation outside itself

---

[1] Cf. Hobhouse, *Theory of Knowledge*, p 403

[2] *Ibid*, p 404

In practice the scientist believes that his investigations will lead him towards such a completed system of knowledge. He rejects the suggestion that there are brute facts which cannot be explained, and he rejects the view that there are wide generalisations which have no relation to one another. He believes that with more complete knowledge all generalisations will take their place as necessary parts of a system.

4. Fallacies Incident to Explanation (i) *Origin.*—As explanation involves generalisation it is evident that errors of generalisation will render our explanations futile. It is further evident that all generalisation from insufficient or misapprehended data must be fallacious This means that such invalid results are all too easily accepted, for our discussion has at least brought out the truth that the interpretation of experience is a very difficult task Had we no innate tendency to generalise our experiences, science could hardly begin, yet this very tendency is at the root of the danger, for it leads us to draw general conclusions from very inadequate knowledge. Children generalise wildly, and untrained minds show little improvement One of the most difficult lessons the scientific worker has to learn is to be cautious

(ii) *Empirical Generalisations.*—Generalisations are, we have seen, at first empirical, and in that stage can never be more than probably true Here are evidently possible two main forms of error. We may generalise from too few instances, and even without having considered whether any exceptions can be met with or have been recorded. The generalisation is usually based on some striking feature common to the cases noticed, and cases which do not present that feature for that very reason escape notice Hence such generalisations as that dreams are prophetic arose from the marking of coincidences between dreams and subsequent events and disregarding all dreams which did not thus obtain fulfilment.

Such an example brings out another mode in which empirical generalisations are often vitiated, in that too general a resemblance is taken as its basis The amount of coincidence between dream and fulfilment is often extremely small, its very existence really awakens surprise and wonder, it seems something needing explanation, and the explanation is found in an assumed causal connection

The almost inevitable result of such imperfect analysis is the undue extension of the generalisation Thus, to extend an empirical generalisation of some phenomena of social life, founded upon a survey of the condition of any one country at some particular time, to other peoples and other times is to make a fallacious inference

As one class of fallacies of this character Dr Fowler mentions undue respect for authority. The influence on the opinion of the multitude of expressed judgments of well-known people on certain questions is well known to advertisers of quack medicines, promoters of public companies, and those generally who wish to attract public confidence to the goods they have to sell. The form of the argument involved would seem to be, that *A* is a man whose opinion on many subjects is of weight, therefore, his judgment is of weight on all subjects "We have to learn not only that men are to be trusted exclusively within the limits of their own experience, in their own profession or pursuit, but that even within those limits their authority is apt to become tyrannical and irrational unless it is constantly confronted with facts and subjected to the criticism of others" Similar remarks apply to an excessive regard for the authority of great writers A striking example of this is found in the intellectual idolatry with which the scientific work of Aristotle was regarded in the later Middle Ages. The result was the prevalence of such errors as that the heart is the centre of the nervous system.

The second main source of error is to regard an empirical generalisation as a necessary law This has long been known as the fallacy *Post* (or *Cum*) *hoc, ergo propter hoc*—if events are connected in time they are causally related This, too, is committed when dreams are regarded as prophetic. The fallacy arises because we cannot rest satisfied with mere statement of fact—even of general fact. We need explanation, and we are often in far too great a hurry to reach it, so we fall into this fallacy by accepting as true the first suggestion that offers itself

No doubt constant connection in time suggests a deeper bond—but that bond is not always found in the events so connected—often it must be sought in a wider generalisation. Day and night, for example, are causally connected with the daily rotation of the earth—but day does not cause night nor night day, constant as is their temporal succession

(iii) *Established Truths* —Fallacy, of course, is committed not only when an empirical law is regarded as causal and necessary, but when a truth really so established is wrongly applied to concrete reality Of this latter fallacy the most common examples are probably to be found in the consideration of cases where the operation of the law is frustrated by counteracting conditions Especially is this liable to occur in the consideration of social questions In illustration we will quote a passage from Sir G C Lewis —

" It is to be borne in mind that, in estimating negative instances, due allowance must be made for the occasional *frustration of causes* . . For example it might be argued, from the occurrence of several cases in which the absence of high import duties and of commercial restrictions was accompanied with abundance and cheapness of commodities, that the former was the cause of the latter Certain instances might then occur, in which the former existed without the latter , but each of these exceptional cases might be accounted for, by showing that there was a special circumstance, such as a deficient supply, or interruption of intercourse by war or blockade, which partially obstructed, and for a time suspended, the operation of the former cause

" Again · it might be shown, by the evidence of facts, that the operation of a new law had been generally beneficial, with the exception of certain districts, where its enforcement had been prevented or retarded by certain peculiar and accidental circumstances Exceptions of this kind, which admit of an adequate special explanation, serve rather to confirm the general inference than to weaken it , inasmuch as they raise the presumption that, but for the partial obstruction to the cause, it would have operated in these as in the other instances where no obstructions existed "[1]

In such cases we have, of course, an inadequate analysis of the conditions of the case to which we propose to apply the general law.

Generally, then, all illicit statement of law, and all wrong application of law, resolve themselves into inadequate analysis of facts The statement of the law is erroneous when the conditions given include either more or less than just those essential conditions which are the ground of the phenomenon. Thus, if we take one of a number of related conditions as the total cause, our general law will be wrong, as its statement will embrace instances which do not really come under it. For example, to state that the boiling-point of a liquid depends only on the temperature would be to omit the equally essential condition of atmospheric pressure Thus, to say that water boils at 100° C is wrong, it boils at that temperature under the pressure of one atmosphere, that is, the normal atmospheric pressure at the sea-level Up a mountain the boiling-point is different

Again, in the analysis of phenomena it is possible to confuse the whole or a part of the cause with the effect That it is by no means easy to determine in all cases which are the determining, and which the determined, elements in a complex phenomenon is illustrated by the fact that meteorologists are not agreed whether the copious and sudden downfalls of rain which usually attend thunderstorms are the cause or the effect of the electric discharge The common opinion is that they are the effect, but Sir John Herschel held that they were the cause

Another source of error is the neglect of the mutual interaction of cause and effect This interaction of course, may, also lead to that confusion of cause and effect which we have just noticed This again is well illustrated from social phenomena by a passage from Sir G C Lewis He says: "An additional source of error in determining political causation is likewise to be found in the *mutuality of cause and effect.* It happens sometimes that, when a relation of causation is established between two facts, it is hard to decide which, in the given case, is the cause and which the effect, because they act and re-act upon each other, each phenomenon being in turn cause and effect Thus, habits of industry may produce wealth, whilst the acquisition of wealth may promote industry, again, habits of study may sharpen the understanding, and the increased acuteness of the understanding may afterwards increase the appetite for study. So our excess of population may, by impoverishing the labouring classes, be the cause of their living in bad dwellings; and again, bad dwellings, by deteriorating the moral habits of the poor, may stimulate population The general intelligence and good sense of the people may promote its good government, and the goodness of the government may, in its turn, increase the intelligence of the people, and contribute to the formation of sound opinions among them Drunkenness is in general the consequence of a low degree of intelligence, as may be observed both among savages and in civilised countries. But, in return, a habit of drunkenness prevents the cultivation of the intellect, and strengthens the cause out of which it grows As Plato remarks, education improves nature, and nature facilitates education

---

[1] *Methods of Observation and Reasoning in Politics*, Vol I, p 386.

"National character, again, is both effect and cause it reacts on the circumstances from which it arises The national peculiarities of a people, its race, physical structure, climate, territory, etc, form originally a certain character, which tends to create certain institutions, political and domestic, in harmony with that character These institutions strengthen, perpetuate, and reproduce the character out of which they grew, and so on in succession, each new effect becoming, in its turn, a new cause. Thus a brave, energetic, restless nation, exposed to attack from neighbours, organises military institutions. these institutions promote and maintain a warlike spirit: this warlike spirit again assists the development of the military organisation, and it is further promoted by territorial conquests and success in war, which may be its result—each successive effect thus adding to the cause out of which it sprung."[1]

---

[1] *Op. cit.*, Vol I, p 375.

REFERENCES FOR FURTHER READING.

The books named below are selected (*a*) for their own intrinsic importance, (*b*) for their representative character, and (*c*) because they provide ample guidance for still wider study of the subject as it stands at the present time. They are, of course, only a small selection from a vast literature.

The best introductory study of the original Aristotelian doctrine and of its more direct developments will be found in *An Introduction to Logic* by H. W. B. Joseph. In the course of his treatment the author discusses all the most important parts of the Aristotelian *Organon*. The following works are also written from the point of view of the Aristotelian tradition but without special reference to Aristotle: J. Cook Wilson, *Statement and Inference*; J. Neville Keynes, *Formal Logic* (fourth edition), and W. G. Johnson, *Logic* (three "Parts" in three separate volumes). Keynes' *Formal Logic* provides a comprehensive study of the Aristotelian Logic in its purely formal aspects. Johnson's *Logic* contains original developments of the Aristotelian tradition, but is specially important for its elaborate discussions of the principles and methods of Induction.

The purely formal aspects of the Aristotelian Logic have been *generalised, with the aid of mathematical "symbols of operation," in what is* known as "Mathematical Logic" or "Symbolic Logic". The foundations of this study were laid by certain Italian and German logicians in the nineteenth century, but its classical exposition is in the monumental *Principia Mathematica* by A. N. Whitehead and B. Russell (three volumes, 1912 and 1925). The general nature of "Mathematical Logic" is well explained in Essays by J. Royce and L. Couturat in a volume entitled *Encyclopedia of the Philosophical Sciences: Logic* (published in 1913). More accessible is R. M. Eaton's *General Logic* (one volume, 1931) of which "Part III" contains an excellent introduction to *Principia Mathematica*. The student will find Whitehead's *Introduction to Mathematics* ("Home University Library") a useful preliminary to Bertrand Russell's *Introduction to Mathematical Philosophy* (1919) which deals with fundamental problems of Formal Logic.

Prof. L. S. Stebbing's *Modern Introduction to Logic* (second edition, 1933) is valuable not only as an exposition of fundamental logical doctrine from the author's point of view, but as a mine of information for the tendencies of contemporary investigation in the subject, both as a doctrine of Formal Inference and as a doctrine of Scientific Method. Special attention may be called to the author's references to, and discussions of, recent views of Bertrand Russell, G E Moore, and C D Broad Along with this book the student may with advantage read *The Principles of Logic an Introductory Survey* (1933) by C A Mace; where useful "Bibliographical Notes" are appended to each chapter

The "philosophical Logic," as it has been called, represented by F A Bradley's *Principles of Logic* (second edition, in two volumes) and Bosanquet's *Logic, the Morphology of Knowledge*, no longer holds the position which it formerly held, but it has still to be reckoned with These works are much more of contributions to the philosophical theory of knowledge than to Logic as it is understood at the present time The same may be said of the works of Lotze (*Logic*, English translation by Bosanquet) and Sigwart, *Logic* (English translation by Dendy) All these works are of interest in particular to the student who studies Logic as a department of general Philosophy rather than as a doctrine of Formal Inference and Scientific Method

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES.

The mere reading of theoretical discussions and rules, without any exercises in their application, is as useless in Logic as it would be in Arithmetic or Algebra Such exercises are as essential in Logic as they are in the mathematical sciences In Logic they fall naturally into two classes (i) questions which test the student's intelligent understanding of what he has read in the book, and which therefore are sometimes called "book-work" questions, (ii) questions involving *application* of the rules and methods explained in the book The importance of this distinction is not understood by all students Questions of the "problem" kind involve a more thorough test and play a larger part in University and other examinations than those of the "book-work" type, and the questions which follow are mainly of the "problem" kind

The questions fall into two groups, the first dealing with the topics of Chapters I to XX, the second with those of Chapters XXI to XXXIII In each group the questions correspond to the order in which the topics are discussed in the successive chapters.

CHAPTERS I -XX

1 "A man who has reflected upon the principles of reasoning is much less likely to be deceived than one who is guided unconsciously by assumptions which he has never examined" Discuss this and give illustrations

2 In what sense, if any, is Logic dependent for its principles on advance in scientific knowledge ?

3 Discuss the statement that much valid thought precedes the study of Logic, hence the study of Logic is valueless for the purposes of valid thought

4 Discuss the view of Logic implied in the following —"Logic had begun its work, and in men of a certain temperament political logic is apt to turn into a strange poison They will not rest until they have drained first principles to their very dregs They argue down from the necessities of abstract reasoning until they have ruined all the favouring possibilities of concrete circumstance"—(John Morley, *Oliver Cromwell*, pp 239-40)

5 How is Logic concerned with (i) Thought, (ii) Language, (iii) Truth ?

6 Mathematics has been said to be distinguished from Physical Science by the preponderance in the former of affirmations of Proprium Account for this difference. Can you give any non-mathematical scientific examples of such predication ?

7 What are the chief uses in defining a term ? and what are the chief classes of terms that are indefinable ?

8 Show by examples the nature of the mistakes that are likely to be made in trying to define such words as Verb (in grammar), Factor (in Arithmetic), Combination (in Chemistry), Pleasure (in Psychology) (Other words may be substituted by the examinee for those suggested)

9 Point out the fallacy, if any, in each of the following —

(*a*) *All responsible beings are rational, responsibility increases* with the increase of rationality, some dogs are more rational than some men, therefore some dogs are more responsible than some men

(*b*) If I am to pass this examination, I shall pass it, whether I answer correctly or not, if I am not to pass it, I shall fail, whether I answer correctly or not, therefore it is of no consequence how I answer the questions

(*c*) The laws of Nature never can be broken Social law is a part *of the general system of Nature, therefore* it cannot be broken

(*d*) I shall not join your society you can't expect me to do everything

10 Distinguish Logical Division from Natural Classification State and illustrate the rules of logical division, and consider how far they can be realised in classification

11 Is classification ever arbitrary ? What are the precepts and precautions to be observed in selecting the basis of classification ?

12 In the Theory of Classification, what do you understand by essential, characteristic, constant, important, and accidental features or properties ? Give examples

13 How far can we distinguish kinds of Classification by reference to the purposes which they serve ?

14 What constitutes the importance of the distinction between subject and predicate ? Do you consider that every proposition has a subject and predicate ?

15 Express the following propositions in logical form, and give the contradictory of each.—

(*a*) The only man in the house was the landlord
(*b*) Anyone but an idiot would believe it
(*c*) No admittance except on business
(*d*) Members alone can vote.

What is the logical relation between the propositions "Only graduates are eligible" and "Some graduates are eligible" ? Under what conditions is this logical relation valid ?

[The student should observe that a proposition of the form "Only S is P" means logically "No *non*-S is P," *or* "All P is S", we say "or," because "No *non*-S is P" is the converted obverse (contrapositive) of "All P is S," and "All P is S" is the obverted converse of "No *non*-S is P." A proposition of the form "Every S is P unless it is M," or "Every S except SM is P" is equivalent to "Only SM is *non*-P," being thus transformed without change of logical meaning]

16 Classify the following propositions and explain the basis of your classification—

(*a*) All men are not liars
(*b*) Any man would have done the same
(*c*) Few are successful in achieving their ambitions
(*d*) A few were not disheartened by failure
(*e*) Scarcely any marksmen score the full total possible
(*f*) This is hot
(*g*) The cow jumped over the moon
(*h*) P is between O and Q
(*i*) London is a city
(*j*) Socrates was an Athenian and a philosopher

17 State in logical form, indicate the subject and predicate, and give the quality and quantity of the following —

(*a*) All that glitters is not gold
(*b*) Axioms are self-evident
(*c*) Among Englishmen many great generals are found
(*d*) Not one of the enemy escaped

18. Express in hypothetical form the following disjunctive propositions, taking account of the meaning in each case —

(1) A line must be either straight or curved
(2) To obtain this post a man must possess either merit or influence

19 Examine how far the import of categorical propositions can be represented by diagrams Comment upon any diagrammatic scheme that has been adopted by logicians, and indicate the extent to which it succeeds or fails in satisfying the requirements of such diagrammatic representation

20 "The traditional classifications of propositions obscure the logical nature of the majority of propositions with which the logician is concerned" Discuss this statement

21 Arrange the following propositions so as to show whether or not the truth or the falsity of one can be inferred either from the truth or the falsity of another, No intelligent persons are prejudiced, All unprejudiced persons are intelligent, Some unintelligent persons are unprejudiced, Not every prejudiced person is unintelligent Explain any technical processes which you may use in working out your answer.

22. Distinguish (*a*) contradictory and contrary terms, (*b*) contradictory and contrary propositions

What precise meaning do you attach to the law of contradiction ?

How is the square of opposition affected if 'some' is taken to mean 'some but not all'?

23 Give the contradictories of the following hypotheticals:—

(1) If the material world is finite, it must have been created

(2) If a tiger once tastes human blood, it becomes dangerous

24 What immediate inferences can be drawn from each of the following four propositions?—

(a) If x is true, then y is true, (b) x would be true, if y were true, (c) x and y cannot both be true, (d) either x is true or y is true

What conclusion (if any) could be drawn in each case if it were further known (1) that x is true, (2) that x is false?

25 State the following in logical form and give, where possible, their converse and contrapositive —

(1) None but young soldiers run away, and they only in their first engagements

(2) Starvation wages are better than none at all

(3) Not all the riches of the earth can bring happiness

(4) Humour is not given to all

26. State the following propositions in logical form, and give, where possible, the Converse and Contradictory of each —

(a) All knowledge is only recollection

(b) We cannot all command success

(c) That is all that I asked for

27 State, giving examples with *S* and *P* used for terms, what can be asserted as to the truth of a proposition from—

(i) The falsity of its contrary

(ii) The truth of its simple converse

(iii) The truth of its sub-contrary.

(iv) The falsity of its converse

(v) The falsity of its sub-alternate

28 Draw as many inferences as you can from the following propositions, naming them by their logical names.—

(a) A merry heart goes all the way

(b) You can only support yourself on something which offers resistance

29 Give, where possible, the contrary, the contradictory, the converse, and the contrapositive of the following —All tyrants are unhappy *Some crows are grey When sinners repent, sometimes they are not* forgiven If a man seeks pleasure he can never attain happiness If Aristotle is right, Herbert Spencer is wrong

30 Give, where possible, the contradictory, converse, and contrapositive of the following —

(i) Not all despots are cruel

(ii) Only philosophers fail to see the difference between a post and my idea of a post

(iii) He who is down need fear no foe

31 Reduce to logical form and give the contrapositives of the following propositions —

(1) More haste less speed
(2) None but himself could be his parallel
(3) Only fools learn by experience
(4) It is an ill wind that blows nobody any good
(5) A miss is as good as a mile

32 Express in ordinary categorical form each of the following propositions, examine the distribution of its terms, and give its contradictory and contrapositive—

(*a*) We smile not only when we are pleased
(*b*) The price of an article does not always rise immediately after it is taxed
(c) Any one may judge of B 's conduct who examines the evidence

Wherein lies the fallacy of the following ?—A poet is a man, therefore a good poet is a good man

33 If, in a valid *syllogism*, the *conclusion* be false, *must* the premises be likewise false, if the premises be false, can the conclusion be true, if the conclusion and one of the premises be true, can the other premise be false ? Give reasons for, and illustrate, your answer

34 When is it impossible to draw a valid conclusion from two given premises ? Explain why the inference is impossible

35 Explain why the third figure of the syllogism is "suitable to the discovery or proof of instances and exceptions," and prove *by the syllogistic rules* that in the second figure the conclusion must be negative

Construct an *example* (not a symbolical formula) in *Baroco* in the second figure and reduce it directly to the first figure

36 Reduce to the first figure the following syllogisms —

(1) Some logicians are not good reasoners, all logicians know how to reason well, therefore some who know how to reason well do not reason well
(2) Some virtuous persons are bores, all bores show a lack of sympathetic imagination, therefore some persons who show a lack of sympathetic imagination are virtuous

37 Construct examples of syllogisms in *Camenes*, *Darapti*, and *Baroco*, also of syllogisms in *Camestres*, *Disamis*, and *Ferison* and reduce each to the first figure by the direct method

38 Why cannot O stand as a premise in the first, as a major in the second, as a minor in the third, or as a premise in the fourth figure ?

39 If the major term be universal in the premises and particular in the conclusion determine the mood and figure, it being understood that the conclusion is not a weakened one

40 Prove that in every figure, if the minor premise is negative, the major premise must be universal

41 State the following argument in a syllogism of the third figure, and reduce it directly to the first —Some things worthy of being known

are not directly useful, for every truth is worthy of being known, while not every truth is directly useful

42. If I argue from the truth of A to the falsity of B, what is the real relation between A and B which is required to make the inference valid ?

Regarding the following two arguments as examples of the *ponendo tollens*, point out analogies between them and introduce in each case the suppressed premise (1) A man may be without a vote, though not a pauper, but from the fact that Mr A has a vote, I am able to infer that he is not a pauper (2) There would be nothing absurd in maintaining that the doctrines of Natural Selection and of Utilitarianism are both false, but from my conviction that the former is true, I derive the conclusion that the latter is not

43 Consider the following argument —Those who agitate for the franchise do not deserve it and those who do not are indifferent. It should not therefore be conferred

44 "The plan of meeting a dilemma by another dilemma is a purely rhetorical device and has no logical efficacy " Comment on this and give illustrations.

45 Classify the following and examine their validity —
- (*a*) Those who have shall not receive, those who do not receive do not want
- (*b*) If we have a wet summer there is always a good clover crop We shall therefore have a poor crop this year, for the summer has been very dry
- (*c*) If the train is late, I shall miss my appointment, if it is not late, I shall miss the train but either it will be late or not late, therefore, in any case, I shall miss my appointment

46 Reduce the following to logical form, and say if either contains any fallacy —
- (*a*) Free trade is a great boon to the working man, for it increases trade, and thus cheapens articles of ordinary consumption, this gives a greater purchasing power to money, which is equivalent to a rise in real wages, and any rise in real wages is a boon to the working man
- (*b*) All thieves are dishonest; all dishonest persons are immoral; some immoral persons are not punished, therefore, some thieves are not punished

47 "Certain individuals have a given attribute, an individual or individuals resemble the former in certain other attributes, therefore they resemble them also in the given attribute"—(Mill)

Consider whether this adequately expresses the nature of syllogistic reasoning

48. (*a*) Explain carefully what you conceive to be the function in a syllogism of the major and minor premise respectively, and briefly

examine the contention that when the major premise is admitted the conclusion is asserted

(*b*) Prove from the General Rules that if the middle term of a syllogism is twice distributed, the conclusion must be particular

49 Determine the character and form of the following arguments —

(*a*) X lies to the south-east of Z, being due south of Y, which is due east of Z

(*b*) A is taller than C, being taller than B

50 Examine the view that the Syllogism, considered as an argument to prove its conclusion, is a *Petitio Principii*

51. Put the following arguments as far as possible into logical form, examine their validity, and name any fallacy you may discover—

(i) He must be a Scotsman, for no Scotsman can see the force of a joke

(ii) Partners in the same enterprise have the same interest How then can there be antagonism between my workmen and me?

(iii) Only if an officer is cool-headed does he deserve the chief command, and as this officer has not been thought worthy of the appointment, we may conclude that he is not cool-headed

(iv) The king, by the constitution, can do no wrong, and therefore he is not rightly subject to praise or blame.

52 Examine technically the following arguments —

(*a*) All men have equal rights; therefore, if A has a right to £500 a year, B has a right to £500 a year

(*b*) The great majority of persons who have had small-pox have been vaccinated; therefore, vaccination can have no efficacy as a preventative of small-pox

(*c*) Attention is a reflex act and is determined by interest. Now a reflex act may be defined as one that is determined by a physical stimulus Therefore, interest is a physical stimulus

53 State the following arguments in syllogistic form, and examine their validity —

(*a*) It is too cold here for this plant to grow

(*b*) Some statesmen are also authors, for such are Beaconsfield, Gladstone, Balfour, and others

(*c*) The literary style of these two books is similar, and therefore they are probably by the same author.

54 State the following arguments in syllogistic form where possible, and examine their validity —

(*a*) If a man be rightly entitled to the produce of his labour, then no one can be rightfully entitled to anything which is not the produce of his labour.

(*b*) Poetic genius and scientific ability are perfectly compatible, as the instance of Goethe proves

(*c*) M is the only possible cause of P, if therefore we find P occurring, we may be sure of the presence of M (*d*) It is useless to give advice, for if a man is wise he will not need it, and if he is not wise he will go his own way

55. Examine the following —(1) Reason is identical in nature wherever it is found, and all men are rational, therefore all men should be treated as equal. (2) To make a good bargain is an advantage, therefore the more good bargains we make the better (3) A person found guilty by a jury may be innocent, John Jones has been found guilty, therefore he may be innocent. (4) Do not interfere For if he means to do wrong he will do it, and if he means to do right your interference will be impertinent

56. Examine the following arguments —

(1) He is a very bad marksman; hence it is safest to stand in front of the object he is aiming at.

(2) The truly brave are never bullies hence all bullies are cowards.

(3) Wisdom is inseparable from benevolence hence all benevolent persons are wise

(4) A man may smile and smile, and be a villain; my friend Smith is constantly smiling. therefore he may be a villain

(5) This regiment behaves bravely in action therefore it must be composed of brave men

(6) B. condemns Napoleon and Caesar But Napoleon and Caesar are great men; therefore he condemns great men

57. Express in syllogistic form and examine the following arguments, naming the fallacies which you may detect —

(1) Idiots cannot be men, for man is a rational being

(2) Everybody is benefited by a University training, therefore it would be a good thing if everybody had a University training

(3) Trespassers will be prosecuted But if there are none, none will be prosecuted Therefore somebody will trespass

(4) Apart from experience due to the state of the internal organs of the body, emotion can have no existence. Therefore emotional consciousness is wholly constituted by these experiences

58 Reduce to syllogistic form (giving mood and figure) and examine the validity of the following arguments —

(*a*) Everyone must be either a socialist or a free-trader, but there are no free-traders who are pessimistic, hence it follows that only socialists are pessimistic.

(*b*) Few soldiers can be considered heroes, for anyone who is incapable of fear must be accounted a hero, and but few soldiers can be said to be incapable of fear

(*c*) Englishmen admire all who are successful; they must, therefore, admire some persons who are politically dangerous, for assuredly there are some successful persons who are politically dangerous.

59. Examine the following, explaining what the character of the argument is, stating it in logical form, and describing it by its logical name, whether fallacious or not —

(*a*) It is difficult to understand why a statesman should lay himself open to the charge of little-mindedness by harping upon his consistency, which it is well known is the failing of little minds

(*b*) I am accused of inciting to sedition by the address which I delivered to the meeting But there is not one man present at the meeting who, if my remarks had been addressed to him privately, would have been moved to disloyalty.

(*c*) "To prove continuity and the progressive development of the intellectual faculties from animal to man is not the same as proving that these qualities have been developed by natural selection. Because man's physical structure has developed from an animal form by natural selection, it does not necessarily follow that his mental nature, though developed *pari passu* with it, has been developed by the same cause only"

60. Test the following arguments and name any fallacies they may contain.—

(i) Ill-managed business is unprofitable Railways are never ill-managed Therefore all railways are profitable

(ii) A vacuum is impossible, for if there is nothing between bodies they must touch

(iii) The governor of a country ought not to be blamed for using his influence to further his religious views, for every man has a right to inculcate his own opinions

61 Set out the course of the following, bringing out the character of the argument and counter-argument, and stating it as far as possible in logical form —

"Schoolmasters speak of the disciplinary value of the classics (as giving them a superiority over the mother tongue) They are apt to forget that our teaching of Latin comes from a time when Latin was used as a real substitute for the mother tongue—when it was a living language There is no need in any way to belittle the utilitarian or disciplinary advantages of teaching foreign languages, ancient and modern They have at any rate one fundamental use in enabling children to distinguish between words and ideas, since the same idea is translated in different languages by different words But to a large number of our children they must remain inaccessible, and in any case the teaching of a foreign language can as little replace the teaching of the mother tongue as a finger can replace the use of the hand"—(Hartog, *The Writing of English*)

62. Examine the following arguments · express them where possible in syllogistic form : supply any premises or conclusions which are implied but not expressed give the figure and mood of valid syllogisms, and, if fallacy occurs, determine its nature.

(*a*) "With regard to the high aristocratic spirit of Virginia and the southern colonies, it has been proposed, I know, to reduce it by declaring a general enfranchisement of their slaves.

This project has had its advocates and panegyrists, yet I never could argue myself into any opinion of it. Slaves are often much attached to their masters A general wild offer of liberty would not always be accepted. History furnishes few instances of it. It is sometimes as hard to persuade slaves to be free as it is to compel freemen to be slaves, and in this auspicious scheme we should have both these pleasing tasks on our hands at once. But when we talk of enfranchisement, do we not perceive that the American master may enfranchise too, and arm servile hands in defence of freedom? A measure to which other people have had recourse more than once, and not without success, in a desperate situation of their affairs."—(Burke, *On Conciliation with the American Colonies*)

(*b*) "The danger of touching the press is the difficulty of marking its limits My learned friend, who has just gone out of Court, has drawn no line and unfolded no principle He has not told us, if *this* book is condemned, *what* book may be written If I may not write against the existence of a monarchy, and recommend a republic, may I write against any part of the Government? May I say that we should be better without a House of Lords, or a House of Commons, or a Court of Chancery, or any other given part of our establishment? Or if, as has been hinted, a work may be libellous for stating even *legal* matter with *sarcastic* phrase, the difficulty becomes the greater, and the liberty of the press more impossible to define"—(Lord Erskine, *Speech on behalf of Thomas Paine*)

(*c*) "France has a representative government, and as the unjust privileges of the clergy and nobility are abolished; as she is blessed with a most wise, clear, and simple code of laws; as she is almost free from debt, and emancipated from odious prejudices, she is likely to prove an example and a light to the world"—(Daniel O'Connell, *Speech at a Meeting to recover Catholic Rights*)

(*d*) "Those are our present prospects of success First, man is elevated from slavery almost everywhere, and human nature has become more dignified, and, I may say, more valuable. Secondly, England wants our cordial support, and knows that she has only to secede to us justice in order to obtain our affectionate assistance. Thirdly, this is the season of successful petition, and the very fashion of the times entitles our petition to succeed. Fourthly, the Catholic cause is disencumbered of hollow friends, and interested speculators Add to all these the native and inherent strength of the principles of religious freedom and the inert and accumulating weight of our wealth, our religion, and our numbers, and where is the sluggard that shall dare to doubt our approaching success?"—(O'Connell, *ibid*)

63. Make a logical analysis of the following —

"The catastrophe in Ireland fitted in with the governing moods of the hour, and we know only too well how simple and summary are the syllogisms of a rooted distrust Ireland was papist, and this was a papist rising The queen was a papist, surrounded at Somerset House by the same black brood as those priests of Baal who on the other side of St. George's Channel were described as standing by while their barbarous flock slew old men and women wholesale and in cold blood, dashed out the brains of infants against the walls in sight of their wretched parents, ran their skeans like Red Indians into the flesh of little children, and flung helpless Protestants by scores at a time over the bridge at Portadown Such was the reasoning, and the damning conclusion was clear This was the queen's rebellion, and the king must be her accomplice. Sir Phelim O'Neil, the first leader of the Ulster rebellion, declared that he held a commission from the king himself, and the story took quick root. It is now manifest that Charles was at least as much dismayed as any of his subjects, yet for the rest of his life he could never wipe out the fatal theory of his guilt.'—(John Morley, *Oliver Cromwell*, p 108)

CHAPTERS XXI -XXXIII

64 Criticise the statement that science progresses through analysis to synthesis

65 On what grounds would you describe mathematics as mainly a synthetic science, and chemistry as mainly an analytic science ?

66 Compare mathematical and historical inference

67 Indicate concisely what you take to be the essential nature of inference

68 Discuss the place and function of the empirical element in geometry

69 Discuss the conception of system in relation to (*a*) a particular science, (*b*) knowledge as a whole

70 Examine logically the following arguments —

- (*a*) "If it be said that there is an evil in change as change, I answer that there is also an evil in discontent as discontent "
- (*b*) "I speak not from mere theory. There exist at this moment practical illustrations of my assertions "
- (*c*) An adverse decision, my lords, will seriously prejudice the political prospects of my client. I beg you, therefore, to weigh well a decision which, if unfavourable, will spell disaster for an honourable man
- (*d*) Who can deny that this measure will ameliorate the lot of our fellow-citizens when we reflect that it will raise the standard of comfort in every home ?
- (*e*) "He has spoken of that noble person and of his intellect in terms which, were I disposed to retort, I might say show

the hon gentleman to be possessed of an intellect which would justify me in passing over in silence anything that comes from such a man "—(Charles James Fox)

(*f*) No man can witness the daily misery and oppression of the poor in our land without being stirred to redress their wrongs I need say no more That will be sufficient for all enlightened men to support this reform which has no other aim than to relieve their distress

71 Inquire into the possibility of regarding the principle of the Uniformity of Nature as an induction from experience

" If we ask what is involved in the conception of a cause *not* acting uniformly, we shall see that it is the same as denying the existence of causal connections altogether " Discuss this

72 What do you take to be the ultimate principle upon which inductive reasoning is based ? What kind of justification would you offer for the principle in question ?

Comment on the following —" The contrary of every matter of fact is still possible, because it can never imply a contradiction That the sun will not rise to-morrow is no less intelligible a proposition, and implies no more contradiction, than the affirmation, that it will rise "

73 What different meanings do the logician and the psychologist respectively attach to the question, " What is causal connection ? "

74 Is it necessary that a *cause*, as Science understands the term, should be (*a*) antecedent to its effect, (*b*) immediately antecedent ? Discuss the view that one and the same effect may proceed from a number of alternative causes

75 What different kinds of conditions have to be considered when we speak of the cause of an event as the sum total of the conditions upon which the occurrence of the event depends ?

76 Can you account for the divergence between the scientific and popular views as to the Cause ?

77 " The Uniformity of Nature is the ultimate Major Premise in all Induction "—(Mill) Explain and discuss this statement

78 To what extent do (*a*) unintentional inference and (*b*) selective interest enter into the process of scientific observation ?

What precautions must be taken in observation and experiment to avoid error ?

79 " Experiment is always preferable to observation " Why is this ? Explain also from the example of any sciences how observation and experiment supplement each other

80 What is the logical character of the appeal to " the testimony of the senses " ? Does this testimony really bear witness to the motion of the sun relatively to the earth ?

81. What is the nature of the grounds on which it is held that—

(*a*) George Washington never told a lie

(*b*) Nelson was killed at the Battle of Trafalgar.

(*c*) The angles of a triangle are equal to two right angles
(*d*) The planets move in elliptic orbits

Arrange in order of certainty, giving reasons

82 Discuss the place and importance of testimony in (*a*) history, (*b*) physical science

83 If five witnesses swore to a prisoner's presence near the scene of crime, and only one swore to an *alibi*, would that be sufficient to prove the falsity of the latter assertion ?

84 What are the general tests of the trustworthiness of testimony ?

85 Discuss the statement that for the purposes of history a man writing thirty years after an event is not necessarily in any better position than a man writing three hundred years later—indeed is often less able to trace the course of events with accuracy

86 "It doesn't matter who wrote the book, nor when it was written. read it for its elements of permanent value" How far can the historian accept this attitude ?

87 Examine critically the following argument —

"What a barrister calls his 'case,' his theory or explanation, is a single and organic thing It is a story If the tale is true, it is coherent If the tale is false then some other tale is true, one we do not know, one perhaps very different, one possibly that we cannot even imagine But the clinching point is this Until we know that other tale which is true, we cannot tell *how much* of the first tale is false That *any* of it is false is a reason for digging deeper

"But *all* of it may be false Whatever it was that tainted the admittedly tainted evidence may also taint the apparently untouched evidence We cannot tell till we know what the taint was Until we know why Jones, Brown, and Robinson lied we cannot be sure that Smith is telling the truth"—(G K Chesterton, in *Daily News* April 12, 1911)

88 A Hypothesis is sometimes defined as "a generalisation adopted on avowedly insufficient grounds" Comment on this definition, and inquire whether any other meaning can be attached to the term Hypothesis

Why have Hypotheses (as above defined) any utility ?

89 What is the logical force of the following ?

(*a*) "During the reigns of the kings of Spain of the Austrian family, whenever they were at a loss in the Spanish councils, it was common for their statesmen to say that they ought to consult the genius of Philip the Second The genius of Philip the Second might mislead them, and the issue of their affairs showed that they had not chosen the most perfect standard But, Sir, I am sure that I shall not be misled, when in a case of constitutional difficulty I consult the genius of the English constitution." —(Burke, *On Conciliation with the American Colonies*)

(*b*) England has a democratic franchise, therefore India should have a democratic franchise too

(c) "I have somewhere read, I think in Sir Walter Raleigh's *History of the World*, of a most bloody and fatal battle which was fought by two opposite armies, in which almost all the combatants on both sides were killed, 'because,' says the historian, 'though they had offensive weapons on both sides, they had none for defence.' So, in this war of words, if we are to use the only offensive weapons, if we are to indulge only in invective and abuse, the contest must be eternal"—(Charles James Fox, *On the French Overtures for Peace* Feb 3rd, 1800)

(d) All the great empires that have ever existed have lost their position of eminence, hence no great empire in the future will maintain its supremacy

90 Describe the main preliminary processes or assumptions that have to be made before practically applying such methods of Induction as have been formulated by Mill

91 Bring out the importance of the negative instance in the experimental methods, and point out under what circumstances it ceases to be available

92 Illustrate the maxim In experiment one circumstance only should be varied at a time Explain the reason of this maxim, and point out the practical difficulties in carrying it out

93 How does inductive enquiry deal with the difficulties due (a) to counteracting influences, (b) to exceptional phenomena ?

What does Science understand by an "exception to a law of nature" ?

94. "A perfect experiment establishes a law" On what grounds is this certainty of inference from experiment rested ? Point out the difficulties in the way of securing data of the kind required

95 What special kinds of reasoning are involved in the establishment of quantitative uniformities ? (such as the formula which connects the volume with the temperature of a body, or that of gravitation according to the inverse square of the distance.)

96. What do you consider to be the main function of the Method of Residues ?

97 Examine the relation between the 'direct' and 'indirect' methods of inductive enquiry.

98 Why are social phenomena so difficult to treat scientifically ? What methods may be employed in treating them ?

99 "In worms the sense of smell apparently is confined to the perception of certain odours, and is feeble They were quite indifferent to my breath, as long as I breathed on them very gently This was tried, because it appeared possible that they might thus be warned of the approach of an enemy They exhibited the same indifference to my breath whilst I chewed some tobacco, and while a pellet of cotton-wool with a few drops of millefleurs perfume or of acetic acid was kept in my mouth Pellets of cotton-wool soaked in tobacco juice, in mille-

fleurs perfume, and in paraffin, were held with pincers and were waved about within two or three inches of several worms, but they took no notice. On one or two occasions, however, when acetic acid had been placed on pellets, the worms appeared a little uneasy, and this was probably due to the irritation of their skins The perception of such unnatural odours would be of no service to worms; and as such timid creatures would almost certainly exhibit some signs of any new impression, we may conclude that they did not perceive these odours"—(Darwin, *Earthworms*)

Analyse the above passage so as to bring out the inductive character of the process by which the conclusion is reached.

100. "Wealth is greatly increased by the change from production on the small to production on a large scale, by the introduction of machinery and the division of labour This holds equally if we compare a railway with a stage-coach, or a coach with a pack horse, a cotton mill with a spinning-wheel, or a spinning-wheel with a distaff and spindle Under every form, at every stage, and in every period, wealth has been increased by improved and extended co-operation between human beings This complex co-operation of many-sided individual effort, then, appears as the main-spring of industrial progress Where it is not we have stagnation—primitive barbarism, where it is found, in whatever form or degree, there by one means and another industry is improved, and the material side of life made perfect"

Analyse the above example of inductive reasoning, point out what inductive method is employed, and consider whether the conclusion is or is not completely established

101. Analyse logically the following passages, indicating the methods of reasoning employed, and estimating the logical validity of the conclusions drawn —

(*a*) "The general rule among vertebrates, as regards colour, is for the two sexes to be alike This prevails with only a few exceptions, in fishes, reptiles, and mammalia, but in birds diversity of sexual colouring is exceedingly frequent, and is not improbably present in a greater or less degree in more than half of the known species The most fundamental characteristic of birds from our present point of view is a greater intensity of colour in the male. This is the case in hawks and falcons, in many thrushes, warblers, and finches; in pigeons, partridges, rails, plovers, and many others. . . It is in tropical regions, where from a variety of causes colour has been developed to its fullest extent, that we find the most remarkable examples of sexual divergence of colour The most gorgeously coloured birds known are the birds of paradise, the chatterers, the tanagers, the humming birds, and the pheasant-tribe, including the peacocks In all these the females are much less brilliant, and, in the great majority of cases, exceptionally plain and dull coloured birds ... The reason of this phenomenon [the dull colours of female birds] is not difficult to find, if we consider the essential conditions of a bird's existence, and the most important function it has to fulfil. In order that the species may be continued, young birds must be produced, and the female birds have to sit assiduously on their eggs. While doing this they are exposed to observation and attack by the numerous devourers of eggs and birds, and it is of vital importance that they should be protectively coloured in all those parts of the body which are exposed during incubation To secure this end all the bright colours and showy ornaments which decorate the male have not been acquired by the female, who often remains clothed in the sober hues which were probably once common to the whole order to which she belongs . . . This principle is strikingly illustrated by the existence of considerable numbers of birds in which both sexes are similarly and brilliantly coloured—in some cases as brilliantly as the males of many of the groups above referred to . When searching for some cause for this singular apparent exception to the rule of female protective colouring, I came upon a fact which beautifully explains it , for in all these cases, without exception, the species either nests in holes in the ground or in trees, or builds a domed or covered nest, so as completely to conceal the sitting-bird. . . It has been objected that the domed nests of many birds are as conspicuous as the birds themselves would be, and would, therefore, be of no use as a protection to the birds and young But, as a matter of fact, they do protect from attack, for hawks or crows do not pluck such nests to pieces, as in doing so they would be exposed to the attack of the whole colony . Such birds as jays, crows, magpies, hawks, and other birds of prey, have also been urged as an exception; but these are all aggressive birds, able to protect themselves, and thus do not need any special protection for their females during nidification "—(Wallace, *Darwinism*, pp 275-81.)

(*b*) "Lavoisier, reasoning with himself on the cause of the increase of weight in metals after calcination, argued as follows · 'if the increase in the weight of metals calcined in closed vessels is due, as Boyle had thought, to the addition of the matter of the flame and the fire which penetrate the pores of the glass and combine with the metals, then it follows that on introducing a known weight of metal into a glass vessel and sealing this hermetically, determining the weight exactly and then proceeding to calcination by a charcoal fire—just as Boyle had done—and then finally after calcination, before opening it, again weighing the same vessel, this weight must be found augmented by that of the whole quantity of fire matter which had been introduced during calcination. But if, said I to myself, the increase in the weight of the metal calx is not due to the addition of fire matter nor of any other extraneous matter, but to a fixation of a portion of the air contained in the vessel, the whole vessel after calcination must be no heavier than before and must merely be partially void of air, and the increase in the weight of the vessel will not occur until after the air required has entered.' " Two experiments were made with tin. In the first a small retort was used: in the second a large retort. The same quantity of tin—8 oz.—was used in each case. In both retorts a residue of tin remained after heating. The change of weight in the retort and its contents due to heating alone was (1) 27 grains, (2) 1 grain. The increase in weight of the tin on calcination was (1) 3·12 grains, (2) 10 grains. The weight of air which took the place of that absorbed in calcination came out at (1) 3·13 grains, (2) 10·06 grains. Lavoisier concluded that (1) 'in a given volume of air only a fixed quantity of tin can be calcined.' (2) This quantity is greater in a large retort than in a small one. (3) The hermetically sealed retorts, weighed before and after *the calcination of the tin contained in them, showed no* difference of weight, which evidently proves that the increase in weight of the metal arises neither from the fire matter nor from any other matter extraneous to the vessel.—(Freund, *op. cit.*, pp. 47-9.)

(c) Bentley rejected the *Epistles of Phalaris* as forgeries. He proved that "if the Epistles so belauded were true, Phalaris had borrowed money from men who lived 300 years after his death, had destroyed towns that were not founded, and conquered nations that had no names; that he had overturned the chronology of Thucydides and Herodotus and proved their histories mere fables; that he had transposed the events of his own day with those that happened long after he was dead; and finally that he had written in an Attic dialect which no man used during his lifetime, and which bore no resemblance to that which he, a Dorian, could have used."—(Craik, *Life of Jonathan Swift*, Vol. I., p. 88.)

(d) "Wages are necessarily determined by the minimum that is absolutely necessary for the support of the labourer and his family. . . . If we take this theory literally as meaning that the workman's wages can never rise above what he absolutely requires to live on, it is much too pessimistic and is manifestly contrary to facts. The purely material wants of life, are on the whole, of relatively little consequence. Irish and French peasants find it possible to live on next to nothing. If, then, the indispensable minimum for the bare support of life constituted an 'iron law of wages,' innumerable commonplace facts would be inexplicable. Why is the rate of wages not the same in all trades? Must an engraver or a skilled mechanic consume more food-stuffs, more nitrogen and carbon, than a stonebreaker or a street-cleaner? Why, moreover, are wages higher in the United States than in France, Germany, or England? Is there any physiological reason why an American should eat more than an Englishman—despite the fact both of them belong to the same race? Why are wages higher to-day than a century ago—a fact which is beyond all question? Have we greater appetites than our forefathers? Again, why are the wages of farm labourers lower in winter, when they are obliged to spend more for heating and clothing, than in summer, when food is so cheap and life in the country is so easy that Victor Hugo calls this the 'poor man's season'?"—(Gide, *Principles of Political Economy*, Eng Trans, pp. 502-3.)

(*e*) All acids contain oxygen. On this assumption the combination of ammonia, which does not contain oxygen, with hydrochloric acid would give as one of its products water which does contain oxygen Hence the oxygen would have been present previously in the hydrochloric acid But when the experiment of combining the two substances was made in 1812 it was found that no more than a slight dew was formed which was sufficiently accounted for by unavoidable imperfections in carrying out the experiment Therefore hydrochloric acid does not contain oxygen, and the initial assumption is disproved —(Cf Whewell, *History of the Inductive Sciences*, Vol III, p 124)

(*f*) Faraday invented an instrument to measure the amount of electrolytical action when substances are decomposed by means of electricity "In this instrument, the amount of action was measured by the quantity of water decomposed and it was necessary in order to give validity to the mensuration, to show (as Faraday did show) that neither the size of the electrodes, nor the intensity of the current, nor the strength of the acid solution which acted on the plates of the pile, distubed the accuracy of this measure. He proved, by experiments on a great variety of substances, of the most different kinds, that the electro-chemical action is definite in amount according to the measurement of the new instrument."—Whewell, *op cit*, Vol *III*, pp. 144-5.)

(*g*) It was at one time "a current opinion in science that the the smallest bubble of oxygen or of air which might come in contact with a preserve would be sufficient to start its decomposition." To this it was objected. "'How can the germs of microscopic organisms be so numerous that even the smallest bubble of air contains germs capable of developing themselves in every organic infusion? If such were the case the air would be encumbered with organic germs.' M. Pouchet said and wrote that they would form a thick fog, as dense as iron." Was the assumption true? Pasteur prepared a series of bulbs half-filled in each case with a liquid which would very readily show the appearance of microscopic organisms. The liquid was boiled, the air expelled, the bulbs sealed. When the sealed end of a bulb was broken off, air was immediately admitted, and the bulb could then be sealed up again. Under these circumstances a change in the liquid could be readily observed. Pasteur showed that in every place where the experiment was carried out a certain number of bulbs would escape alteration. If, however, a room were dusted or swept the liquid in all the bulbs to which the air was then admitted became altered owing to the great quantity of germs raised and remaining suspended in the air. In towns most of the bulbs showed alteration. Of twenty opened in the country far from all habitations and then sealed again, eight contained organised productions; of twenty opened on the heights of the Jura, five only were altered; of twenty opened at a much greater altitude in the vicinity of a glacier from which a strong wind was blowing, one alone was altered. Pasteur's conclusions were as follows: "More thickly spread in towns than in the country, the germs become fewer in proportion as they recede from human habitations. Mountains have fewer than plains, and at a certain height they are very rare."—(From *Louis Pasteur*, by his Son-in-Law, Eng. Trans., pp. 105-7.)

(*h*) "When those who were in the secret had decided on the time and place of the poisoning, Sejanus, with the most consummate daring, reversed his plan, and, whispering an accusation against Drusus of intending to poison his father, warned Tiberius to avoid the first draught offered him as he was dining at his son's house. Thus deceived, the old emperor, on sitting down to the banquet, took the cup and handed it to Drusus. His suspicions were increased when Drusus, in perfect unconsciousness, drank it off with youthful eagerness, apparently, out of fear and shame, bringing on himself the death which he had plotted against his father.—These popular rumours, over and above the fact that they are not vouched for by any good writer, may be instantly refuted. For who, with moderate prudence, far less Tiberius with his great experience, would have thrust destruction on a son, without even hearing him, with his own hand too, and with an impossibility of returning to better thoughts. Surely he would rather have had the slave who handed the poison, tortured, have sought to discover the traitor, in short would have been as hesitating and tardy in the case of an only son hitherto unconvicted of any crime, as he was naturally even with strangers. But as Sejanus had the credit of contriving every sort of wickedness, the fact that he was the emperor's special favourite, and that both were hated by the rest of the world, procured belief for any

> monstrous fiction, and rumour too always has a dreadful side in regard to the deaths of men in power. Besides the whole process of the crime was betrayed by Apicata, Sejanus's wife, and fully divulged, under torture, by Eudemus and Lygdus. No writer has been found sufficiently malignant to fix the guilt on Tiberius, though every circumstance was scrutinised and exaggerated "—(Tacitus, *Annales*, Bk. IV., 10, 11 Trans. by Church and Brodribb, p. 118)

102 What methods would you employ in the investigation of one of the following problems ?

(*a*) Whether the standard of intelligence in members of small families is higher than the standard of intelligence in members of large families

(*b*) What is the effect of curtailing the number of hours of sleep, upon the quality and quantity of a person's work

103 How would you inductively investigate the results of (1) a literary, (2) a vocational training, (3) a union of both ?

104 If a logician holds that no result of induction is absolutely certain, can he consistently still distinguish between inductive and probable reasoning ?

105 " Calculations of probability in general do not express what will actually occur in the future, but only the degree of subjective confidence which we repose in their occurrence " Discuss this

106 What are the respective probabilities, when two dice are thrown together, (*a*) that *both* will turn up *six*, (*b*) that *neither* will turn up *six* ?

107 Suppose that two witnesses, the probability of whose accuracy is $\frac{3}{4}$ and $\frac{7}{8}$ respectively, agree in affirming the occurrence of an event which, in itself, is as likely to have happened as not to have happened —*i e* whose antecedent probability is $\frac{1}{2}$—what is the probability that the event really did happen ?

108. Discuss the connection between the scientific explanation of a phenomenon and the assignment of its cause

109 " The object of science is explanation "

" Science never explains, she only reduces complex events to simple ones of the same kind, as when she deals with certain phenomena of magnetism by supposing every ultimate atom of the substance to act as if it were a magnet " Carefully consider these statements

110 Bring out the logical peculiarities of mathematical reasoning, and enquire whether it is radically distinct from other forms of scientific reasoning

111. Explain the differences between the scientific observation of Qualitative facts, and the scientific observation of Quantitative facts

112. Indicate carefully the meaning of the term ' law ' as employed in natural science Distinguish between empirical laws, laws of nature, and ultimate laws.

" A truly universal law is not demonstrable truth " Discuss this

INDEX.

'A DICTO s. q.,' 60-3
Absolute terms, 34
Abstract terms, 30-2
'Accentus,' 107-8
'Accidens,' predicable, 38 39, 40
— fallacy, 141-2
Accuracy in testimony, 315-8
'Aequivocatio,' 55-9
Affinity in classification, 80-2
Affirmative propositions, 95
Agreement, method of, 352-9
'All,' ambiguity of, 23-4, 64
Allbutt on use of scientific instruments, 297
Alphabetical classification, 78
American Confederation, causes of decline, 378
'Amphibolia,' 106-7
Analogous terms, 344-5
Analogy and hypotheses, 336, 338-44
— and proof, 347
— and comprehensiveness of properties, 340
— fallacies in 344-7
— force of, 340-4
— importance of resemblances in, 340, 341-2
— Mill on, 341-2
— nature of, 338
— negative, 342
— positive, 342
— relation to enumerative induction, 338-9
Analysis, conceptual, 69
— distinguished from physical partition, 230
— in mathematics, 233, 244
— logical and chemical distinguished, 230
Analysis, method of, 229-31
— relation to induction, 237
— — — synthesis, 229-31
— scientific, and divisions for purposes of study, 229
Analytic chains of reasoning, 208, 213-14
Analytical keys, 75, 79
Anonymous testimony, 320
'A priori,' 282
Argon, 392-400
Argumentum à fortiori, 221-2
— ad baculum, 266
— — hominem, 266
— — ignorantiam, 267
— — populum, 266
— — verecundiam, 267
Aristotelian sorites, 209-12
Aristotle, doctrine of categories, 36-7
— — — induction, 274
— — — predicables, 37-9
— on 'non sequitur,' 267-8
Artificial classification, 78
Asquith, H. H., on the House of Lords, 269
'Aurora Borealis,' periodical variation of, 369
Averages, constancy of, 450-2
Axioms, character of, 13-14, 256, 258
— of categorical syllogism, 150
— undue assumption of, 258

BACON on bias in observation, 306
— — reason and words, 55
— — simple enumeration, 273
'Barbara,' 168-9, 171, 175, 176

'Baroco,' 170
Basis of division, 66-7
— — syllogistic reasoning, 150
Berthelot, experiment on argon, 399
Bias in observation, 295-6, 305-6
Biology, method in, 374
Blind experiment, 301
'Bocardo,' 170, 176
Boccaccio, fallacy of roasted stork, 61-2
— — on observation and experiment, 297-8
— — relation between categorical, hypothetical and disjunctive propositions, 91-2, 93
Bradley on relation between categorical, hypothetical, and disjunctive propositions, 91-2, 93
'Bramantip,' 170-1
Brewster on theory of light, 410
Broad, C. D., on postulate of limited variety, 287-9
Brown on hypotheses, 327
Buckle on constancy of suicide-rate, 451
Burke on false analogy between community and individual, 346-7

CANONS of mixed disjunctive syllogism, 195
— of mixed hypothetical syllogism, 188
— of pure syllogism, categorical, 151-60
— — — disjunctive, 161
— — — hypothetical, 160-1
Cantor, mathematician, 244
Categorical propositions, 90-5
— syllogism, 148-9, 151-60, 162-174
Categories, 36-7
Causation, 278, 283-7
— and time sequence, 286-7
Causation, nature of, 283-7
— popular view of, 284-7
— scientific view of, 286-7
Causes, plurality of, 285, 351, 355, 357
'Celarent,' 170
'Cesare,' 176
Chains of reasoning, 207-14
'Chlorophyll,' 353
'Circulus in definiendo,' 50-2
Circumstantial evidence, 379-80
Class-inclusion view of propositions, 97-101
Class names, 21
Classification, advantages of, 85
— affinity in, 80-2
— alphabetic, 78
— and evolution, 82-5
— — explanation, 442-3
— — formal division, 75
— — language, 76
— — the predicables, 39
— artificial, 78-80
— bases of, 81-2
— diagnostic, 79
— general, 77, 80-5
— imperfection of, 85-6
— natural, 79
— nature of, 75-7, 82-3
— scientific, 80-5
— special, 77, 78-80
— subsumptive, 84
Clerke on auroral frequency and solar and magnetic activity, 369-70
— on motion of Uranus, 372
Clifford on error in observation, 417
— on limits of accurate measurement, 417
— on proof of hypothesis, 348
— on scientific thought, 323
Co-division, 66
Co-existence and method of agreement, 355-6
Collective names, 22-4
Comenius, use of term 'nature,' 57-8

'Compositio,' fallacy, 63-4
Conclusion of syllogism, 145
Concomitant variations, method of, 364-70, 384, 390
Concrete terms, 30-2
Conditional propositions, 92, 122, 138
Connotation, 24-5
— difficulties of assigning, 26-7
— limits of, 26-7
— of proper names, 24, 25
— relation to denotation, 27-30
'Consequens,' 142-3
Contradiction of propositions, 15-17, 115-17
— of terms, 15-17, 32-3
— principles of, 14-15, 114, 115-17
Contraposition of propositions, 134-6, 139
— fallacies in, 143
Contrapositive, 134
Contrariety of propositions, 117-19
— of terms, 15-17, 32-3
Converse, 129
'Conversio per accidens,' 130, 131
Conversion of propositions, 129-34, 138, 139
— fallacies in, 130-1, 133, 141-3
Convertend, 129
Copula, 18, 100
Corollaries from rules of pure syllogism, 159-60
Correlative terms, 34
Counteracting causes, 364, 460
Creighton on Darwin's power to infer, 232
— — unit in statistics, 450
'*Crocodilus*,' 203-4
Crookes' experiments on argon, 397
Crucial instances, 334-5
'Cum hoc, ergo propter hoc,' 459

DARWIN, his theory of descent and definition, 44
— observation of orchids, 306-7
Darwin, observations on formation of vegetable mould, 381-5
— — ebbing wells, 366
— — fungus on beech-tree, 354
— — geneological classification, 82, 84, 85
Davis on character of proof, 261
— — paronymns, 60
— — 'petitio principii' in Aristotle, 261
— — question-begging epithets, 259
Davy, experiments on electrolysis of water, 361-2
Deduction relation to induction, 238-40, 275-7
Deductive reasoning, 223
— — universal element in, 215-16
Definition, analytic, 43
— biverbal, 48
— circle in, 51
— descriptive, 42
— extensive, 48
— fallacies of 53-65
— formation of, 45-7
— functions of, 42
— genetic, 44
— 'ignotum per aeque ignotum, 50
— kinds of, 47-8
— limits of, 44
— nature of, 42
— negative, 52
— nominal, 47
— ostensive, 48
— 'per genus et differentiam, 44, 45
— principles of, 48-52
— provisional nature of, 45
— too narrow, 49
— — wide, 49, 50
De Morgan, example of ambiguous middle, 153
— on ambiguity of 'all' 64
— — — — terms, 56, 58
— — ambiguous sentences, 107

De Morgan, errors in measurement, 416-19
— — fallacies 'a dicto s q,' 60 1, 62-3, 64
— — 'ignoratio elenchi,' 263, 264, 265, 266
— — meaning of fallacy, 53
— — method of induction, 276
— — squaring the circle, 258
— — sympathetic powder, 308
— — utility of balance, 414-15
— — validity of syllogism, 219-20
Denotation, 24, 27
Description, 42
Diagnostic classification, 79
Diagrams, Euler's, 97-9
— illustration of conversion, 131, 132, 133
— nature and use of, 97
— representation of propositions by, 97-9
— — — syllogisms by, 171-5
Dichotomy, division by, 72-5
'Dictum de omni et nullo,' 150
Difference, method of, 359-64, 385, 391
'Differentia,' 38, 44-5
Dilemmas, definition of, 197
— forms of, 197-201
— rebutting, 202-4
'Dimaris,' 177
Direct method of induction, 275-6 349-72
— — — reduction, 181-3
Discourse, universe of, 27
Discovery, method of, 229 30
Disjunctive propositions, 90, 91, 93, 94, 95, 103
— syllogism (mixed), 148-9, 193-5
— — (pure), 148-9, 161, 177
Distribution of terms, 99-100
'Divisio,' fallacy, 63, 64-5
— non faciat saltum, 67
Division and classification, 75
— basis of, 66-7
— bifid, 72-5
— character of, 66-7
Division, dichotomous, 72-5
— distinguished from partition and analysis, 69
— factual element in, 67-8
— fallacies in, 88
— operations resembling, 69
— principles of, 69-72
— relation to definition, 67-8
— too narrow, 70-1, 72
— — wide, 70, 71-3
— utility of, 66-7

EDUCTIONS, contraposition, 134-6, 139
— conversion, 129-34, 139
— definition of, 112, 124
— fallacies in, 141-3
— inversion, 136-8, 139
— kinds of, 124-6
— obversion, 126-9, 139
— of categorical propositions, 124-38
— hypothetical propositions, 138
- table of chief, 138
Effect, see 'Causation' and 'Causes'
Einstein and gravitation, 329
— — Newton, 330
Empirical generalisations, 448 52
— — fallacies of, 458-60
— subsumption under wider theory, 456
'End,' ambiguity of, 55
Enthymemes, definition of, 205
— orders of, 205-6
Enumerative induction, 337-8
— — relation to analogy, 338-9
— — — — generalisation, 445, 447
Epicheiremas, definition of, 213
— kinds of, 213
Episyllogism, 207
Episyllogistic chains of reasoning, 207-8, 209-13
Equiprobability, assumptions about, 424

Established truths, 452-5
— fallacies, 460-1
Euler, diagrammatic representation of propositions, 97-9
Evidence, circumstantial, 379-80
— negative, 306-7
Evolution and classification, 82-5
Excluded middle, principle of, 15-17
Experience and uniformity of nature, 281-3
Experiment, aim of, 301-3
— blind, 301
— method of, 359
— natural, 298-9
— nature of, 300
— negative, 301-3
— observation by, 297-301
— positive and negative, 394-6
— symbolic statement of problem, 301
'Experimentum crucis,' 334
Explanation and classification, 442-3
— — generalisation, 444-55
— — hypothesis, 322
— — induction, 443
— — knowledge, 2-5
— — statistics, 450-2
— — systematisation, 455-8
— fallacies of, 458-62
— in mathematics, 452-4
— limits of, 457-8
— nature of historical, 252-5, 441-4
popular, 441-2, 444
— scientific, 457-8
Exposition, method of, 231
Extension, 24
Extremes of syllogism, 146

FALLACIES, 'accentus,' 107-8
— 'a dicto s q,' 60-3
— 'Aequivocatio,' 55-9
— 'Amphibolia,' 106-7
— 'Compositio,' 63-4
Fallacies, concept embracing incompatible attributes, 54-5
— 'Divisio,' 63, 64-5
— false analogy, 344-7
— — opposition, 140
— 'Figura dictionis,' 59-60
— four terms, 153-4, 223-4
— Ignoratio elenchi, 262-7
— illicit contraposition, 143
— — conversion, 129-32, 141-3
— — inversion, 143
— — major, 155-6
— — minor, 155
— in disjunctive propositions, 109
— — division, 88
— — hypothetical propositions, 108
— — immediate inference, 140-3
— — judgment, 105-7
— — method, 256-69
— nature of, 53
— 'non propter hoc' or 'non sequitur,' 267-9
— of definition, 53-65
— — explanation, 458-62
— — generalisation, 458-62
— — observation, 303-11
— 'Petitio principii,' 256-62
— 'Plures interrogationes,' 140-1
— undistributed middle, 154-5
— in Dilemmas, 202-3
Faraday, experiments on electrical conduction, 334
— — — source of power in voltaic pile, 390-2
'Festino,' 173-5
'Figura dictionis,' 59-60
Figure, definition of, 162
— distinctions of, 162-3
— in pure disjunctive syllogism, 177-8
— — — hypothetical syllogism, 175-7
— special rules of, 163-4
First Figure, special rules of, 163
Formal Logic, 5-8
Foucault, experiment on velocity of light, 335, 410

Four-fold scheme of propositions, 90, 95-102
Fourth Figure, special rules of, 164
Fowler, on fallacies of observation, 305-6
— — undue respect for authority, 459
Frege, mathematician, 244
Fresnel, experiments on light, 407-8, 410
'Fundamentum divisionis,' 66
'— relationis,' 34
Fungus on beech-tree, 354

GALILEO, crucial experiment, 334
Geikie, example of method in geology, 374, 375-7
General classification, 77, 80-5
— propositions, 103-4
— terms, 19, 21-4
Generalisation, 444-55
— and explanation, 444, 448
— bases of, 271-2
— empirical, 448-52
— error in, 447-8, 453
— fallacies of, 458-62
— in mathematics, 453-5
— nature of, 444-5, 456
— of fact, 442
— — law, 442
Generic judgment, 91
Genetic definition, 44
'Genus,' 38
Geology, method in, 375-77
Geometry, nature of, 243, 244
Glacial action, transport of 'erratics,' 375-7
Goclenian sorites, 209, 210-11, 212-13
'Government,' ambiguity of, 57
Grammar, relation to logic, 11-12
Graphical representation of variations, 367
Gravitation, establishment of theory of, 375
Green on necessary truths, 455

HENRY VIII and the parliament of 1529, 400-5
Herschel on fallacies of observation, 310
— — fusion of marble, 333-4
— — quantitative statement of laws, 415
Hibben, example of limitation of concomitant variations, 368
History, method in, 249-55, 377-9
Hobhouse on chlorophyll, 353
— — circumstantial evidence, 379-80
— — hidden causes, 373
— — ideal and actual knowledge, 457
— — permanent facts in nature, 356
Hume on induction, 281
Huygens, and theory of light, 405-12
'Hypotheses, non fingo,' 327
Hypothesis, agreement with fact, 327
— and analogy, 338
— conditions of establishment of, 348
— — of validity, 329-32
— definition of, 276
— — descriptive, 328
— direct development of, 349-72
— establisment of, 348-80
— extension of, 332-4
— functions of, 322-3
— inception of, 336-47
— indirect establishment of, 372-80
— kinds of, 328-9
— meaning of, 322-3
— nature of, 322-35
— origin of, 323-6
— suggestion of, 323-6
— — testing of, 327
— working, 328-9
Hypothetical propositions, 90-1, 92-3, 104, 108-9, 122, 138
— syllogism (mixed), 148-9, 186-93

Hypothetical syllogism (pure), 148-9, 160-1, 175-7
'Hysteron proteron,' 258-60

IDENTITY, principle of, 14
'Ignoratio elenchi,' 262-76
Illative conversion, 130
Illicit process, 223
Illusion, 291-2, 309-10
Immediate inference, 110-12
— — kinds of, 111-12
— — nature of, 110-11
'Imperfect induction,' 272
Implication, 236-8
Incompatibility of terms, 22-3
Indesignate propositions, 95
Indirect method of induction, 275-6, 372-80
— reduction, 181, 183-4
Induction and analysis, 238-9
— — explanation, 443
— Aristotle's doctrine, 272
— assumptions underlying, 278-89
— basis and aim, 270-4
— beginnings of, 336
— enumerative, 271-3, 337-8
— examples of, 381-413
— imperfect, 272
— meaning of, 239
— method of, 274-7
— nature of, 270-4
— perfect, 272
— postulates of, 278-89
— relation to deduction, 238-40, 275-6
Inductive inference, nature of, 270-3
Inference and implication, 236-8
— — interpretation, 292-3
— — novelty, 237-8
— — system, 240-2
— conditions of valid (constitutive), 218, 237
— — — — (epistemic), 218, 237
— definition of, 110
— immediate, 110-12
— in observation, 292-3
— universals in, 237-9

'Infima species,' 41
'Inseparable accidens,' 40
Insight of scientist, 234
Intension, 24
Interpretation, 292
Inverse, 136
Inversion, fallacies in, 143
— of propositions, 136-7, 139
Invertend, 136

JEVONS, on accuracy in measurement, 416, 418
— — bias in observation, 295
— — colours of mother of pearl, 353
— — ether, 331
— — *fallacies* of observation, 306
— — hypotheses and inference, 325
— — natural experiment, 298-9
— — negative experiment, 301-2
— — working hypothesis, 329
Johnson, *W. E.*, on Mill's criticism of the syllogism, 218-19
'Joint method,' 356-9, 384, 385, 390
Judgment, distinct from proposition, 18

KEPLER, discovery of laws of planetary motion, 326
— scientific caution of, 327
Keynes, *J. M.*, on assumptions about probability, 424-5
— *on Mill's methods*, 351
— — postulate of limited variety, 287-8
— — — analogy, 340, 342, 351
Knowledge and error, 5
— — explanation, 3-5, 226-9
— — language, 1, 11-12
— — separate sciences, 4
— — general method of, 225-42
— imperfection of, 1-3
— *nature of*, 1-5

LAMB, quotation of pun, 58
Language, informative use of, 11-12

Language, emotive use of, 11-12
Laplace, law of succession, 424
'Law' and 'Theory,' 348
Laws of Thought and immediate inference, 15, 16, 110
— — — general character of, 13-14
— — — relation to contradiction, 116
— — — — — contrariety, 118
— — — — — sub-contrariety, 119-20
Laws, quantitative, nature of, 415-8
Leibniz on principle of sufficient reason, 14, 17
Lewis on disregard of counteracting causes, 460
— — interaction of cause and effect, 461-2
Light, corpuscular theory of, 405-13
— velocity of, 372
— wave theory of, 405-13
'Litigiosus,' 203
Locke, on care in generalisation, 241
Logic, definition of, 8
— function of, 5-8
— general relation to other knowledge, 8-12
— material or applied, 7-8
— origin of, 5-8
— pure or formal, 6-7
— relation to grammar, 11-12
— — — psychology, 11
— value of, 7 8-10

MACE, on decline of American Confederation, 378
Mackenzie, on fallacies in Mill's *Utilitarianism*, 59, 63-4
— — false analogy in Plato, 345-6
Magnetic storms, periodical variation of, 369
Magnitude, determination of, 436-40
Major premise, 146
— term, 146-7
Mal-observation, 309 11
Malus, relation of polarisation and reflection, 325
Mathematics, logical nature of, 230-1, 452-4
— method in, 244-6
Maxwell, Clerk, insight, 232
— — synthesis, 456
Means, method of, 437-9
Measurement and concomitant variations, 366
— elimination of error in, 418-19, 437-40
— importance of, 416-17
— limitations of accuracy, 416-19
— methods of, 437-40
— nature of, 415-19
'Membra dividentia,' 66
Memory, untrustworthiness of, 317
Metaphors, fallacies due to, 344-5
Method, analysis and synthesis, 229-31
— and facts, 231-2
— — inference, 235
— — system, 226-9
— fallacies in, 256-69
— in history, 249-55
— — mathematics, 243-6
— — natural science, 248 9
— — physical science, 246-8
— nature of, 225-6
— of induction, 274-7
— — knowledge, 225-42
— rules of, 240
Methods of enquiry (direct), Agreement, 352-6
— — — — character of, 349-52
— — — — Concomitant variations, 364-70
— — — — difference, 359-64
— — — — 'Joint method,' 356-9
— — — — limitations of, 349 52, 372-3
— — — — residues, 370-2
— — — — symbolism of, 350
— — — (indirect), 373-80

Middle term, 146-7
— undistributed, 223
Mill, on abstract terms, 31
— fallacies in *Utilitarianism*, 59, 63
— methods of direct enquiry, 349 (*see Methods*)
— on ambiguous terms, 57
— — fallacies of observation, 303-11
— — first law of motion, 368-9
— — inference from particulars, 215-16
— — *Natural kinds*, 287-8
— — resemblances in analogy, 341-2
— — uniformity of nature, 280
— — validity of syllogism, 217-21
Minor premise, 146
— term, 146-7
Mixed syllogisms (*see Syllogism*), 186-204
Mnemonic lines, 167-8
— — explanation of, 180-1
'Modus ponens,' 188-93
'— tollens,' 188-93
'Money,' ambiguity of, 57
Moods, determination of, 164-7
— examples of valid, 168-71
— in pure disjunctive syllogism, 177-8
— — — hypothetical syllogism, 175-7
— names of, 168
— of mixed disjunctive syllogism, 195
— — — hypothetical syllogism, 187-91
— proving **A**, 165
— — **E**, 165
— — **I**, 165-6
— — **O**, 166-7
'Mother-of-pearl,' colours of, 353

NAME and terms, 19
— proper, 19-20
— uniquely descriptive, 20-1
Natural classification, 79
Natural kinds, 79, 288
'Nature,' ambiguity of, 57-8
Negative evidence, care in accepting, 306-7
— *premises*, 156-9
Neptune, discovery of, 325, 371-2
Newton and gravitation, 330, 375
— — theory of light, 335, 405-6, 410, 412
Nomenclature, scientific, 86
Nominal definition, 47
Non observation, fallacies of, 304-9
'— propter hoc' or 'non sequitur,' 267-9
'Nota notae,' 151

OBSERVATION and method of agreement, 354
— — scientific instruments, 296-7
— basis of science, 290-1
— bias in, 295-6
— by experiment, 297-301
— fallacies of, 303-11
— *inferential nature of*, 292-3
— influence of knowledge in, 293-5
— interpretation in, 292-3
— liability to error, 292
— selection in, 293-5
Obverse, 127
Obversion, 126-9, 139
Obverted contraposition, 135
— conversion, 133
Obvertend, 126
Ogden, C. K., informative and emotive use of language, 11
Olszewski, experiments on argon, 397-8
Opposite terms, 33
Opposition, contradictory, 115-17
— contrary, 117-19
— definition of, 112-13
— fallacies in, 140-1
— of categorical propositions, 113-22
— — disjunctive propositions, 123
— — hypothetical propositions, 122-3

Opposition, square of, 120-2
— subaltern, 114-5
— sub-contrariety, 119-20
— summary of, 120-2
Ostensive reduction, 181-3

PARLIAMENT of 1529, Henry VIII., 400-5
Particular premises, arguments involving, 160
— propositions, 95
Pasteur, experiments on spontaneous generation, 303, 362-3
— investigation in silkworm disease, 385-90
— the silkworm disease, 385-90
Peano, mathematician, 244
'Petitio principii,' 256-62
— — and syllogism, 216-21
'— quaesiti,' 257
'Phlogiston,' 295
Physical partition, 69
— sciences, certainty in, 454-5
Planc on theory of light, 411-12
Plato, false analogy in, 345-6
— use of term 'nature,' 58
Plurality of causes, 285, 351, 355, 357
'Plures interrogationes,' 140-1
Pollard on parliament of 1529, 400-5
Polylemma, 197
Porphyry, scheme of predicables, 36, 40-1
Positive terms, 32-3
'Post hoc, ergo propter hoc,' 459
Postulate of limited variety, 287-9
Postulates of induction, 278-89
Pouchet, experiments on spontaneous generation, 303, 362-3
Predicables, definition of, 36, 37
— Aristotelian scheme of, 38-9
— — and evolution, 39
Predicables, Porphyry's scheme of, 40-1
Predicate, 18, 100-2
Predicative view of propositions, 102
Prejudice and observation, 295-6, 304-6
— — testimony, 316-17
Premises, 144-7
Principles of definition, 48-52
— — logical division, 69-72
Principle of independence, 424
Privative terms, 33
Probability, assumptions about, 424-5
— basis of, 419-24
— independence of time, 423-4
— of alternative conditions, 432-4
— — compound events, 426-32
— — conjunction of independent events, 426-8
— — dependent events, 428-30
— — indeterminate events, 430-2
— — recurrence, 434-6
— — simple events, 425-6
Progressive chains of reasoning, 207, 209-13
Proper names, 19-20
Propositions, alternative, 95, 103
— analysis of, 100-2
— classification of (traditional), 90, 100-2
— — defects of, 102
— reclassification of, 103-4
— definition of, 18, 89
— kinds of, 90, 103
— quality of, 95
— quantity of, 95
— categorical, 90-3
— — contradiction of, 15-17
— — contraposition of, 134-6
— — contrariety of, 117-19
— — conversion of, 129-34
— — definition of, 18, 90
— — distribution of terms in, 99-100
— — eductions of, 124-38

Propositions, categorical, indesignate, 95
— — inversion of, 136-7
— — misinterpretation of, 106-8
— — obversion of 126-9
— — opposition of, 113-22
— — particular, 95
— — quality of, 95
— — quantity of, 95
— — singular, 103
— — subalternation of, 114-5
— — sub-contrariety of, 119-20
— — universal, 95
— complex (alternative), 103
— — (conjunctive), 103
— — (disjunctive), 103
— — (implicative), 103
— disjunctive, definition of, 90, 103
— interpretations of, 94-5
— — misinterpretations of, 108-9
— — nature of, 94 5
opposition of, 123
— — quality of, 96
— — quantity of, 96
— — relation to categorical and hypothetical, 90 5
general, 103-4
— — 'all' 103
— — 'some,' 103
— *generic*, 91
— hypothetical, definition of, 90
— eductions of, 139
misinterpretation of, 108 9
nature of, 90, 92-3
opposition of, 122-3
— quality of, 96
quantity of 96
— — relation to categorical, 90 5
— — — generic, 91
— — class-membership, 103
subject attribute, 103
— — relational, 103
'Proprium,' 38, 39
Prosyllogism, 207
Prosyllogistic chains of reasoning, 208, 213-14
'Proximum genus,' 41
Psychology, relation to logic, 11
'Publish,' ambiguity of, 56
Puns as fallacies, 58

QUALITY, definition of, 95
— of categorical propositions, 95-6
— — disjunctive propositions, 96
— — hypothetical propositions, 96
Quantitative determination, 414-40
Quantity, definition of, 95
— of categorical propositions, 95-6
— — disjunctive propositions, 96
— hypothetical propositions, 96
Quatrefages on silkworm disease, 386

RABIER on bias in observation, 296
— on experiment, 300
— on probability of testimony, 318-19
Ramsay, experiments on argon, 380-1, 392
Rayleigh, experiments on argon, 380-1, 392
Rebutting a dilemma, 202-4
'*Reductio ad absurdum*,' 258, 268
Reduction, direct, 181-3
— function of, 179-80
kinds of, 181-5
indirect 183-4
mnemonics for, 180-1
— of mixed disjunctive syllogism, 195-6
— — pure hypothetical syllogism, 184-5
— ostensive, 181-3
Regressive chains of reasoning, 208, 213-14
Relating factor, 18
Relational reasoning, 223
Relations, 35, 221-3
— asymmetrical, 35, 222
— intransitive, 35, 222

Relations, non-transitive, 35
— serial, 223
— symmetrical, 35, 222
— transitive, 35, 222
Relative terms, 34
Residual phenomena, 371-2
Residues, method of, 370-2, 396
Richards, I A, informative and emotive use of language, 11
Römer, determination of velocity of light, 372
Rose, J H, on historical sequence, 253
Rousseau, use of term 'nature,' 58
Rules of pure syllogism, derivation of, 151-2
— — — — examination of, 152-9
— — — corollaries from, 159-60
— — method, 232-6
Rumford, Count, heat and energy, 294
Russell, B, on mathematics, 244 5

SCIENCE, basis of, 290-1
— meaning of, 225
Scientific classification, 80-5
— instruments, 296-7
— method, 246-55
— nomenclature, 86-7
— terminology, 87-8
Second figure, special rules of, 163
Selection of matter in observation, 293 5
'Separable accidens,' 40
Sigwart, on statistical uniformities, 452
Silence, argument from, 321
Silkworm disease, 385-90
Sincerity in testimony, 314-16
Singular propositions, 103
Singular terms, 19
Smollett, false analogy in, 344
Social phenomena, method in study of, 374

'Some,' ambiguity of, 65, 103-4
Sorites, Aristotelian, 209-12
  definition of, 209
  Goclenian, 209, 210-11, 212-13
— kinds of, 209-11
— rules of, 212-13
Special classification, 77, 78-80
'Species,' 40, 41
Spencer, H, fallacies in *Education*, 64 266-7
Spontaneous generation, 303, 362-3
Square of opposition, 120-1
Statistical uniformities, 450-2
Statistics, an aid to explanation, 452
Stebbing, L S, on Definition, 42, 47
— referred to, 35, 104, 223
Strengthened syllogisms, 168
'Subaltern,' 114
'Subalternans,' 114
'Subalternant,' 114
'Subalternate,' 114
Subalternation, 114-15
Sub-contrariety, 119-20
— -division, 67
Subject, 100-102
Sufficient reason, principle of, 14, 17
Suicides, constant ratio of, 450-1
Sully on illusion in observation, 291
'Summum genus,' 41
Sun-spots, periodical variation of, 369
Syllogism, basis of, 150
  chains of reasoning, 207-14
— definition of, 144
— dilemmas (*see Dilemmas*), 197-204
— elements of, 145-7
— enthymemes (*see Enthymemes*), 205-6
— epicheiremas (*see Epicheiremas*), 213-14
— fallacies in, 154-7

Syllogism, form of, 144-5
— function of, 215-6
— kinds of, 148-9
— matter of, 144, 145
— nature of, 144-7
— premises of, 145-7
— relation to induction, 272
— sorites (*see Sorites*), 209-13
— categorical, axioms of, 150
— — canons of, 151-2
— — figures of, 162-4
— — moods of, 164-7
— — reduction of, 179-85
— — representation by diagrams, 171-5
— — rules of, 152-9
— — strengthened, 168
— — weakened, 168
— disjunctive (mixed), basis of, 193-5
— — — canon, of, 195
— — — — examples of, 196-7
— — — forms of, 194-5
— — — reduction of, 195-6
— — — — pure, figures and moods of, 177-8
— — — rules of, 161
— hypothetical (mixed), basis of, 187
— — — canon of, 188
— — — character of, 186
— — — — examples of, 191-3
— — — moods of, 187-91
— — (pure), figures and moods of, 175-7
— — — — reduction of, 184-5
— — — rules of, 160-1
Syllogistic reasoning, chains of, 207-14
— — limitations of, 221-3
— — universal element in, 215-16
— — validity of, 216-21
Symbols in mathematics, 245-6
Synthesis as result of general principles, 229-30
— in mathematics, 233, 244-5
— logical and chemical distinguished, 230
Synthesis, method of, 229-31
— relation to analysis, 229
— relation to deduction, 237
Synthetic chains of reasoning, 207, 208, 209-13
System and knowledge, 4, 226-9
in mathematics, 246
— nature of, 227
— relation to inference, 226-9
Systematisation, 239-41, 455-8
— and subsumption of empirical laws, 455-6

TERMINOLOGY, scientific, 87-8
Terms, absolute, 34
abstract, 30-2
class, 21
collective, 22
collective and distributive use of, 24
concrete, 30-2
connotation of, 24-30
— contradictory, 32-3
— contrary, 33-4
— definition of, 18
— denotation of, 24, 27
— distribution of, 97, 99-100
— general, 19, 21-2
— negative, 32-4
— positive, 33
— privative, 33
— relative, 34
scientific, 56
— singular, 19-21
Testimony, accuracy in, 315-18
— and probability of fact, 318-19
— corroboration of, 318
— criticism of, 314-19
— criticism of indirect, 319-21
— importance of, 312-13
— non-oral sources of, 319-21
— sincerity in, 314-16
— value of, 313-14
Tetralemma, 197
'Theory' and 'Law,' 348
Third Figure, special rules of, 164
Thomson, Sir William, experiments on diffusion, 363-4

Thought, laws of, 13-17
— nature of, 1-5
'Totum divisum,' 66
Tradition, 320-1
Trilemma, 197
Truths, established, 452-5
— necessary, 455
'Tu quoque,' 266

UEBERWEG, on circle in definition, 51
Undistributed middle, 154-5
Uniformity of nature, 278-83
— adequacy of, 283
— — formulations of, 280
— — meaning of, 279-80
— — justification of, 281-3
— — origin of, 281-2
Unity of nature, 279-80
Universal in deductive reasoning, 215-16
— — inference, 238-40
— propositions, 95
— terms, 35
Universe of discourse, 27
Uranus, irregularity in motion of 325, 371, 372
'Utter,' ambiguity of, 56

VALIDITY of syllogism, 216-21
Variety limited, postulate of, 287-9
Vegetable mould, formation of, 381-5
Verbal definition, 42, 47
Voltaic Pile, source of power in, 390-2

WAKEMAN on war, 254-5
Wallace on varieties of melons, 341-2
Water, electrolysis of, 361
Wave theory of light, 405-13
Weakened syllogisms, 168
Wells, ebbing, 366
Whewell on application of theory of gravitation, 333
— fallacies of observation, 311
— nomenclature, 87
— Ptolemaic hypothesis, 328
— suggestion of hypotheses, 326
— tentative hypotheses, 327
— — terminology, 87
Whitehead on mathematics, 244-5
— — rival theories of light, 412-13

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL PRESS LD., FOXTON
NEAR CAMBRIDGE